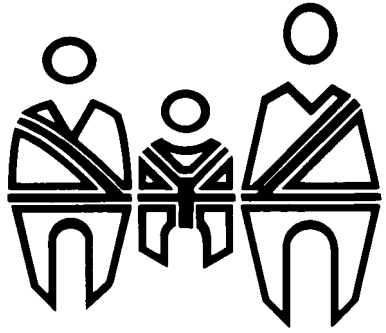
WE REALLY CARE ABOUT YOU - PLEASE BUCKLE UP

Lexus has made a special effort to encourage use of seat belts.



Lexus belts are:

- **Comfortable**
- **Easy to use**
- **Convenient**

We encourage you to use your belts every time you drive.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

GAS STATION INFORMATION

- **Fuel selection:**
  Select Octane Rating 87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher. For improved vehicle performance, the use of premium unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher is recommended.

- **Fuel tank capacity:**
  72.5 L (19.2 gal., 15.9 lmp. gal.)

- **Engine oil:**
  "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivqlent

  Oil grade: API grade SL "Energy-Conserving" or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

  Recommended oil viscosity: SAE 5W-30

  Oil capacity: L (qt., lmp.qt.)
  Drain and refill
  With filter 4.7 (5.0, 4.1)
  Without filter 4.5 (4.8, 4.0)
  See page 637 for detailed information.

- **Engine coolant:**
  Capacity: L (qt., lmp. qt.)

With transmission oil cooler	9.6 (10.1, 8.4)
Without transmission oil cooler	9.4 (9.9, 8.3)

  Coolant type — "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non- nitrite, and non- borate coolant with long- life hybrid organic acid technology

  Do not use plain water alone.

  For checking the engine coolant, see page 642.

- **Automatic transaxle:**
  Fluid type — **Toyota Genuine ATF Type T-IV**

  See page 647 for detailed information.

- **Tire information:**
  See pages 656 through 676 for detailed information.

- **Tire inflation pressure:**
  Tire size: 225/65R17 101S or P235/55R18 99V

  Tire inflation pressure: cold tires
  kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)

	225/65R17 101S*	P235/55R18 99V
Front tires	210 (2.1, 30)	210 (2.1, 30)
Rear tires	210 (2.1, 30)	210 (2.1, 30)

  *: For sustained high speeds above 160 km/h (100 mph), in countries where such speeds are permitted by law, add 10 kPa (0.1 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 1.5 psi) to the front tires and rear tires, but never exceed the maximum cold tire pressure molded on the tire sidewall.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

You should know as much about the quality and importance of proper maintenance of your new vehicle as the people who built it.

The Lexus authorized Repair Manual tells you how to maintain your vehicle and enables you to correctly perform your own maintenance.

The best way to keep your new vehicle in top running order is to maintain it properly from the moment you drive it off the showroom floor.

The Lexus authorized Repair Manual is packed with literally everything you need to know to perform your own maintenance in virtually every area of your new vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance procedures for the engine, chassis, body, electrical system, and more, are clearly explained and illustrated.

Periodic maintenance and tune-up

Periodic maintenance and tune-up helps to prevent small problems from growing into larger ones later on. The repair manual outlines exactly what maintenance is required and clearly explains how to do the work yourself step-by-step.

Areas covered include such things as spark plug replacement, valve clearance adjustment and engine oil and filter replacement.

Where to obtain the Repair Manual

The repair manual for RX330, written in English, may be purchased as applicable from any Lexus dealer.

Pub. Name: 2004 RX330 Repair Manual
Pub. No.: Vol. 1 RM1027U1
Vol. 2 RM1027U2
Vol. 3 RM1027U3

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Congratulations on your selection of this Lexus. In Lexus vehicles we have invested all our engineering and design resources; all the know-how we have gained in over 60 years of making automobiles; the highest motivation of our most talented employees; and our tradition of incessant striving toward ever greater quality.

This Owner's Manual explains the features of your new Lexus. Please read it and follow the instructions carefully so that you can enjoy many years of safe motoring.

When it comes to service, remember that your Lexus dealer knows your vehicle best and is interested in your complete satisfaction. Your Lexus dealer will provide quality maintenance and any other assistance you may require.

If there is not a Lexus dealer near you, or you need emergency assistance for any reason, please call the following number:

U.S. OWNERS

- When traveling in the U.S. mainland or Canada:
  Lexus Roadside Assistance 1-800-25-LEXUS (Toll-Free)
  (1-800-255-3987)

- HAWAII:
  Lexus Customer Service Assistance 1-800-25-LEXUS (Toll-Free)
  (1-800-255-3987)

CANADIAN OWNERS

- When traveling in Canada or the U.S. mainland:
  Lexus Roadside Assistance/Customer Service 1-800-26-LEXUS (Toll-Free)
  (1-800-265-3987)

Please leave this Owner's Manual in this vehicle at the time of resale. The next owner will need this information also.

All information and specifications in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT YOUR LEXUS

Occupant restraint systems

Lexus encourages you and your family to take the time to read Section 1-6 of this Owner's Manual carefully. In terms of helping you understand how you can receive the maximum benefit of the occupant restraint systems this vehicle provides, Section 1-6 of this Owner's Manual is the most important Section for you and your family to read.

Section 1-6 describes the function and operation concerning seats, seat belts, SRS airbags and child restraint systems of this vehicle and some potential hazards you should be aware of. These systems work together along with the overall structure of this vehicle in order to provide occupant restraint in the event of a crash. The effect of each system is enhanced when it is used properly and together with other systems. No single occupant restraint system can, by itself, provide you or your family with the equal level of restraint which these systems can provide when used together. That is why it is important for you and your family to understand the purpose and proper use of each of these systems and how they relate to each other.

The purpose of all occupant restraint systems is to help reduce the possibility of death or serious injury in the event of a collision. None of these systems, either individually or together, can ensure that there is no injury in the event of collision. However, the more you know about these systems and how to use them properly, the greater your chances become of surviving an accident without death or serious injury.

Seat belts provide the primary restraint to all occupants of the vehicle, and every occupant of the vehicle should wear seat belts properly at all times. Children should always be secured in child restraint systems that are appropriate for their age and size. SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) airbags are, as their names imply, designed to work with, and be supplemental to, seat belts and are not substitutes for them. SRS airbags can be very effective in reducing the risk of head and chest injuries by preventing contact of the head and chest with interior portions of the vehicle.

In order to be effective, the SRS airbags must deploy with tremendous speed. The rapid deployment of the SRS airbags makes the SRS airbags themselves potential sources of serious injury if an occupant is too close to an airbag, or if an object or some part of his or her body has been placed between the occupant and the airbag at the time of deployment. This is just one example of how the instructions in Section 1-6 of this Owner's Manual will help ensure proper use of the occupant restraint systems, and increase the safety they can provide to you and your family in the event of an accident.

Lexus recommends you to read the provisions in Section 1-6 carefully and refer to them as needed during your time of ownership of this vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

New vehicle warranty

Your new vehicle is covered by the following Lexus limited warranties:

- New vehicle warranty
- Emission control systems warranty
- Others

For further information, please refer to the “Owner’s Guide”, “Owner’s Manual Supplement” or “Warranty Booklet”.

Your responsibility for maintenance

It is the owner’s responsibility to make sure the specified maintenance is performed. Section 5 of this Owner’s Manual gives details of these maintenance requirements. Included in Section 6 is general maintenance. For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Owner’s Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance”.

Important health and safety information about your Lexus

CAUTION

- **WARNING: Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. In addition, oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.**
- **Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non- genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Spark ignition system of your Lexus

The spark ignition system in your Lexus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference- Causing Equipment Standard.

Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

As the installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as the multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, cruise control system, anti-lock brake system, SRS airbag system and seat belt pretensioner system, be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation.

Tires and loading on your Lexus

Underinflated or overinflated tire pressure and the excess load may result in the deterioration of steering ability and braking ability, leading to an accident. Check the tire inflation pressure periodically and be sure to keep the load limits given in this Owner's Manual. For details about tire inflation pressure and load limits, see pages 656 and 544.

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the system of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

On-pavement and off-road driving tips

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. This vehicle will handle and maneuver differently from an ordinary passenger car because it is designed for off-road use also. In addition, this vehicle has a higher ground clearance and center of gravity than that of an ordinary passenger car. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, accidents or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. Be sure to read “Off-road vehicle precautions” on page 517 and “Off-road driving precautions” on page 522.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

The contents of this manual are explained briefly on this page to help you make the best use of the manual. Please read this page and the rest of the Owner's Manual carefully to make sure you fully understand the operation of your vehicle.

This will help you enjoy safe and comfortable driving.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

The table of contents and the pictorial index provide easy reference to the appropriate pages.

BASIC OPERATION — QUICK REFERENCE

Operation of basic equipment is briefly explained in an easily understandable way for quick reference.

SECTION 1 — INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

The vehicle's equipment is divided into the 7 groups listed below. Use of the equipment is explained, including any points you should pay particular attention to.

1. **Keys and doors**
2. **Switches**
3. **Gauges, meters and service reminder indicators**
4. **Interior equipment**
5. **Exterior equipment**
6. **Occupant restraint systems**
7. **Steering wheel and mirrors**

SECTION 2 — AIR CONDITIONING AND AUDIO

The features of the vehicle's air conditioning and audio are explained in detail. Be sure to read this Section so that you can make full use of them.

SECTION 3 — STARTING AND DRIVING

Starting the engine, driving, stopping, operation of features affecting vehicle handling, hints on vehicle safety and safe driving techniques are all explained. Please read everything in this Section, and remember — drive safely!

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 4 — IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

This Section explains what to do in the event of an urgent situation such as the engine not starting or getting a flat tire, etc. If such a problem occurs, check the contents of this Owner's Manual and follow the instructions given.

SECTION 5 — MAINTENANCE

This Section explains the importance of regular maintenance. Regular and periodic inspection and maintenance of your Lexus will help to keep your vehicle in its best condition.

SECTION 6 — SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS

Simple maintenance procedure and service data are provided here for your reference should you wish to perform inspection and maintenance yourself.

INDEX

The page number is listed for each item in the Owner's Manual so that you can rapidly find the item and page you are searching for.

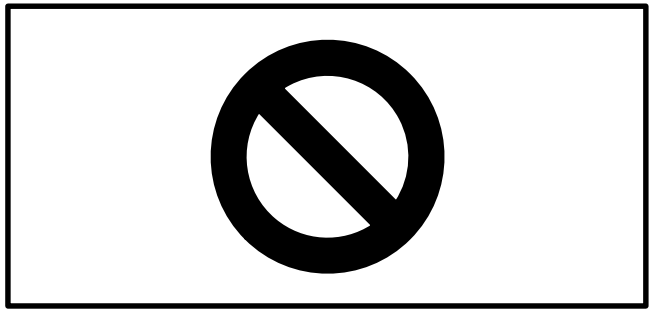
GAS STATION INFORMATION

The information you need to know for appropriate servicing at the gas station is provided here.

QUICK INDEX

This is designed so that you can quickly find the needed information when an urgent situation arises.

Safety symbol



In this manual, you will also see a circle with a slash through it. This means "Do not", "Do not do this", or "Do not let this happen".

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety and vehicle damage warnings

In this manual you will see CAUTION and NOTICE warnings. These are used in the following ways:

⚠ CAUTION

This is a warning against anything which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

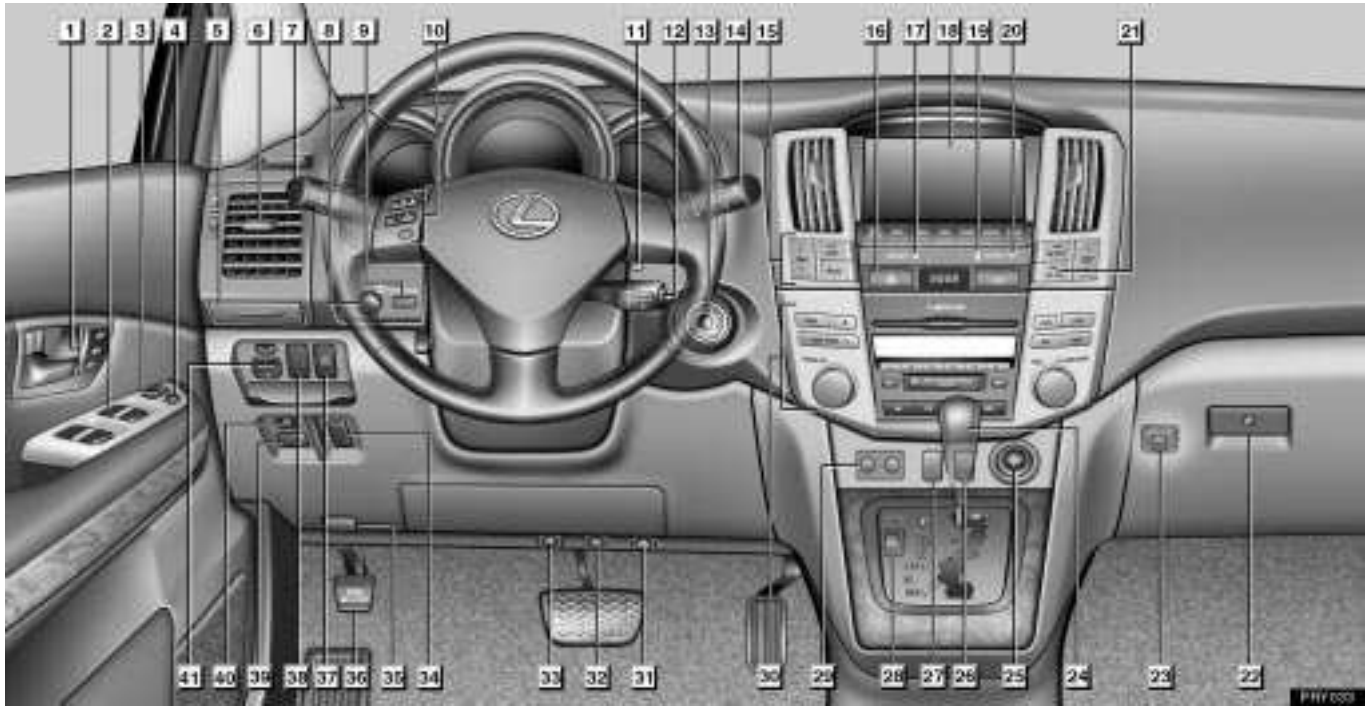
NOTICE

This is a warning against anything which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

Your Lexus Owner's Manual provides you with a considerable amount of information. To use this information most effectively, please take the time to familiarize yourself with the contents and use of the manual.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

INSTRUMENT PANEL (vehicles with navigation system)



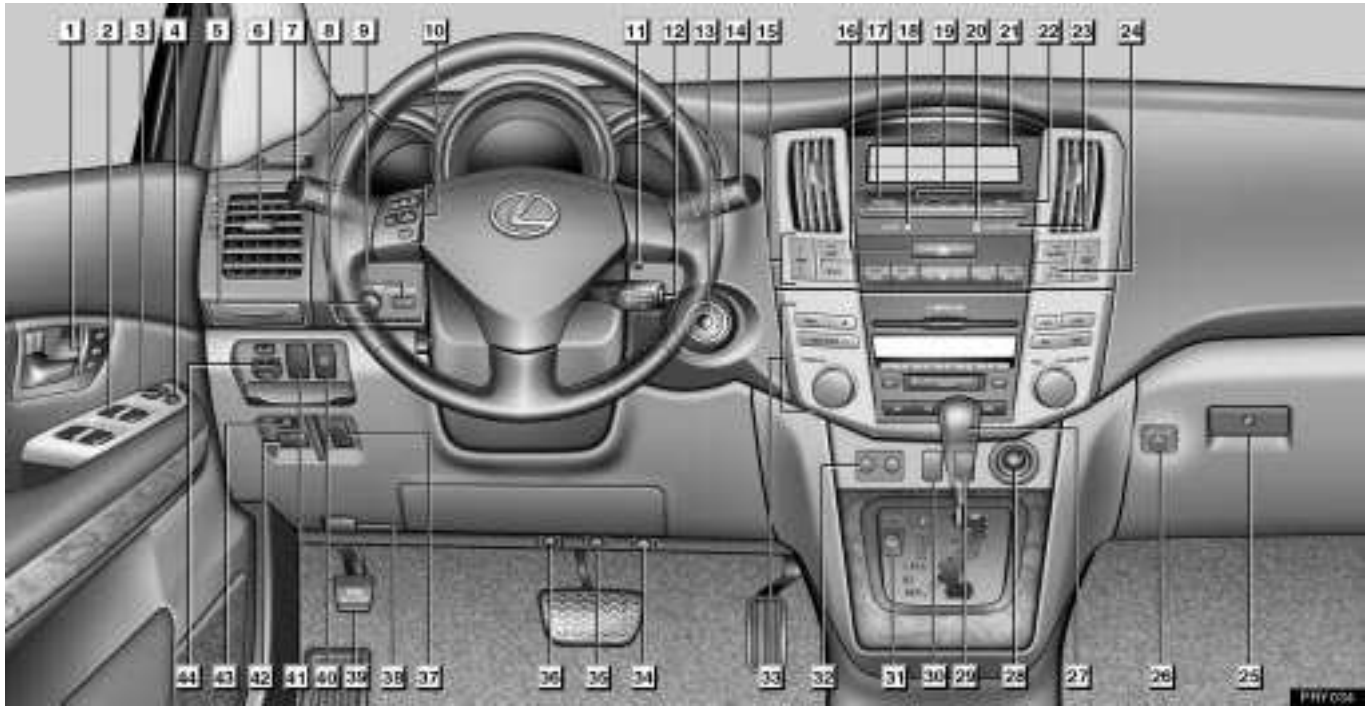
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

		Page
1	Driving position memory switches	250
2	Power window switches	72
3	Power door lock switch	32
4	Window lock switch	73
5	Cup holder	126
6	Side vents	289
7	Headlight, turn signal and fog light switches	52, 56, 57
8	Instrument panel light control knob	104
9	ODO/TRIP button	86
10	Steering switches	341
11	Distance switch	463
12	Cruise control switch	460, 463
13	Ignition switch	431
14	Wiper and washer switches	58, 66
15	Automatic air conditioning controls	270
16	Emergency flasher switch	76
17	Security indicator light	18, 46
18	Rear view monitor/navigation system display (See the separate “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.)	456
19	Front passenger’s seat belt reminder light	90
20	“AIRBAG OFF” indicator light	218
21	Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger, and windshield wiper deicer switch	70
22	Glove box	121
23	Power back door off switch	42
24	Automatic transmission selector lever	436, 445
25	Power outlet (12 VDC)	115
26	Height select switch	489
27	Headlight cleaner switch	68
28	Driving pattern selector switch	444, 455
29	Seat heater switches	78
30	Car audio	294, 315
31	Traction control system off switch	500
32	Tire pressure warning system reset switch	513
33	Height control switch	495
34	Power outlet (115 VAC) main switch	118
35	Hood lock release lever	140
36	Parking brake pedal	433
37	Power back door opener/closer switch	43
38	Easy access mode switch	493
39	Fuel filler door opener	141
40	Adaptive front-lighting system off switch	55
41	Power rear view mirror control switches	258

For detailed information, refer to the description given in each Section.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

INSTRUMENT PANEL (vehicles without navigation system)



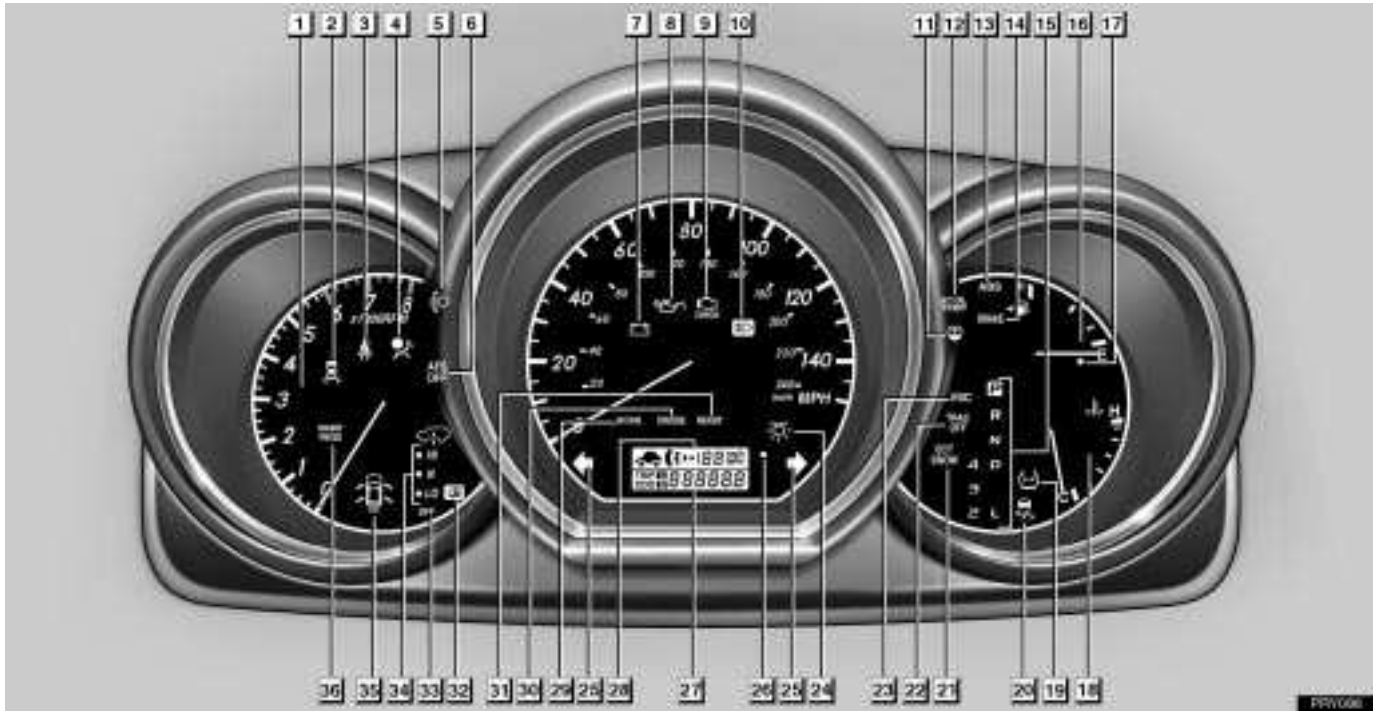
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

		Page
1	Driving position memory switches	250
2	Power window switches	72
3	Power door lock switch	32
4	Window lock switch	73
5	Cup holder	126
6	Side vents	289
7	Headlight, turn signal and fog light switches	52, 56, 57
8	Instrument panel light control knob	104
9	ODO/TRIP button	86
10	Steering switches	341
11	Distance switch	463
12	Cruise control switch	460, 463
13	Ignition switch	431
14	Wiper and washer switches	58, 66
15	Automatic air conditioning controls	270
16	Emergency flasher switch	76
17	Multi-display light control button	105
18	Security indicator light	18, 46
19	Clock buttons	114
20	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	90
21	Multi-display	
	Cruise information display	101
	Outside temperature display	115
	Clock display	114
	Automatic air conditioning display	270
22	Cruise information display control button	101
23	"AIRBAG OFF" indicator light	218
24	Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger, and windshield wiper deicer switch	70
25	Glove box	121
26	Power back door off switch	42
27	Automatic transmission selector lever	436, 445
28	Power outlet (12 VDC)	115
29	Height select switch	489
30	Headlight cleaner switch	68
31	Driving pattern selector switch	444, 455
32	Seat heater switches	78
33	Car audio	294, 315
34	Traction control system off switch	500
35	Tire pressure warning system reset switch	513
36	Height control switch	495
37	Power outlet (115 VAC) main switch	118
38	Hood lock release lever	140
39	Parking brake pedal	433
40	Power back door opener/closer switch	43
41	Easy access mode switch	493
42	Fuel filler door opener	141
43	Adaptive front-lighting system off switch	55
44	Power rear view mirror control switches	258

For detailed information, refer to the description given in each Section.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (vehicles sold in U. S. A.)



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

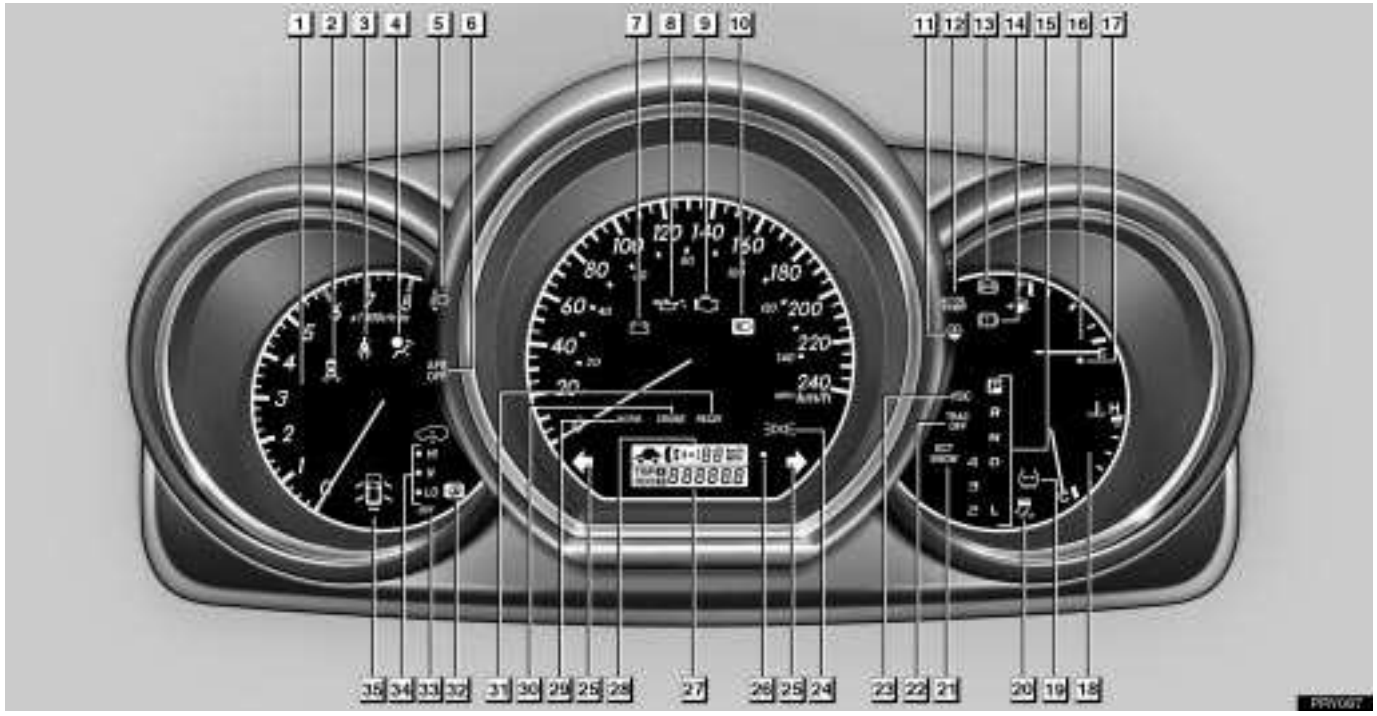
		Page
1	*Tachometer*	84
2	*Rear light failure warning light*	96
3	*Driver's seat belt reminder light*	90
4	*SRS warning light*	90
5	*Automatic headlight leveling system warning light*	98
6	*Adaptive front-lighting system off indicator light*	55
7	*Discharge warning light*	91
8	*Low engine oil pressure warning light*	92
9	*Malfunction indicator lamp*	94
10	*Headlight high beam indicator light*	56
11	*Low washer fluid warning light*	97
12	*Automatic transmission fluid temperature warning light*	97
13	*Anti-lock brake system warning light*	95
14	*Brake system warning light*	89
15	*Automatic transmission indicator lights*	436, 445
16	*Fuel gauge*	81
17	*Low fuel level warning light*	97
18	*Engine coolant temperature gauge*	82

		Page
19	*Low tire pressure warning light*	98
20	*Slip indicator light*	499, 502, 505
21	*Snow mode indicator light*	444, 455
22	*Traction control system off indicator light*	500
23	*Vehicle stability control system warning light*	97
24	*Headlight indicator light*	52
25	*Turn signal indicator lights*	57
26	*Dynamic laser cruise control master warning light*	478
27	*Odometer and trip meter*	86
28	*Dynamic laser cruise control display*	463
29	*Conventional cruise control mode indicator light*	480
30	*Cruise control indicator light*	460
31	*Ready mode indicator light*	471
32	*Easy access mode indicator light*	493
33	*Height control "OFF" indicator light*	495
34	*Height control indicator lights*	489
35	*Open door warning light*	96
36	*Engine oil replacement reminder light*	93

For detailed information, refer to the description given in each Section.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (vehicles sold in Canada)



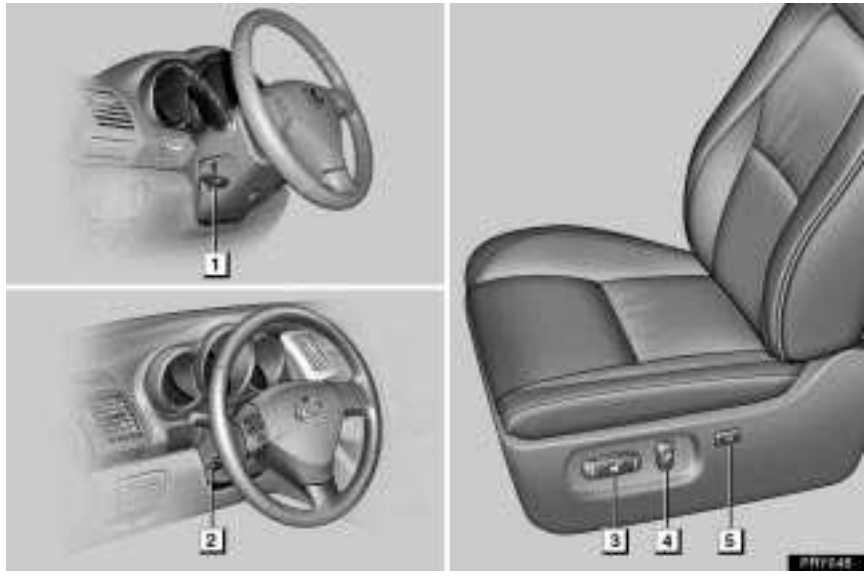
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

		Page
1	*Tachometer*	84
2	*Rear light failure warning light*	96
3	*Driver's seat belt reminder light*	90
4	*SRS warning light*	90
5	*Automatic headlight leveling system warning light*	97
6	*Adaptive front-lighting system off indicator light*	55
7	*Discharge warning light*	91
8	*Low engine oil pressure warning light*	92
9	*Malfunction indicator lamp*	94
10	*Headlight high beam indicator light*	56
11	*Low washer fluid warning light*	97
12	*Automatic transmission fluid temperature warning light*	97
13	*Anti-lock brake system warning light*	95
14	*Brake system warning light*	89
15	*Automatic transmission indicator lights*	436, 445
16	*Fuel gauge*	81
17	*Low fuel level warning light*	97
18	*Engine coolant temperature gauge*	82
19	*Low tire pressure warning light*	98
20	*Slip indicator light*	499, 502, 505
21	*Snow mode indicator light*	444, 455
22	*Traction control system off indicator light*	500
23	*Vehicle stability control system warning light*	97
24	*Tail light indicator light*	52
25	*Turn signal indicator lights*	57
26	*Dynamic laser cruise control master warning light*	478
27	*Odometer and trip meter*	86
28	*Dynamic laser cruise control display*	463
29	*Conventional cruise control mode indicator light*	480
30	*Cruise control indicator light*	460
31	*Ready mode indicator light*	471
32	*Easy access mode indicator light*	493
33	*Height control "OFF" indicator light*	495
34	*Height control indicator lights*	489
35	*Open door warning light*	96

For detailed information, refer to the description given in each Section.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SEAT AND STEERING WHEEL



Page

1 *Tilt steering lock release lever 255*

2 *Tilt and telescopic steering control switch 256*

3 *Seat position, seat cushion angle and height control switch 161, 162*

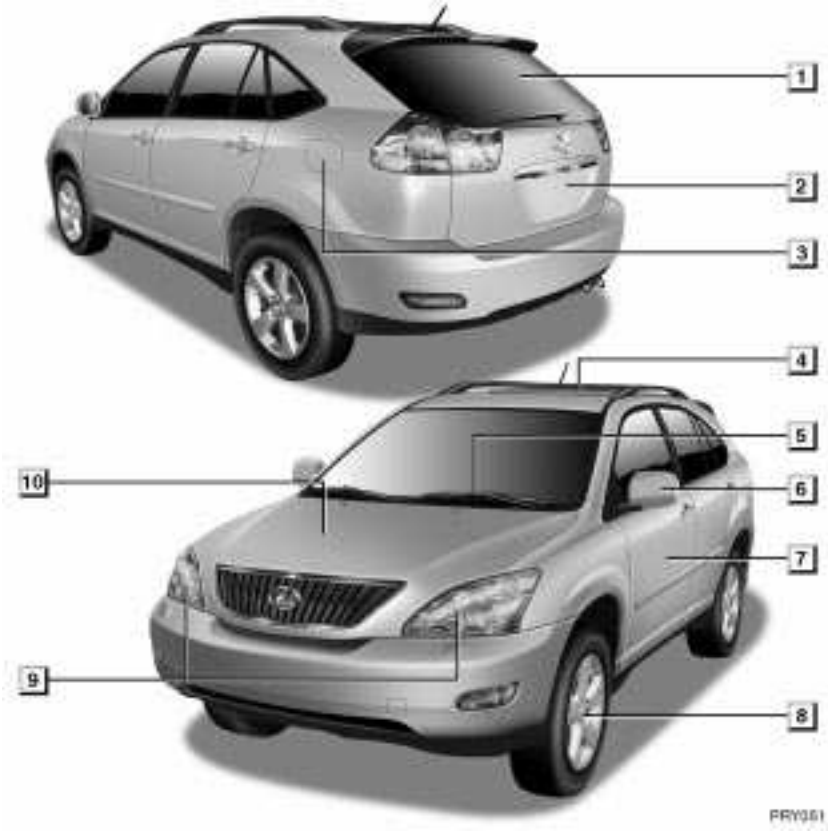
4 *Seatback angle control switch 161*

5 *Lumbar support control switch 163*

For detailed information, refer to the description given in each Section.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

EXTERIOR VIEW



		Page
1	*Rear window defogger*	*70*
2	*Back door*	*34, 38*
3	*Fuel filler door*	*141*
4	*Moon roof*	*144, 148*
5	*Wiper and washer*	*58, 702*
6	*Outside rear view mirror*	*257*
7	*Side door*	*29*
8	*Tire and wheel*	*656*
9	*Headlights*	*52, 704*
10	*Hood*	*140*

For detailed information, refer to the description given in each Section.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

BASIC OPERATION

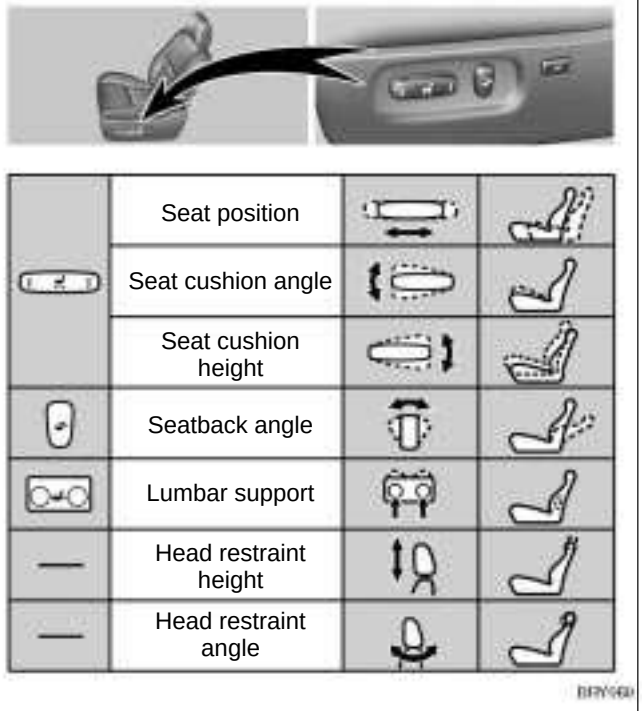
QUICK REFERENCE

Quick reference

Driver's seat 2
Steering wheel (tilt type) 2
Steering wheel (tilt and telescopic type) 3
Automatic transmission (standard type) 4
Automatic transmission (multi-mode type) 6
Headlight and turn signal switch 8
Wiper switch 9

DEALER E-PROCESS

1. DRIVER'S SEAT



2. STEERING WHEEL (tilt type)

To tilt the steering wheel up or down to the desired angle:

1. Pull the lever up while holding the steering wheel.
2. Tilt the steering wheel to the desired angle.
3. Release the lever.

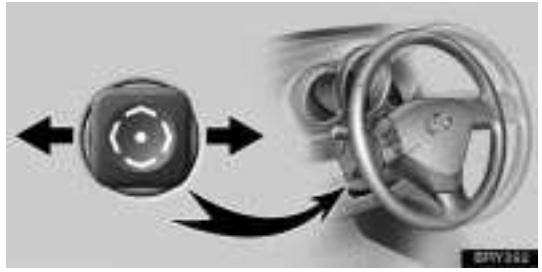
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. STEERING WHEEL (tilt and telescopic type)

- **TILT OPERATION**

To tilt the steering wheel up or down to the desired angle, push the control switch in the required direction and release the button when the steering wheel reaches the desired angle.

- **TELESCOPIC OPERATION**



To move the steering wheel to the desired position, push the control switch away from you or pull it toward you until the steering wheel reaches the desired position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (standard type)

SELECTOR LEVER POSITION

P: Parking, engine starting and key removal position

R: Reverse position

N: Neutral position

D: Normal driving position
(shifting into overdrive possible)

4: Position for engine braking
(shifting into overdrive not possible)

3, 2: Position for more powerful engine braking

L: Position for maximum engine braking

OPERATION OF SELECTOR LEVER

★ Shift while pressing the brake pedal.
(Ignition switch must be in the “ON” position.)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE:
Vehicles with the cruise control: When the cruise control is being used, even if you downshift from “D” to “4”, engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. For vehicle speed reduction, see page 462.
Vehicles with the dynamic laser cruise control: When the cruise control is being used in the conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode or in the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, even if you downshift from “D” to “4”, engine braking will not be applied because the cruise control is not cancelled. For vehicle speed reduction, see pages 473 and 483.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (multi-mode type)

SELECTOR LEVER POSITION

P: Parking, engine starting and key removal position

R: Reverse position

N: Neutral position

D: Normal driving position
(shifting into overdrive possible)

S: "S" mode driving

+: Upshifting

-: Downshifting

OPERATION OF SELECTOR LEVER

★ Shift while pressing the brake pedal.
(Ignition switch must be in the "ON" position.)

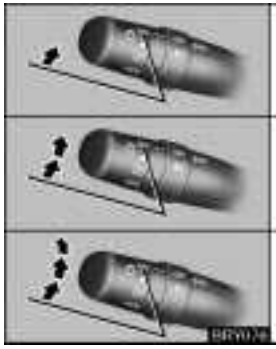
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE:
Vehicles with the cruise control: When the cruise control is being used, even if you downshift from “D” or “5” (fifth range) to “4” (fourth range), engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. For vehicle speed reduction, see page 462.
Vehicles with the dynamic laser cruise control: When the cruise control is being used in the conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode or in the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, even if you downshift from “D” or “5” (fifth range) to “4” (fourth range), engine braking will not be applied because the cruise control is not cancelled. For vehicle speed reduction, see pages 473 and 483.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

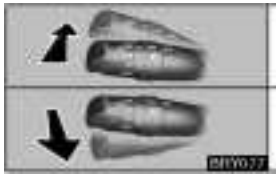
4. HEADLIGHT AND TURN SIGNAL SWITCH

● HEADLIGHT SWITCH



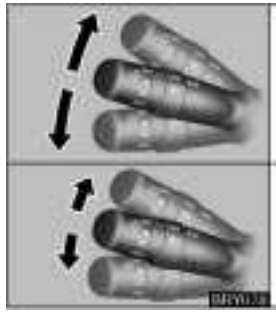
Parking, tail, license plate, side marker and instrument panel lights turn on.
Headlights also turn on.
Automatic light control

● HEADLIGHT DIMMER SWITCH



High beam
Headlight flasher

● TURN SIGNAL SWITCH

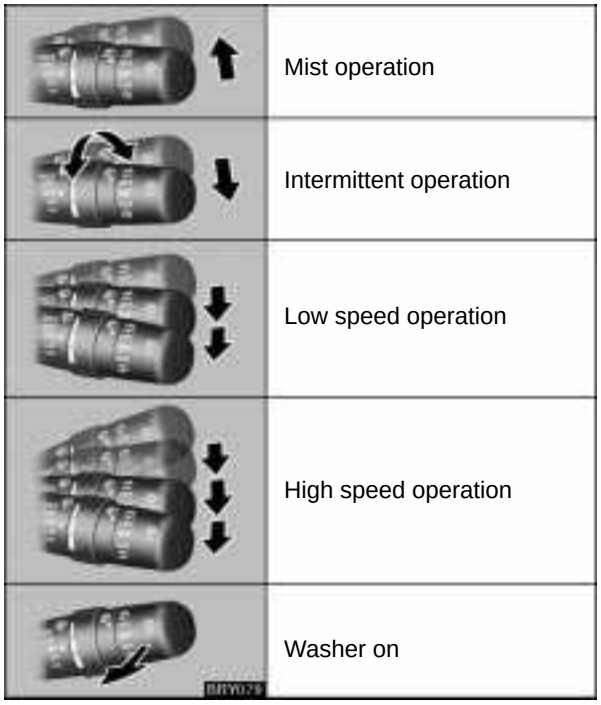


Right or left turn
Lane change (right or left)

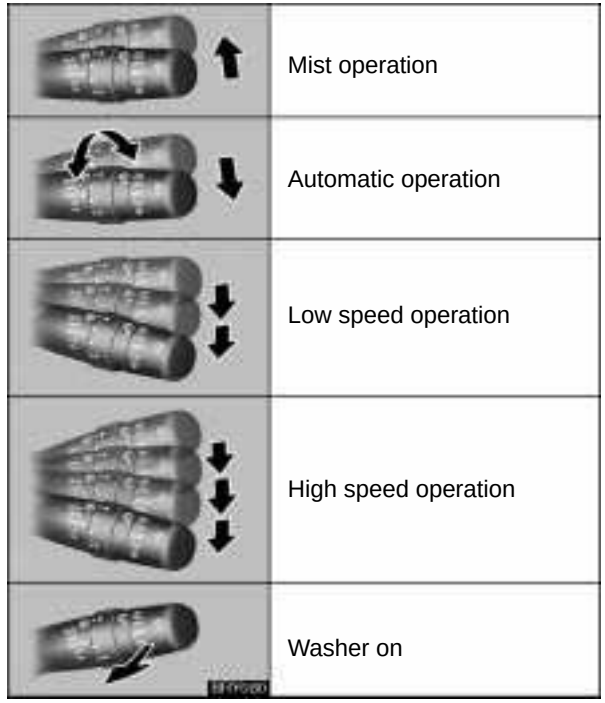
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. WIPER SWITCH

- **Front (intermittent operational type)**



- **Front (raindrop detection type)**



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Rear**

1 Wiper on (intermittent operation)

2 Wiper on (normal operation)

3 Washer also on

4 Washer on

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 1 – 1

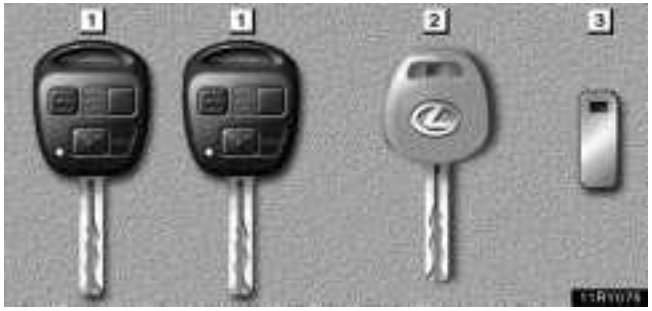
INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Keys and doors

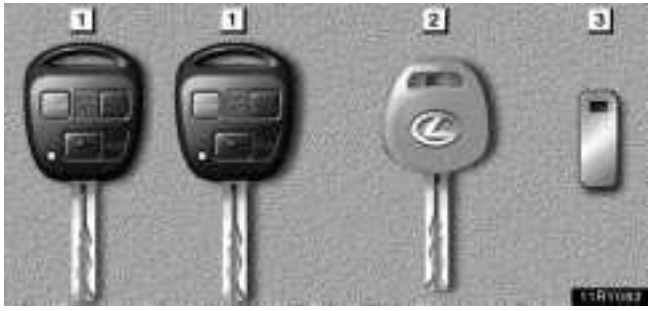
Keys 12
Engine immobilizer system 18
Wireless remote control 20
Side doors 29
Back door 34
Power back door 38
Theft deterrent system 46

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

KEYS



▶ ***Vehicles with power back door system***



▶ ***Vehicles without power back door system***

1 Master keys (black) — These keys work in every lock. For your Lexus dealer to make a new key with a built-in transponder chip, your dealer will need one of them.

2 Sub key (gray) — This key will not open the glove box.

3 Key number plate — Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

A transponder chip for the engine immobilizer system has been placed in the head of the master and sub keys. These chips are required for the system to function correctly, so be careful not to lose these keys. If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.

To protect items locked in the glove box when using valet parking, leave the sub key with the attendant.

Since the side doors and back door can be locked without a key, you should always carry a spare master key in case you accidentally lock your keys inside the vehicle.

If you should lose your keys or if you need additional keys, duplicates can be made by a Lexus dealer using the key number.

We recommend writing down the key number and storing it in a safe place.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Flat key

As a transponder chip is built in its key case, you can start the engine with this key.

The flat key works in every lock.

A transponder chip for engine immobilizer system has been placed in the key case of the flat key. This chip is needed to enable the system to function correctly, so be careful not to lose this key. If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.

Insert your flat key plate in its key case as shown. We recommend that you always carry this with you for emergency use. Do not leave it in your vehicle.

Starting the engine using a flat key

1. Remove the key plate from the key case.

2. Insert the key plate into the ignition switch. The indicator light keeps flashing.

3. Bring the key case closer to the ignition switch within 10 seconds as indicated by the arrow head. The indicator light goes out. This means the engine immobilizer system is automatically canceled. (For details, see “Engine immobilizer system” on page 18.) You can put the key case away then. You cannot cancel the engine immobilizer system if 10 seconds have past after you inserted the key plate. You need to remove the key plate from the ignition switch and try it again from the step 2.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Start the engine within 60 seconds after the security indicator light goes out. You cannot start the engine if 60 seconds have past after the security indicator went off. You need to remove the key plate from the ignition switch and try it again from the step 2.

NOTICE

- ***Do not let the key case become bent as the key plate may fall out or become bent also.***
- ***The flat key is designed for emergency use only. So do not use it regularly instead of other master keys.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When using a key containing a transponder chip, observe the following precautions:

- ***When starting the engine, do not use the key with a key ring resting on the key grip and do not press the key ring against the key grip. Doing so may prevent the engine from starting, or may cause the engine to stop soon after it starts.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- ***When starting the engine, do not use the key in proximity with other transponder keys (including the flat key and keys of other vehicles), and do not press other key plates against the key grip. Doing so may prevent the engine from starting, or may cause the engine to stop soon after it starts. If this happens, remove the key once and then insert it again after removing other transponder keys (including the flat key and keys of other vehicles) from the ring or while gripping or covering them with your hand to start the engine.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- ***Do not bend the key grip or flat key.***
- ***Do not cover the key grip or flat key with any material that cuts off electromagnetic waves.***
- ***Do not knock the key or flat key hard against other objects.***
- ***Do not leave the key or flat key exposed to high temperatures for a long period, such as on the dashboard or hood under direct sunlight.***
- ***Do not put the key or flat key in water or wash it in an ultrasonic washer.***
- ***Do not use the key or flat key with electromagnetic materials.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

ENGINE IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM

The engine immobilizer system is a theft prevention system. When you insert the key in the ignition switch, the transponder chip in the key's head transmits an electronic code to the vehicle. The engine will start only when the electronic code in the chip corresponds to the registered ID code for the vehicle.

The system is automatically set when the key is removed from the ignition switch. At this time, the security indicator light flashes. When you insert the key in the ignition switch, the security indicator light goes out and the system is canceled automatically, which enables the engine to start.

The transponder chip of the flat key is in its key case. You can cancel the engine immobilizer system using the flat key. (For details, see "Flat key" on page 13.)

For your Lexus dealer to make you a new key with built-in transponder chip, your dealer will need your key number and master key or the flat key. However, there is a limit to the number of additional keys your Lexus dealer can make for you.

If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

For vehicles sold in U.S.A.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

⚠ CAUTION

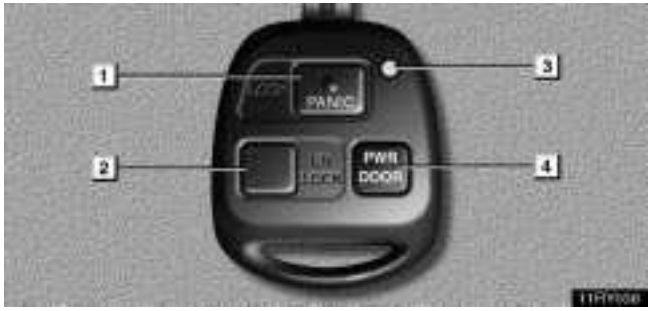
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

For vehicles sold in Canada

This device complies with RSS- 210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROL*



▶ ***Vehicles with power back door system***

1 **Locking the doors and sounding an alarm**

2 **Unlocking the doors**

3 **Indicator light**

4 **Opening or closing the power back door**

▶ ***Vehicles without power back door system***

1 **Locking the doors**

2 **Unlocking the doors**

3 **Indicator light**

4 **Sounding an alarm**

NOTE:
** This feature can be set inoperative as vehicle theft deterrent measure in case of the loss of the wireless remote control key.*
Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

When you operate any button on the key, push it slowly and surely. At this time, the indicator light on the key grip flashes once.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The operational range of the wireless remote control is approximately 1 meter (3 ft.). The effective range may vary with different conditions. To activate the wireless remote control without fail, do it approximately 1 meter (3 ft.) from your Lexus.

In the following cases, the battery in the key may be discharged. If this is the case, replace it using a special screwdriver.

- The remote control does not work.
- The operational range of wireless remote control becomes extremely short.
- The indicator light on the key is dimmed or does not come on.

For the replacement of the battery, see “Replacing the battery” on page 27. You can also have the battery of the key replaced by your Lexus dealer.

If you lose the wireless key, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to avoid the possibility of theft, or an accident. (See “If you lose your keys or lock yourself out” on page 602.)

You can use up to 4 wireless remote control keys for the same vehicle. Contact your Lexus dealer for detailed information.

The wireless remote control key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions in order not to cause damage to the key.

- Do not leave the wireless remote control key on places where the temperature becomes high such as on the dashboard.
- Do not disassemble it.
- Avoid knocking it hard against other objects or dropping it.
- Avoid putting it in water.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Locking/unlocking the doors

When you push the “LOCK” button on the key briefly, all the side doors and back door can be locked from outside the vehicle.

At this time, one beep sounds and the turn signal lights flash once.* However, when you push the “LOCK” button with any door not closed securely, the buzzer sounds for 10 seconds.** To stop the buzzer, close all the side doors and back door securely or push the “UNLOCK” button. If the key is in the ignition switch, locking cannot be done.

Make sure all the side doors and back door are locked when you leave the vehicle. Push the “LOCK” button once again.

NOTE:
** The turn signal lights can be set not to flash and the beep can be set not to sound.*
*** The buzzer can be set not to sound if a door is not closed securely.*
Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

Vehicles with power back door system — Do not push the "LOCK" button any longer than 2 to 3 seconds. Pushing the button longer activates an alarm. For details, see page 24.

When you push the "UNLOCK" button, the driver's door is unlocked. Pushing that button once again within 3 seconds from the first push, all other side doors and back door are also unlocked.*

NOTE:
** The 2-step unlocking function can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

At this time, two beeps sound and the turn signal lights flash twice.* Together with the activation of unlocking, some interior lights will come on. For further information, see "Illuminated entry system" on page 112.

You have 30 seconds to open a door after using the wireless remote unlock feature.** If a door is not opened by then, all the side doors and back door will be automatically locked again.

Even if the "LOCK" or "UNLOCK" button is kept pressed in, the locking or unlocking operation is not repeated. Release the button and then push again.

NOTE:
** The turn signal lights can be set not to flash and the beep can be set not to sound.*
*** The time before automatic re-locking can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Sounding an alarm*

▶ ***Vehicles with power back door system***

▶ ***Vehicles without power back door system***

Vehicles with power back door system — When you push the “PANIC” button for about 2 to 3 seconds, an alarm sounds to deter any person trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

Vehicles without power back door system — When you push the “PANIC” button for about 1 second, an alarm sounds to deter any person trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

If you want to stop the alarm, push any button.

This function does not work when the ignition key is in the “ON” position.

NOTE:
** The alarm can be set not to sound. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating the windows and moon roof*

Vehicles with normal type moon roof —

The windows and moon roof can be opened using a wireless key from outside the vehicle.

Others —

The windows can be opened using a wireless key from outside the vehicle.

NOTE:
** The windows and moon roof can be set inoperative. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

Push the “UNLOCK” button until the windows and moon roof start to move. A beep sounds just before opening. When you release the button, the windows and moon roof stop opening.

Opening and closing the power back door*

To open the back door: Push the “PWR DOOR” button for about 1 second. The back door fully opens automatically. At this time, the turn signal lights flash twice and two beeps sound.*****

When pushing the button while the opening operation is being performed, the back door will close. At this time, a beep sounds.***

To close the back door: Push the “PWR DOOR” button once again for about 1 second. The back door fully closes automatically. At this time, the turn signal lights flash twice and two beeps sound.*****

When pushing the button while the closing operation is being performed, the back door will open. At this time, a beep sounds.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE:
** This feature can be set inoperative.*
*** The operation method can be changed.*
**** The beep can be set not to sound.*
Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

Opening or closing operation can be performed by the button under the following conditions:

- The key is not in the ignition switch.
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The back door is unlocked.
- The power back door system is on. (The power back door off switch is pushed in.) For details, see page 42.
- To open — The back door is between in the fully-closed position and half-opened position.
- To close — The back door is between in the fully-opened position and half-opened position.

For vehicles sold in U.S.A.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTICE:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio / TV technician for help.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Replacing the battery

When you replace the battery, prepare a lithium battery CR2016 or equivalent and a special screwdriver.

⚠ CAUTION

Special care should be taken to prevent small children from swallowing the removed battery or components.

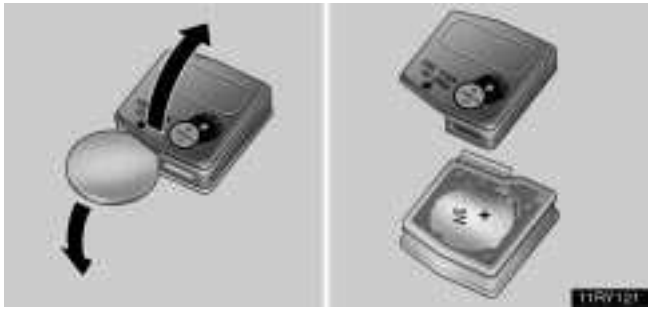
NOTICE

- ***When replacing the battery, be careful not lose the components.***
- ***Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by a Lexus dealer.***
- ***Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.***

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

1. Remove the screw, and then the cover while pushing it in the arrow direction.

2. Remove the module from the key frame.



3. Open and remove the battery case cover using a coin.

4. Remove the discharged battery and put in a new battery with the positive side up.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- ***Make sure the positive side and negative side of the battery are faced correctly.***
- ***Do not replace the battery with wet hands. Water may cause unexpected rust.***
- ***Do not touch or move any components in the transmitter, or it may interfere with proper operation.***
- ***Be careful not to bend the electrode of the battery insertion and that dust or oils do not adhere to the inside of the module.***
- ***Take care not to lose the screw.***

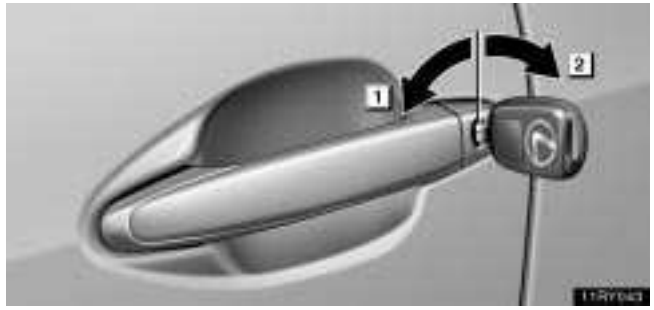
5. Replace the battery case cover.

6. Install the module into the key frame and secure the cover with the screw.

7. When pushing any button on the wireless key, make sure the indicator light comes on.

SIDE DOORS

Locking with key



▶ 1 *Lock* 2 *Unlock*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to lock and towards the back to unlock.

All the side doors and back door lock and unlock simultaneously with the driver's door. Turning the key once will unlock the driver's door and twice in succession will unlock all the side doors and back door simultaneously.*

NOTE:
** The 2-step unlocking function can be changed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.*

If a wrong key is used, the key cylinder rotates freely to isolate inside mechanism. So, door locking is protected from thieves.

Together with the activation of unlocking, some interior lights will come on. For further information, see "Illuminated entry system" on page 112.

The windows and moon roof (normal type) can be opened and closed from outside the vehicle using the key. For details, see "Power window switches" on page 72 and "Moon roof (normal type)" on page 144.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Locking with inside lock button

▶ 1 *Lock* 2 *Unlock*

Push the button forward to lock and pull the button backward to unlock.

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handles even if the lock buttons are in the locked position.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not pull the inside handle of the front doors while driving. The doors will open and an accident may occur. Lexus strongly recommends that all children be placed in the rear seat of the vehicle.

Closing the door with the lock button pushed in will also lock the door. Be careful not to lock your keys in the vehicle. Doors cannot be locked when either front door is open and the key is in the ignition.

If the vehicle is subjected to a severe frontal, rear or side impact with the ignition switch turned to the “ON” position, all the side doors and back door will unlock automatically after a few seconds.

⚠ CAUTION

Before driving, make sure the doors are closed and locked, especially when small children are in the vehicle. Along with the proper use of seat belts, locking the doors helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out from the vehicle during an accident. It also helps prevent the doors from being opened unintentionally.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Locking with power door lock switch

▶ 1 *Lock* 2 *Unlock*

To lock all the side doors and back door simultaneously, push the power door lock switch down on the front side. Pushing down on the rear side will unlock them.

The same switch is also located on the front passenger's side.

If you do any of the following, no door can be unlocked with the power door lock switch.

- Lock all the side doors and back door with the key or wireless remote control when all the side doors and back door are closed.
- Open the driver's door or front passenger's door and move the inside lock buttons of both front doors to the lock position, then close the front doors.

The power door lock switch can be reset in the following ways.

- Turn the ignition key to the "ON" position.
- Unlock all the side doors and back door with the key or wireless remote control.
- Unlock the driver's door or front passenger's door with the inside lock button, and then unlock all the side doors and back door with the power door lock switch.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting the auto door locking and unlocking functions

You can set the following auto door locking and unlocking functions.

(a) Locking linked with the shift position

All the doors are locked automatically when the selector lever is moved out of the “P” position with the ignition switch in the “ON” position.*

NOTE:
** This function is the default setting for new vehicles.*

(b) Unlocking linked with the shift position

All the doors are unlocked automatically when the selector lever is moved to the “P” position with the ignition switch in the “ON” position.

(c) Locking linked with the vehicle speed

All the doors are locked automatically when the vehicle speed reaches 20 km/h (12 mph) or higher. However, if any door is unlocked during driving, this auto locking function will not operate until the unlocked door is opened once.

(d) Unlocking linked with opening the driver’s door

All the doors are unlocked automatically when the driver’s door is opened within 10 seconds after the ignition switch is turned from “ON” to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position.

Setting the functions

1. Close all the doors.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position.
3. Within 10 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position;

- **To set function (a)**
  Push and hold the front of the power door lock switch for 5 seconds with the selector lever in the “P” position.
- **To set function (b)**
  Push and hold the rear of the power door lock switch for 5 seconds with the selector lever in the “P” position.
- **To set function (c)**
  Push and hold the front of the power door lock switch for 5 seconds with the selector lever in any position except “P”.
- **To set function (d)**
  Push and hold the rear of the power door lock switch for 5 seconds with the selector lever in any position except “P”.

All the doors are automatically lock and unlock when you release the power door lock switch. This indicates that the function is set. If all the doors do not lock and unlock, the time the switch was held may have been too short or too long. Perform the procedure over again starting from step 1.

If you want to cancel a function, repeat the procedure. Each time you perform the procedure, the function is set or cancelled.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Locking with rear door child-protector

▶ 1 *Unlock* 2 *Lock*

Whenever small children are in the vehicle, lock the rear door so that it does not open from the inside. To do this, move the lever to the “LOCK” position as shown and then close the door.

BACK DOOR

Opening and closing

▶ 1 *Push* 2 *Open*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To open the back door, push up the back door opener and raise the door.

If the back door will not open even pushing the back door opener, push it again.

When opening the back door, make sure that the back door will not come down by itself.

The back door can be opened when the vehicle is stopped.

The back door can be locked or unlocked in the following ways.

- Operate the power door lock switch. (See “Side doors” on page 29.)
- Operate the wireless remote control. (See “Wireless remote control” on page 20.)
- All the side doors and back door are locked and unlocked simultaneously with the driver’s door. (See “Side doors” on page 29.)

If the battery is disconnected or run down, the back door will be automatically locked after you reconnect, replace or recharge the battery. Be careful not to lock your keys in the vehicle.

See “Stowage precautions” on page 545 for precautions when loading luggage.

When closing the back door, use the inside handle for easier reach to the back door.

To close the back door, lower it and press down on it. After closing the back door, try pulling it up to make sure it is securely closed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

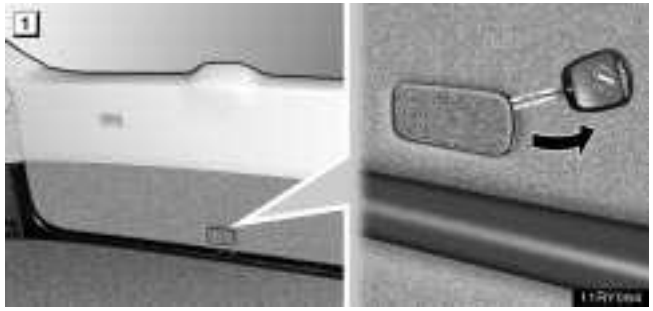
- **Keep the back door closed while driving. This not only keeps the luggage from being thrown out but also prevents exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.**
- **If the open back door hides the rear stop and tail lights or rear turn signal lights while you are parked, other road users must be warned of the presence of your vehicle by a warning triangle or other device.**

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the back door dampers, do not apply any force, paint or let any other foreign matter on them.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the back door opener does not operate



If the back door opener does not operate, you can open the back door from the inside.

To open the back door from the inside, do the following.

1. Remove the cover with a key.

2. Push the lever and open the back door.

Have your vehicle checked/repaired by your Lexus dealer if the back door opener does not operate.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

POWER BACK DOOR

Opening and closing by hand

▶ 1 *Push* 2 *Open*

To open the back door, push the back door opener and raise the door.

If the back door will not open even pushing the back door opener, push it again.

When opening the back door, make sure that the back door will not come down by itself.

The back door can be opened when the vehicle is stopped.

The back door can be locked or unlocked in the following ways.

- Operate the power door lock switch. (See “Side doors” on page 29.)
- Operate the wireless remote control. (See “Wireless remote control” on page 20.)
- All the side doors and back door are locked and unlocked simultaneously with the driver’s door. (See “Side doors” on page 29.)

If the battery is disconnected or run down, the back door will be automatically locked after you reconnect, replace or recharge the battery. Be careful not to lock your keys in the vehicle.

See “Stowage precautions” on page 545 for precautions when loading luggage.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When closing the back door, use the inside handle for easier reach to the back door.

To close the back door, lower it and press down on it. After closing the back door, try pulling it up to make sure it is securely closed.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Keep the back door closed while driving. This not only keeps the luggage from being thrown out but also prevents exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.**

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the back door dampers, do not apply any force, paint or let any other foreign matter on them.

- **If the open back door hides the rear stop and tail lights or rear turn signal lights while you are parked, other road users must be warned of the presence of your vehicle by a warning triangle or other device.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Back door closer

When the back door has not been fully closed, it is fully closed automatically even if the power back door system is off.

⚠ CAUTION

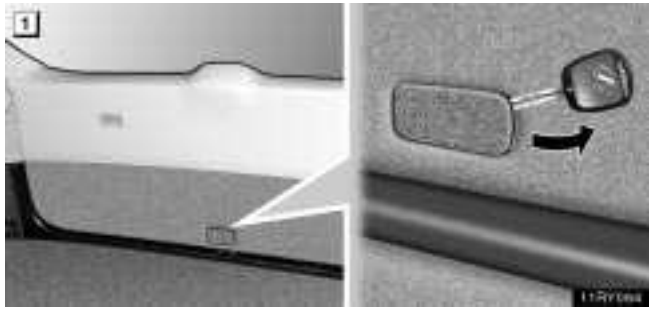
- **Careful attention is needed so as not to get your fingers trapped as the back door automatically closes when it has not been fully closed.**
- **Never allow a child to operate the back door.**

NOTICE

Do not apply excessive force when the back door closer is operating. Otherwise, the back door closer may become defective.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If the back door opener does not operate



If the back door opener does not operate, you can open the back door from the inside.

To open the back door from the inside, do the following.

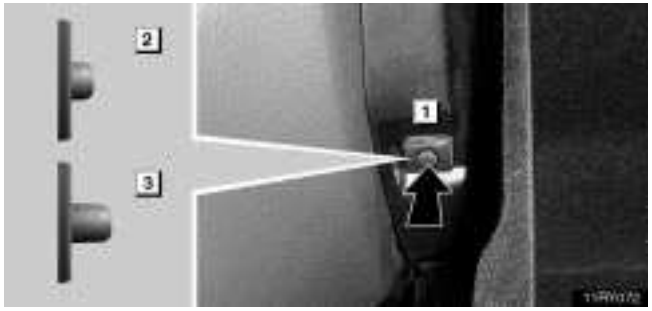
1. Remove the cover with a key.

2. Push the lever and open the back door.

Have your vehicle checked/repaired by your Lexus dealer if the back door opener does not operate.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power back door off switch



▶ 1 *Power back door off switch*
2 *Operative*
3 *Inoperative*

This switch is used to turn on and off the power back door system. In order to operate the power back door, the switch in the glove box must be pushed in. To disable the power back door feature, push out the switch.

NOTICE

When your vehicle goes through an automatic car wash, make sure the power back door system is off.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not leave small children or pets unattended in your vehicle. They could operate the power back door, and anyone around the back door could be injured. Turn off the power back door system when the power back door is not in use.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power back door switches

▶ ***Power back door opener/closer switch***

▶ ***Power back door closer switch***

Pull down the switch cover.

To open the back door, push the power back door opener/closer switch on the instrument panel for about 1 second.* The back door fully opens automatically. At this time, the turn signal lights flash twice and two beeps sound.**

When pushing the switch while the opening operation is being performed, the back door will close. At this time, a beep sounds.**

To close the back door, push the power back door opener/closer switch once again for about 1 second or push the power back door closer switch on the back door.* The back door fully closes automatically. At this time, the turn signal lights flash twice and two beeps sound.**

When pushing the switch while the closing operation is being performed, the back door will open. At this time, a beep sounds.**

NOTE:
** The time required to push the switch can be changed.*
*** The beep can be set not to sound.*
Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Opening or closing operation can be performed by the switches under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped.
- The back door is unlocked.
- The power back door system is on. (The power back door off switch is pushed in.)
- To open — When the ignition key is in the “ON” position, the transmission selector lever must be in “P”.
- To open — The back door is between in the fully-closed position and half-opened position.
- To close — The back door is between in the fully-opened position and half-opened position.

The power back door can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control. For details, see “Wireless remote control” on page 20.

Jam protection function

If anything with sufficient resistance obstructs the power back door while it is closing or opening, the back door will automatically reverse to the opposite direction.

If the jam protection function operates continuously at the closing operation more than 2 times, the back door will be stopped at that position.

Before operating the power back door, make sure there is nobody near the back door.

The resistance must be as strong as the force of the moving door, or stronger. As the back door approaches the fully-closed or fully-opened position, its moving force increases significantly.

If the back door receives a strong impact, this function may operate even if nothing is caught.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Falling down protection function

When you open the back door with the switch or the wireless remote control, if some loads such as snow on the back door make the back door fall down, the back door will automatically close. The beeps sound intermittently while closing the back door.

Before opening the power back door, make sure there is no load on the back door.

If you close the back door by hand right after the back door opening, this function may work even there is no load on the back door.

⚠ CAUTION

The power back door could injure people if they are caught in the door path. When using the power back door, observe the following:

- **Before you close the power back door, always make sure there is nobody around it. If someone's neck, head or hands get caught in a closing door, it could result in a serious injury. When anyone closes the power back door, make sure he or she operates the door safely.**
- **Do not leave small children or pets unattended in your vehicle. They could operate the power back door, and anyone around the back door could be injured. Turn off the power back door system when the power back door is not in use.**
- **Never try jamming any part of your body to make the jam protection function work intentionally.**
- **The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the back door is fully closed.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- ***Do not apply excessive force when the back door is operated automatically. Otherwise, the power back door system may become defective.***
- ***Objects caught in the path of the back door may be damaged. Make sure there is nothing in the doorway before closing the back door.***

If the battery is disconnected or run down

The power back door system may not work after you reconnect, replace or recharge the battery. In any of these cases, close the back door completely by hand to normalize the power back door system.

If the power back door system does not operate properly after the above procedure, there may be a problem in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

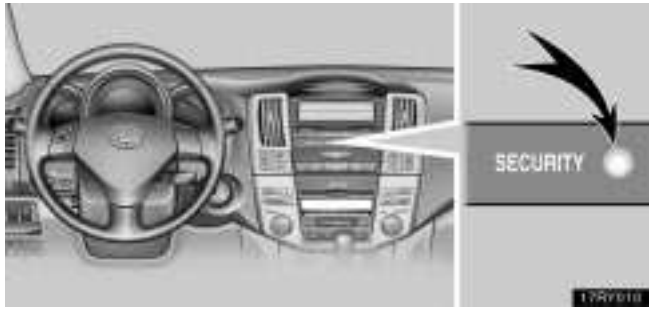
THEFT DETERRENT SYSTEM

To deter theft of the vehicle, this system is designed to sound an alarm if any of the doors or hood is forcibly unlocked or the battery terminal is disconnected and then reconnected while the vehicle is locked.

The alarm blows the horn intermittently and flashes the headlights, tail lights and turn signal lights.

Further more when the interior light switch is in the “DOOR” position, the interior light turns on.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ ***Security indicator light***

Setting the system

1. Turn the ignition key to the “LOCK” position and remove it.

The engine immobilizer system causes the indicator light to flash.

2. Close and lock all the doors and hood using an ignition key or wireless remote control.

The flashing indicator light will remain on when all the doors and hood are closed and locked.

3. After 30 seconds, the indicator starts flashing and the system is set.

Cancelling the system

When you unlock any door using an ignition key or wireless remote control, the system is cancelled.

Also, the system will be cancelled when the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position.

Activating the system

The alarm sounds for about 1minute if any of the following are operated:

- Unlocking any door without using an ignition key or wireless remote control.
- Opening hood and any doors forcibly.
- Reconnecting the battery.
- Hotwiring the ignition.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the battery becomes discharged due to the vehicle being unused for a long time, etc., when the battery is recharged or replaced, the system will give the alarm. If this happens, immediately unlock any of the doors with the key or the wireless remote control, and the alarm will stop.

If any door is unlocked and the ignition key is not in the ignition switch during the alarm sounding, the door is automatically locked.

To stop the alarm: Use either of the following methods.

- Unlock the door using an ignition key or wireless remote control.
- Turn the ignition switch on.

Testing the system

1. Open all the windows.

2. Set the system as described above.

The side doors and back door should be locked with the ignition key or wireless remote control. Be sure to wait until the indicator light starts flashing.

3. Unlock one of the doors from the inside.

The system should activate the alarm.

4. Unlock any of the doors with a key or the wireless remote control to cancel the system.

5. Repeat this operation for the other doors and hood.

When testing the hood, also check that the system is activated when the battery terminal is disconnected and then reconnected.

If the system does not work properly, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE
Disconnecting the battery may result in the erasure of information you have set in the computer memory. After reconnecting the battery, check that the memorized data has been retained. If it has been erased, input it into the computer once more.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 1 – 2

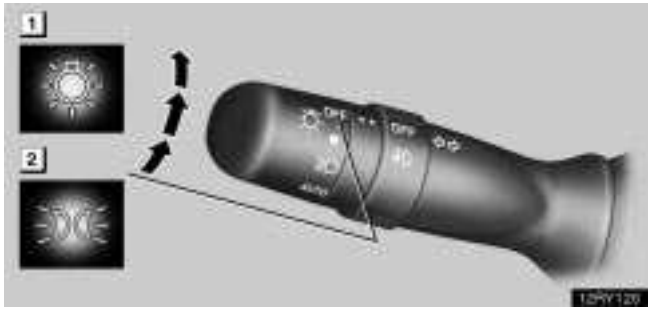
INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Switches

Headlight switch 52
Headlight dimmer and turn signal switch 56
Fog light switch 57
Windshield wiper and washer switch 58
Rear window wiper and washer switch 66
Headlight cleaner switch 68
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger, and windshield wiper deicer switch 70
Power window switches 72
Emergency flasher switch 76
Seat heater switches 78

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

HEADLIGHT SWITCH



▶ 1 ***U.S.A.*** 2 ***Canada***

To turn the lights on, twist the knob on the end of the lever.

FIRST CLICKSTOP: Only the parking, tail, license plate, side marker and instrument panel lights turn on.

SECOND CLICKSTOP: Headlights also turn on.

THIRD CLICKSTOP ("AUTO"): The headlights and all other lights automatically turn on depending on the darkness of the surroundings.

Vehicles sold in U.S.A.: When the headlights are on, the headlight indicator lights up in the instrument cluster.

Vehicles sold in Canada: When the tail lights are on, the tail light indicator lights up in the instrument cluster.

With the knob in the "AUTO" position, there may be a case that the headlights do not turn on immediately, even when the vehicle enters a dark place such as a tunnel or parking lot according to lighting conditions. In this case, we recommend you to twist the knob manually to the second clickstop to turn on the headlights immediately.

When the headlight switch is turned to the first or second clickstop, the brightness of the instrument cluster will be reduced slightly unless the instrument panel light control knob is turned fully on.

However, the brightness of the instrument cluster will not be reduced in daytime even when the headlight switch is turned to first or second clickstop.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The automatic light control sensor is on the top of the driver's side instrument panel.

Do not place anything on the instrument panel, and/or do not affix anything on the windshield to block this sensor.

When the headlights come on: The lights automatically turn off about 30 seconds after any of the side doors and back door is opened and closed with the ignition key turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position. Additionally, the lights can be turned off immediately by pushing the "LOCK" button on the wireless remote control key with all the side doors and back door locked.

When only the tail lights come on: The lights automatically turn off with the driver's door opened and the ignition key turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position. To turn them on again, turn the ignition key to the "ON" position, or turn the headlight switch off and then twist the knob until the first or second clickstop.

If you are going to park for over one week, make sure the headlight switch is off.

Daytime Running Light System

The headlights turn on at reduced intensity when the parking brake is released with the engine started, even with the light switch in the "OFF" position. They will not go off until the ignition switch is turned off.

To turn on the other exterior lights and instrument panel lights, twist the knob to the first clickstop.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Twist the knob to the second clickstop to turn on the headlights to full intensity for driving at night.

When setting the knob to the third clickstop (“AUTO”), the headlights will automatically adjust to full intensity and/or turn on the other lights depending on the darkness of the surroundings. Likewise, as the surroundings become brighter, the headlights will turn to reduced intensity, ultimately turning off the other lights.

NOTICE
To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic headlight leveling system (vehicles with discharge headlight only)

Vehicle position changes according to loading condition, passengers getting on and off, vehicle acceleration and deceleration, etc. However, the headlight beam level is always maintained automatically by the system at the proper level so that your headlights do not dazzle other road users.

If this system fails, the warning light in the instrument cluster comes on. If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

If you replace the rear suspension, contact your Lexus dealer to check the automatic headlight leveling system and headlight beam level.

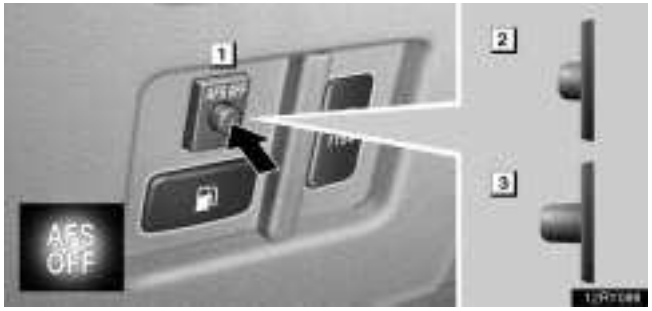
Adaptive front-lighting system

Adaptive front-lighting system (AFS) provides the proper headlight beam level according to the current driving conditions. This system moves the headlight beam left or right according to the turning angle of the steering wheel. The synergy of this system and the automatic headlight leveling system improves visibility at the intersections and curves.

The system operates when the vehicle speed rises above 30 km/h (18 mph), and stops when the vehicle speed drops below 5 km/h (3 mph).

The system can operate within the limited range of the steering wheel turning angle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ 1 ***Adaptive front-lighting system off switch***
2 ***Inoperative***
3 ***Operative***

If you do not want to activate the system, push in the switch to turn off the system. To turn it on, push it again.

When the system is turned off, the “AFS OFF” indicator lights up in the instrument cluster.

If the system fails, the indicator light in the instrument cluster will flash. If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

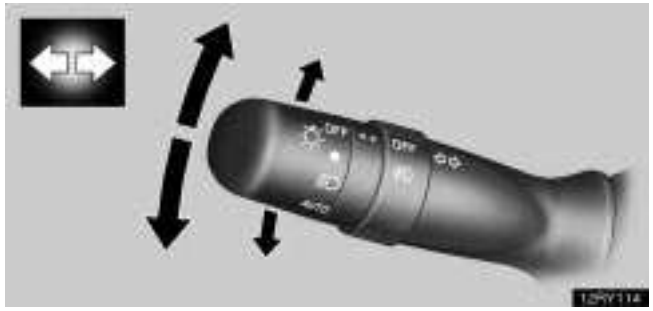
HEADLIGHT DIMMER AND TURN SIGNAL SWITCH

For high beam, push the lever forward. Pull it back for low beam. For the headlight flasher, pull it further back.

A blue light in the instrument cluster indicates high beam or headlight flasher is on.

The headlight flasher works even when the headlight switch is off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



For signaling turns, move the lever up or down in the conventional manner.

The ignition key must be in the “ON” position.

The turn signal is self-cancelling after a turn, but after a lane change, you may have to cancel it by hand. You can also signal a lane change by moving the turn signal lever partway and holding it there.

If the green light in the instrument cluster flashes faster than normal, it indicates that the front or rear turn signal bulb has burned out. If this indicator light does not come on, the fuse or the indicator light itself has probably failed.

FOG LIGHT SWITCH

To turn on the fog lights, twist the band of the headlight switch lever to the position of the fog light. The fog lights come on only when the headlights are on low beam.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

WINDSHIELD WIPER AND WASHER SWITCH

Intermittent operation type

▶ 1 ***Interval adjuster***
2 ***Washer on***

To turn the wipers on, move the lever down until you reach the desired speed setting.

The ignition key must be in the “ON” position.

There are 3 settings:

“INT” position — Intermittent operation

“LO” position — Low speed operation

“HI” position — High speed operation

Twist the interval adjuster upward to increase the wiping time interval between sweeps, and downward to decrease it.

The wiper lever must be in the “INT” position.

For mist wiper operations (a single wipe), pull the lever up and release it.

To make the washer squirt, pull the lever toward you and release it.

Also, the wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts even with the lever in the “OFF” position.

Vehicles with headlight cleaner — If you pull the windshield washer lever toward you with the headlights on, the headlight cleaner operates once automatically together with the windshield washer fluid.

The low washer fluid warning light in the instrument cluster comes on when the fluid level in the tank becomes nearly empty. For information on adding washer fluid, see “Adding washer fluid” on page 702.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

In cold weather, warm the windshield with the defroster before using the washer. This will help prevent icing, which could block your vision.

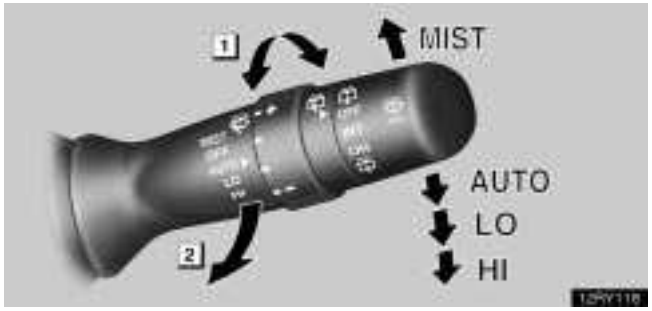
NOTICE
Do not operate the wipers if the windshield is dry. It may scratch the glass.

When waxing your vehicle, make sure that the washer nozzles do not become blocked. If a nozzle becomes blocked, contact your Lexus dealer to have the vehicle serviced.

NOTICE
If a nozzle becomes blocked, do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Raindrop detection type



▶ 1 ***Automatic control adjuster***
2 ***Washer on***

To turn the wipers on, move the lever down until you reach the desired speed setting.

The ignition key must be in the “ON” position.

There are 3 settings:

“AUTO” position — Automatic operation

“LO” position — Low speed operation

“HI” position — High speed operation

Automatic operation

The wiper speed is determined by the amount of raindrops and sunlight detected by the automatic wiper control sensor.

Twist the automatic control adjuster in the “–” direction to lower the sensitivity, and the “+” direction to boost the sensitivity.

The sensor is on the inside of the windshield as shown above.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Even if the wiper lever is in the “AUTO” position, the system will switch to intermittent operations in the following conditions:

- When the windshield gets extremely cold (at less than –10°C or 14°F)
- When the system malfunctions

However, when the windshield gets extremely hot (at more than 90°C or 194°F), the wipers do not operate even if the wiper lever is in the “AUTO” position.

When the ignition switch is turned off with the wiper lever in the “AUTO” position, and then the ignition switch is turned on again, the automatic operation may not work even if raindrops are on the windshield.

In this case, move the lever to another position and return it to the “AUTO” position again.

NOTICE

Do not apply detergent to or wet the automatic wiper control sensor when cleaning the inside of the windshield.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to get your fingers caught between the wipers and windshield.

When the wiper lever is in the “AUTO” position with the ignition switch on, the wipers could operate automatically in the following cases:

- **If you touch the upper center of the windshield adjacent to the sensor.**
- **If you wipe the upper center of the windshield (adjacent to which the sensor is located) with a towel.**
- **If the windshield vibrates.**
- **If you touch the sensor.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

For mist wiper operations (a single wipe), pull the lever up and release it.

To make the washer squirt, pull the lever toward you and release it.

Also, the wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts even with the lever in the “OFF” position.

Vehicles with headlight cleaner — If you pull the windshield washer lever toward you with the headlights on, the headlight cleaner operates once automatically together with the windshield washer fluid.

NOTICE

Do not operate the wipers if the windshield is dry. It may scratch the glass.

The low washer fluid warning light in the instrument cluster comes on when the fluid level in the tank becomes nearly empty. For information on adding washer fluid, see “Adding washer fluid” on page 702.

In cold weather, warm the windshield with the defroster before using the washer. This will help prevent icing, which could block your vision.

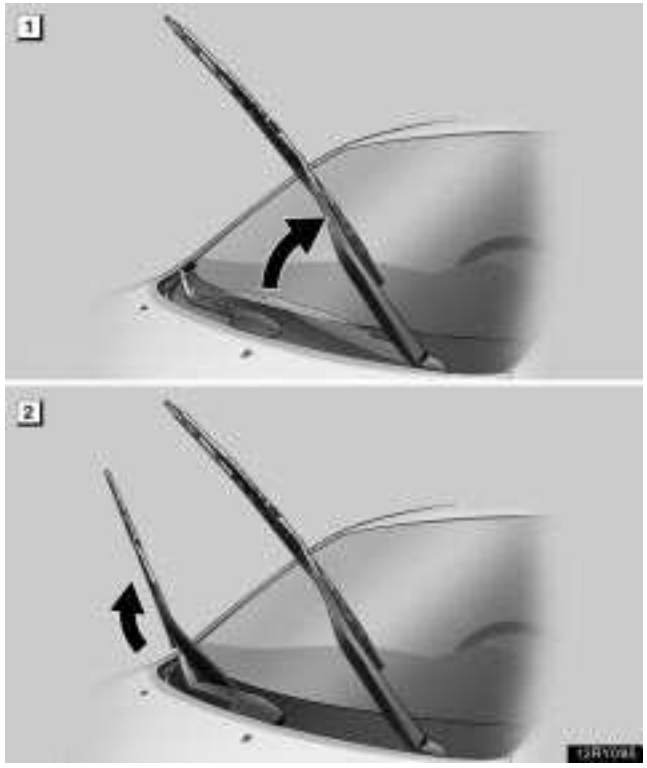
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When waxing your vehicle, make sure that the washer nozzles do not become blocked. If a nozzle becomes blocked, contact your Lexus dealer to have the vehicle serviced.

NOTICE
If a nozzle becomes blocked, do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Lifting the windshield wiper arms



When lifting the windshield wiper arms away from the window, follow the procedure in the order indicated.

1 Pull the driver side wiper arm upward.

2 Pull the passenger side wiper arm upward.

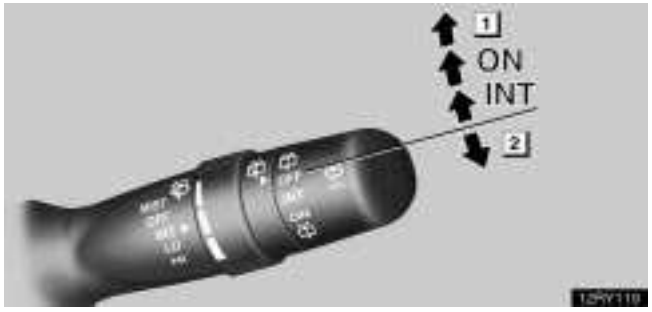
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When returning the wiper arms to their original position, push the passenger side wiper arm down first, and then push the driver side wiper arm down.

NOTICE
To prevent damage to the wipers, pull the driver side wiper arm upward first, and repeat for the passenger side. When returning the wipers to their original position, do so from the passenger side first.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHER SWITCH



▶ 1 ***Washer on during wiping***
2 ***Washer on***

To turn the wipers on, twist the knob at the end of the lever.

The ignition key must be in the “ON” position.

There are 2 settings:

“INT” position — Intermittent operation

“ON” position — Low speed operation

To make the washer squirt, twist the knob downward to position 2.

To make the washer squirt while operating in “ON” position, twist the knob upward to position 1.

The knob automatically returns from these positions after you release it.

The low washer fluid warning light in the instrument cluster comes on when the fluid level in the tank becomes nearly empty. For information on adding washer fluid, see “Adding washer fluid” on page 702.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE
Do not operate the rear window wiper if the rear window is dry. It may scratch the glass.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

HEADLIGHT CLEANER SWITCH

To spray fluid on the headlights, push the switch with the headlights on.

The ignition key must be in the “ON” position.

The low washer fluid warning light in the instrument cluster comes on when the fluid level in the tank becomes nearly empty. For information on adding washer fluid, see “Adding washer fluid” on page 702.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE
Do not turn the headlight cleaner on with the washer fluid tank empty. It may cause the cleaner motor to overheat.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

REAR WINDOW AND OUTSIDE REAR VIEW MIRROR DEFOGGER, AND WINDSHIELD WIPER DEICER SWITCH

To turn the electric rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger on, push the switch.

The ignition key must be in the “ON” position.

The thin heater wires on the inside of the rear window and the heater panels in the outside rear view mirrors will quickly clear the surface. An indicator light is on when the defogger is operating.

Vehicles sold in Canada — The windshield wiper deicers are equipped to deice the windshield wiper blades by operating simultaneously with defogger.

The system will automatically shut off when the defogger has operated about 15 minutes.

⚠ CAUTION

Since the mirror surfaces can get hot, do not touch them when the switch is on.

If further defrosting or defogging is desired, simply actuate the switch again. When the surface has cleared, push the switch once again to turn the defogger off. Continuous use may cause the battery to discharge, especially during stop-and-go driving. The defogger is not designed to dry rain water or to melt snow.

If the outside rear view mirrors are heavily coated with ice, use a spray de-icer before operating the switch.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- ***When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or connectors.***
- ***To prevent the battery from being discharged, turn the switch off when the engine is not running.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

POWER WINDOW SWITCHES

▶ 1 *For driver's window*
2 *For front passenger's window*
3 *For left rear window*
4 *For right rear window*

To raise or lower the windows, use the switch on each door. The passengers' windows can also be controlled by the switches on the driver's door.

The power windows work when the ignition key is in the "ON" position.

Key off operation: Even if the ignition key is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position with all the side doors and back door closed, the window can be operated until either front door is opened (or for 43 seconds).

Operating the switches

To lower the window, push the switch halfway down. Pull it up to raise the window. The window glass moves as long as the switch is operated.

Automatic operation: To fully raise or lower the window automatically, pull the switch fully up or push it fully down.

To stop the window partway, lightly push or pull the switch in the opposite direction and then release it.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating the window lock switch

▶ ***Indicator lights***

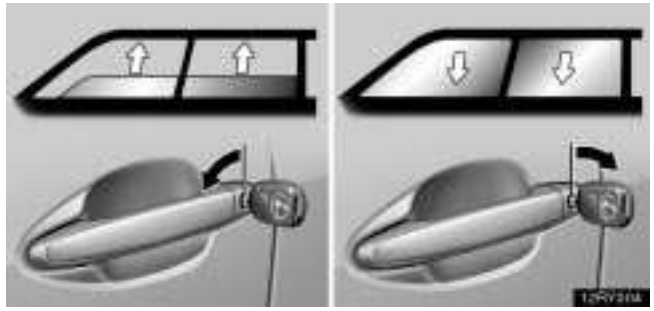
With the window lock switch pressed in, only the driver's window can be raised or lowered.

The indicator lights on the switches tell you which of the switches can be operated.

Operating the windows from outside the vehicle

The windows can be operated using an ignition key.*

NOTE:
** This feature can be deactivated.*
Ask your Lexus dealer for details.



▶ ***Close*** ▶ ***Open***

Insert the ignition key into the key hole on the driver's door.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To close the windows: Turn the key in the locking direction and hold it.

After the doors are locked, the windows begin to close. To stop in the middle, return the key.

To open the windows: Turn the key in the unlocking direction and hold it.

After the door is unlocked, the windows begin to open. To stop in the middle, return the key.

The windows also can be opened using the wireless remote control. For details, see page 25.

Jam protection function

During automatic raising operation, key off raising operation or raising operation using the ignition key from the outside, the window stops and is lowered if something gets caught between the window and window frame.

If the window receives a strong impact, this function may work even if nothing is caught.

If the battery is disconnected or run down

The power window may not operate automatically and the jam protection function will not function correctly after you reconnect, replace or recharge the battery. At this time, the indicator lights of the switches will flash. In any of these cases, you should normalize the power window on each door.

To normalize the power windows:

1. Push down the power window switch of each door and lower the windows halfway.

2. Pull up the switch until the windows close and hold the switch for a second.

Make sure that the windows open and close automatically. If the power windows cannot be operated properly, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid serious personal injury, you must do the following.

- **Before you close the power windows, always make sure there is nobody around the power windows. You must also make sure the heads, hands and other parts of the bodies of all occupants are kept completely inside the vehicle. If someone's neck, head or hands get caught in a closing window, it could result in a serious injury. When anyone closes the power windows, make sure he or she operates the windows safely.**
- **When small children are in the vehicle, never let them use the power window switches without supervision. Use the window lock switch to prevent them from making unexpected use of the switches.**
- **Be sure to remove the ignition key when you leave your vehicle.**
- **Never leave anyone (particularly a small child) alone in your vehicle, especially with the ignition key still inserted. Otherwise, he/she could use the power window switches and get trapped in a window. Unattended person (particularly a small child) can be involved in a serious accident.**
- **Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.**
- **The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window is fully closed.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

EMERGENCY FLASHER SWITCH

▶ ***Vehicles with navigation system***

▶ ***Vehicles without navigation system***

To turn on the emergency flashers, push the switch. To turn them off, push the switch again.

All the turn signal lights will flash. The emergency flashers will work with the engine running or off and with or without the ignition key.

Turn on the emergency flashers to warn other drivers if you must stop your vehicle where it might be a traffic hazard.

Always pull your vehicle as far off the road as possible.

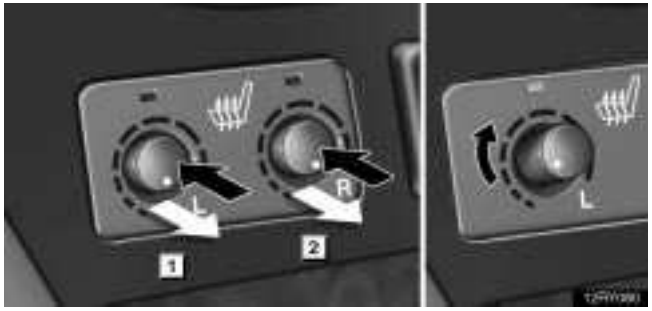
The turn signal light switch will not work when the emergency flashers are in operation.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE
To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the switch on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SEAT HEATER SWITCHES



▶ 1 *For driver's seat*
2 *For front passenger's seat*

The front seat heater has two switches: one marked "L" (for driver's seat) and the other marked "R" (for front passenger's seat).

The ignition key must be in the "ON" position to operate seat heaters.

To use the seat heater:

1. Push the knob to pop it out.
2. Turn the knob clockwise. The indicator light turns on.
3. Adjust the knob to the desired temperature.

To turn off the seat heater, turn the knob counterclockwise until it stops.

Push the knob into the recessed position when not in use.

⚠ CAUTION

Occupants must use caution when operating the seat heater because they may experience minor burns even at low temperatures. Use extra caution for;

- **Babies, small children, elderly persons, sick persons or handicapped persons**
- **Persons who have delicate skin**
- **Persons who are exhausted**
- **Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs which induce sleep (sleeping drug, cold remedy, etc.).**

To prevent the seat from overheating, do not use the seat heater with a blanket, cushion, or other insulating objects which cover the seat.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- ***Do not put unevenly weighted objects on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.***
- ***When cleaning the seats, do not use organic substances (paint thinner, benzine, alcohol, gasoline, etc.). They may damage the heater and seat surface.***
- ***To prevent the battery from being discharged, turn the switch off when the engine is not running.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 1 – 3

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Gauges, meters and service reminder indicators

Fuel gauge 81
Engine coolant temperature gauge 82
Tachometer 84
Odometer and trip meter 86
Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers 87
Cruise information display 101
Instrument panel light control 104
Multi-display light control 105

DEALER E-PROCESS

FUEL GAUGE

▶ ***Low fuel level warning light***

The gauge indicates the approximate quantity of fuel remaining in the tank when the ignition switch is on.

It is a good idea to keep the tank over 1/4 full.

If the fuel level approaches “E” or the low fuel level warning light comes on, fill the fuel tank as soon as possible.

On inclines or curves, due to the movement of fuel in the tank, the fuel gauge needle may fluctuate or the low fuel level warning light may come on earlier than usual.

If the fuel tank is completely empty, the malfunction indicator lamp comes on. Fill the fuel tank immediately.

The indicator lamp goes off after driving several times. If the indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

It is not a malfunction even if the needle of the fuel gauge returns to “E” when the ignition switch is turned to the “START” position.

See the inner back cover for fuel capacity and recommended fuel selection.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

▶ ***Normal range***

The gauge indicates the engine coolant temperature when the ignition switch is on. The engine operating temperature will vary with changes in weather and engine load.

If the needle points to the red zone or higher, stop your vehicle and allow the engine to cool.

Your vehicle may overheat during severe operating conditions, such as:

- Driving up a long hill on a hot day.
- Reducing speed or stopping after high speed driving.
- Idling for a long period with the air conditioning on in stop-and-go traffic.
- Towing a trailer.

It is not a malfunction even if the needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge returns to “C” when the ignition switch is turned to the “START”.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- ***Do not remove the thermostat in the engine cooling system as this may cause the engine to overheat. The thermostat is designed to control the flow of coolant to keep the temperature of the engine within the specified operating range.***
- ***Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. See “If your vehicle overheats” on page 495.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

TACHOMETER

The tachometer indicates engine speed in thousands of rpm (revolutions per minute). Use it while driving to prevent engine over-revving.

Driving with the engine running too fast causes excessive engine wear and poor fuel economy. Remember, in most cases the slower the engine speed, the greater the fuel economy.

It is not a malfunction even if the needle of the tachometer returns to the bottom position when the ignition switch is turned to the “START” position.

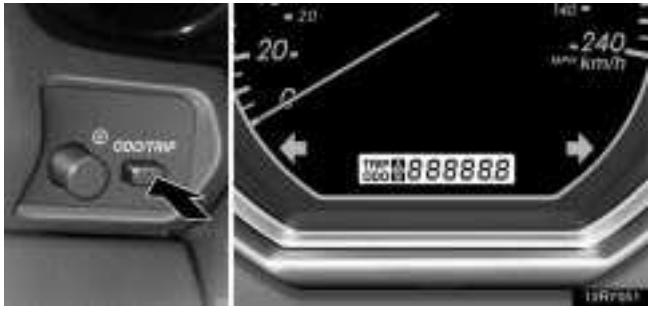
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE
Do not let the indicator needle get into the red zone. This may cause severe engine damage.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

ODOMETER AND TRIP METER

▶ ***Vehicles with dynamic laser cruise control***



▶ ***Vehicles without dynamic laser cruise control***

This meter displays the odometer and two trip meters. To change the mode indication, push the "ODO/TRIP" button briefly. Each time you push the button, the mode changes in order from the odometer to trip meter A to trip meter B, then back to the odometer, etc.

The odometer records the total distance the vehicle has been driven. The twin trip meter records two different distances independently.

For example, you can use one meter to calculate the fuel economy and the other to measure the distance on each trip.

To set the A trip meter to zero, display the A meter reading, push the button and hold it. The same applies for the B trip meter.

The data of trip meters will be cancelled if the electrical power source is disconnected.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS AND WARNING BUZZERS

IF THIS INDICATOR OR BUZZER COMES ON...		DO THIS.
(a)	or (indicator and buzzer)	If parking brake is off, stop immediately and contact Lexus dealer.
(b)	(indicator and buzzer)	Fasten driver's seat belt.
(c)		Fasten front passenger's seat belt.
(d)		Take vehicle to Lexus dealer immediately.
(e)		Stop and check.
(f)		Stop and check.
(g)		Replace engine oil.
(h)	or	Take vehicle to Lexus dealer.
(i)	or	Take vehicle to Lexus dealer. If brake system warning light is also on, stop immediately and contact Lexus dealer.
(j)	(indicator and buzzer)	Close all side doors and back door.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS

IF THIS INDICATOR OR BUZZER COMES ON...		DO THIS.
(k)		Replace bulb.
(l)		Take vehicle to Lexus dealer.
(m)		Stop and check.
(n)		Add washer fluid.
(o)	Low fuel level warning light	Fill up tank.
(p)		Take vehicle to Lexus dealer.

IF THIS INDICATOR OR BUZZER COMES ON...		DO THIS.
(q)		Adjust tire inflation pressure. If light remains, contact Lexus dealer.
(r)	Dynamic laser cruise control master warning light	Check condition according to warning code. If system malfunctions, contact Lexus dealer.
(s)	Key reminder buzzer	Remove key.
(t)	Open moon roof reminder buzzer	Close moon roof.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(a) Brake System Warning Light and Buzzer

This light comes on in the following cases when the ignition key is in the “ON” position.

- **When the parking brake is applied...**

This light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position even after the parking brake is released.

If the vehicle speed rises above 5 km/h (3 mph) with the parking brake applied, a buzzer sounds.

- **When the brake fluid level is low...**

CAUTION

It is dangerous to continue driving normally when the brake fluid level is low.

Have your vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer in the following case:

- The light does not come on even if the parking brake is applied when the ignition key is in the “ON” position.
- The light does not come on even if the ignition key is turned on with the parking brake released.

A warning light turning on briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.

CAUTION

If either of the following conditions occurs, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

- **The light does not turn off even after the parking brake is released while the engine is running.**

  In this case, the brakes may not work properly and your stopping distance will become longer. Depress the brake pedal firmly and bring the vehicle to an immediate stop.
- **The brake system warning light remains on together with the “ABS” warning light.**

  In this case, not only the anti-lock brake system will fail but also the vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(b) Driver's Seat Belt Reminder Light and Buzzer

This light and buzzer remind you to buckle up the driver's seat belt.

Once the ignition key is turned to the "ON" or "START" position, the reminder light flashes and buzzer sounds if the driver's seat belt is not fastened. Unless the driver fastens the belt, the light stays flashing and the buzzer stops after about 4 to 8 seconds.

(c) Front Passenger's Seat Belt Reminder Light

This light reminds you to buckle up the front passenger's seat belt.

Once the ignition key is turned to the "ON" or "START" position, the reminder light flashes if a passenger sits in the front passenger seat and does not fasten the seat belt.

If luggage or other load is placed on the front passenger seat, depending on its weight, the reminder light may come on.

(d) SRS Warning Light

The indicator comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. It goes off after about 6 seconds. This means the SRS airbags and front seat belt pretensioners are operating properly.

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies, curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies, driver's seat position sensor, driver's seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system, "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light, front passenger's seat belt buckle switch, front seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources.

If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction somewhere in the parts monitored by the warning light system. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

- The light does not come on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position or remains on for more than 6 seconds or flashes.
- The light comes on or starts flashing while driving.

If the light stays on, it indicates that the driver and front passenger airbags and/or front passenger occupant classification system and "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light fail. If the light flashes, the side and curtain shield airbags and/or seat belt pretensioners have a problem.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(e) Discharge Warning Light

This light warns that the battery is being discharged.

If it comes on while you are driving, stop the vehicle, turn off the engine, and check for the cause. Look first at the engine drive belt.

- If it is loose or broken, the generator will not charge the battery properly.

NOTICE
Do not continue driving if the engine drive belt is broken or loose.

- If the belt is O.K., there is a problem somewhere in the charging system.

The engine ignition will continue to operate, however, until the battery is discharged. Turn off the air conditioning, blower, radio, etc., and drive directly to the nearest Lexus dealer or repair shop.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(f) Low Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light

This light warns that the engine oil pressure is too low.

If it flickers or stays on while you are driving, pull off the road to a safe place and stop the engine immediately. Call a Lexus dealer or qualified repair shop for assistance.

NOTICE
Do not drive the vehicle with the warning light on — even for one block. It may ruin the engine.

The light may occasionally flicker when the engine is idling or it may come on briefly after a hard stop. There is no cause for concern if it then goes out when the engine is accelerated slightly.

The light may come on when the oil level is extremely low. It is not designed to indicate low oil level, and the oil level must be checked using the oil level dipstick.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(g) Engine Oil Replacement Reminder Light (for vehicles sold in U.S.A.)

This light reminds you when to replace the engine oil.

This light will come on when the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position and will go off after about a few seconds.

When you drive for about 8000 km (5000 miles) after the engine oil replacement, this light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then flashes for about 12 seconds with the ignition key turned to the “ON” position. If you continue driving without replacing the engine oil, and if the distance driven exceeds 12000 km (7500 miles), the light will come on after the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position. The light will remain on thereafter.

If the light is flashing, we recommend that you replace the engine oil at an early opportunity depending on the driving and road conditions. If the light comes on, replace it as soon as possible.

The system must be reset after the engine oil replacement. Reset the system by the following procedure:

1. Turn the ignition key to the “OFF” position with the odometer reading shown. (For details, see “Odometer and trip meter” on page 73.)

2. Turn the ignition key to the “ON” position while holding down the “ODO/TRIP” button.

Hold down the button for at least 5 seconds. The odometer indicates “000000” and the light goes off.

If the system fails to reset, the light will continue flashing.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(h) Malfunction Indicator Lamp

This lamp comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position and goes off after the engine starts. This means that the warning light system is operating properly.

If the lamp remains on, or the lamp comes on while driving, first check the followings.

- Empty fuel tank

  If the fuel tank is empty, refuel immediately.

- Loose fuel tank cap

  If the fuel tank cap is loose, securely tighten it.

These cases are temporary malfunctions. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after taking several driving trips.

If the lamp does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

If the fuel tank is not empty or the fuel tank cap is not loose...

- There is a problem somewhere in the engine, emission control system, electronic throttle control system, automatic transmission electrical system or warning light system itself.

Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

If engine speed does not increase when the accelerator pedal is depressed, there may be a problem somewhere in your electronic throttle control system.

At this time, vibration may occur. However, if you depress the accelerator pedal more firmly and slowly, you can drive your vehicle at low speeds. Have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Even if the abnormality of the electronic throttle control system is corrected during low speed driving, the system may not be recovered until the engine is stopped and the ignition key is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

⚠ CAUTION

Be especially careful to prevent erroneous pedal operation.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Emissions Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) programs

Your vehicle may not pass a state emission inspection if the malfunction indicator lamp remains on. Contact your Lexus dealer to check your vehicle's emission control system and OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) system before taking your vehicle for the inspection.

See "Emissions Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) programs" on page 539.

(i) "ABS" Warning Light

The light comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. If the anti-lock brake system and the brake assist system work properly, the light turns off after a few seconds. Thereafter, if either of the systems malfunctions, the light comes on again.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system, the brake assist system, the traction control system and the vehicle stability control system do not operate, but the brake system still operates conventionally.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system does not operate so that the wheels could lock up during a sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction somewhere in the components monitored by the warning light system. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

- The light does not come on when the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position, or remains on.
- The light comes on while you are driving.

A warning light turning on briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.

⚠ CAUTION

If the “ABS” warning light remains on together with the brake system warning light, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

In this case, not only the anti-lock brake system will fail but also the vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking.

(j) Open Door Warning Light and Buzzer

This light remains on until all the side doors and back door are completely closed.

The light consists of a base light (shape of the vehicle) and 5 separate lights. Each light indicates which door is open.

If the vehicle speed rises above 5 km/h (3 mph) with any door open, the buzzer will sound and the light keeps flashing until the door is closed.

(k) Rear Light Failure Warning Light

If this light comes on when the headlight switch is turned on (at the first or second clickstop), it indicates that one or more of the tail lights are burned out.

Have defective bulbs replaced as soon as possible.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(l) “VSC” Warning Light

This light warns that there is a problem somewhere in the vehicle stability control system or traction control system.

The light will come on when the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position and will go off after a few seconds.

If the light comes on while driving, the vehicle stability control system and traction control system do not work. However, as conventional braking operates when applied, there is no problem to continue your driving.

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer:

- The warning light does not come on after the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position.
- The warning light remains on after the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position.
- The warning light comes on while driving.

The “TRAC OFF” indicator light will come on when the “VSC” warning light comes on even if the “TRAC OFF” switch is not pushed.

NOTICE

Continued driving with the warning light on may damage the automatic transmission.

(m) Automatic Transmission Fluid Temperature Warning Light (four-wheel drive models only)

This light warns that the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too high.

If this light comes on while you are driving, slow down and pull off the road. Stop the vehicle at a safe place and put the selector lever in “P” and leave the engine idling until the light goes off. If the light goes off, you can start the vehicle again. If the light does not go off, call a Lexus dealer or qualified repair shop for assistance.

(n) Low Washer Fluid Warning Light

This light comes on when the fluid level in the tank becomes nearly empty. Fill the tank as soon as possible.

(o) Low Fuel Level Warning Light

This light comes on when the fuel level in the tank becomes nearly empty. Fill the tank as soon as possible.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

On inclines or curves, due to the movement of fuel in the tank, the low fuel level warning light may come on earlier than usual.

(p) Automatic Headlight Leveling System Warning Light (vehicles with discharge headlight only)

This light warns that when there is a problem somewhere in the automatic headlight leveling system.

The light will come on when the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position, and will go off after a few seconds.

If it comes on while driving, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

(q) Low Tire Pressure Warning Light

This light warns that tire inflation pressure is critically low. The light comes on when the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position. It goes off after a few seconds. This indicates that the low tire pressure warning system is functioning properly.

If the light comes on while driving, adjust tire inflation pressure to the specified level. (See “Specifications” on page 570.) Once the ignition switch is turned off, the warning light also go off. If the light comes on again when the vehicle is started after adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level, have the low tire pressure warning system checked at your Lexus dealer.

If the light blinks once every second, the low tire pressure warning system may be malfunctioning. Have the system checked at your Lexus dealer.

If the light blinks twice every second, the low tire pressure warning system needs to be initialized. For details, see “Tire pressure warning system” on page 458.

(r) Dynamic Laser Cruise Control Master Warning Light

This light warns that there is a problem somewhere in the dynamic laser cruise control system.

The light will come on when the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position and will go off after a few seconds.

When the light comes on, the alarm sounds and the warning code will appear on the display. At this time, the dynamic laser cruise control is cancelled. For details, see “Dynamic laser cruise control” on page 412.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(s) Key Reminder Buzzer

This buzzer reminds you to remove the key when you open the driver's door with the ignition key in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

(t) Open Moon Roof Reminder Buzzer

This buzzer reminds you to close the moon roof when you turn the ignition key to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position and open the driver's door.

How to check all the service reminder indicators

(except the low fuel level warning light):

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Open the door.

The following service reminder indicator should come on. It goes off when you close the door completely.

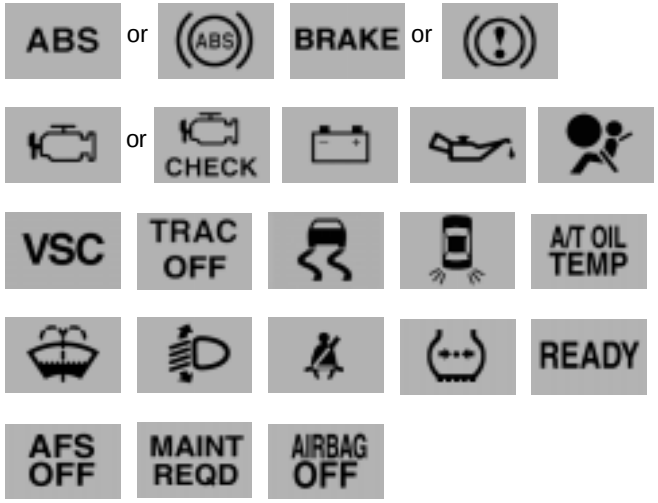
3. Turn the ignition key to the "ON" position.

The following service reminder indicators should come on.

- Height control indicator lights
- Height control off indicator light
- Easy access mode indicator light
- Dynamic laser cruise control master warning light

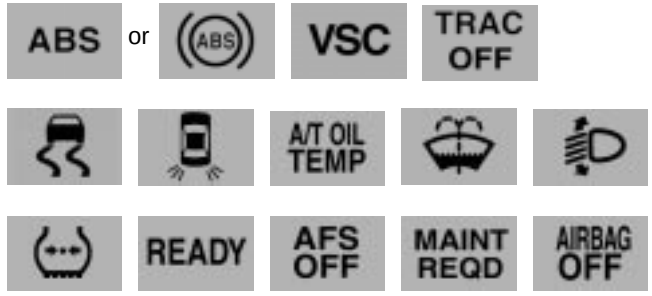
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

GAUGES, METERS AND SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS



The following service reminder indicators go off after a few seconds.

- Height control indicator lights
- Height control off indicator light
- Easy access mode indicator light
- Dynamic laser cruise control master warning light

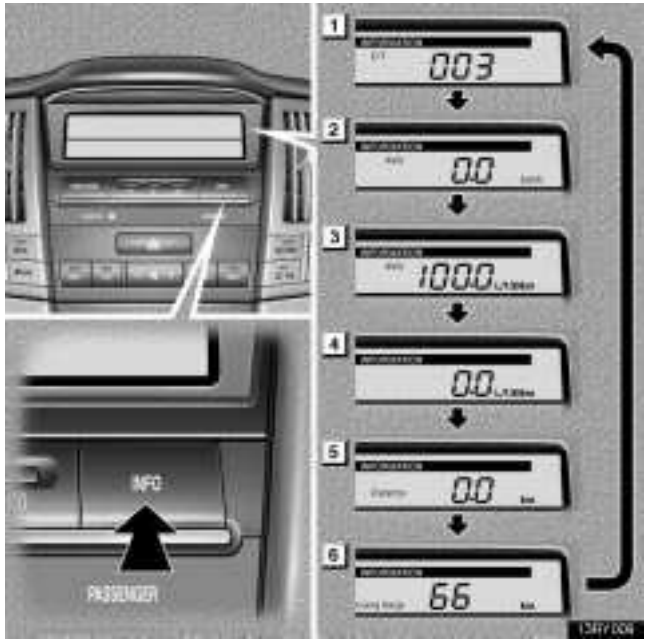


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The following service reminder indicator goes off after 6 seconds.

If any service reminder indicator or warning buzzer does not function as described above, have it checked by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

CRUISE INFORMATION DISPLAY



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The following information is displayed in the instrument cluster when you push the “INFO” button with the ignition switch turned on.

Each time you push the “INFO” button, the display toggles through this information.

(1) Driving time after engine start

(2) Average vehicle speed after engine start

(3) Average fuel consumption after refueling

(4) Instantaneous fuel consumption

(5) Driving distance after engine start

(6) Driving range

The displayed values in the cruise information display indicate general driving conditions. Accuracy varies with driving habits and road conditions.

When the ignition switch is on, the last previously used mode displayed just before the ignition switch is off will appear.

If the electrical power source has been disconnected from the cruise information display, the display will automatically be set to the initial mode.

When the instrument panel lights are turned on, the brightness of the display will be reduced.

You can adjust the brightness of the display. To adjust the brightness, see “Multi-display light control” on page 91.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not adjust the display while the vehicle is moving. Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.

(1) Driving time after engine start (“E/T”)

The elapsed time after the engine starts is displayed.

When the engine is started, driving time is counted from 0:00. Up to 11:59 (11 hours, 59 minutes) can be displayed. When the driving time exceeds 11:59, the counter returns to 0:00.

The calculation is reset when the ignition switch is turned off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(2) Average vehicle speed after engine start ("AVG MPH" or "AVG km/h")

Average vehicle speed after engine start is calculated and displayed based on total driving distance and total driving time with the engine running.

The displayed value is updated every 10 seconds.

To reset the calculations, push and hold the "INFO" button for about 1 second when the display indicates the average vehicle speed after engine start.

(3) Average fuel consumption after refueling ("AVG MPG" or "AVG L/100 km")

Average fuel consumption after refueling is calculated and displayed based on total driving distance and total fuel consumption with the engine running.

The displayed value is updated every 10 seconds.

The calculation is reset when the vehicle starts after refueling.

(4) Instantaneous fuel consumption ("MPG" or "L/100 km")

The instantaneous fuel consumption is calculated and displayed based on distance and fuel consumption for 2 seconds with the engine running.

The displayed value is updated every 2 seconds.

Note that an accurate figure may not be shown in the following cases.

- When the vehicle is stopped with the engine running, the display will indicate the extremely high fuel consumption.
- When the vehicle is driving down a long slope, applying the engine brake, the display will indicate the extremely low fuel consumption.

(5) Driving distance after engine start ("Distance miles" or "Distance km")

The driving distance after engine start is calculated and displayed based on vehicle speed after engine running.

The displayed value is updated every time the fuel equivalent for 0.1 km or 0.1 mile is consumed.

To reset the calculations, push and hold the "INFO" button for about 1 second when the display indicates the driving distance after engine start.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(6) Driving range ("Cruising Range miles" or "Cruising Range km")

The distance the vehicle can travel with the remaining fuel is calculated and displayed based on the quantity of remaining fuel and past fuel consumption.

The driving range display indicates the approximate distance that you can drive until the fuel gauge reaches "E". It is different from the actual distance traveled.

The displayed value is updated every time the fuel equivalent for 1 mile or 1 km is consumed.

The actual driving range varies with driving habits and road conditions. If fuel consumption is good, the driving range will be longer. If fuel consumption is poor, the driving range will be shorter.

If the low fuel level warning light comes on, refuel even if the display indicates that the vehicle can be driven further.

INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHT CONTROL

To adjust the brightness of the instrument panel lights, turn the knob.

With the knob turned fully clockwise, the intensity of the instrument panel lights will not be reduced when the headlight switch is on.

If the instrument panel light control knob is turned fully counterclockwise, the foot lights will turn off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

MULTI-DISPLAY LIGHT CONTROL

To adjust the brightness of the multi-display light, push and release the “BRIGHTNESS” button until the desired brightness is obtained.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 1 – 4

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Interior equipment

Vanity mirrors 108
Interior lights 109
Personal lights 110
Luggage compartment lights 111
Illuminated entry system 112
Clock 114
Outside temperature display 115
Power outlets 115
Rear console box 119
Glove box 121
Garage door opener 122
Cup holders 126
Overhead console box 129
Auxiliary boxes 131
Auxiliary box and grocery bag hooks 132
Luggage cover 134
Floor mat 137
Tie-down hookss 138

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

VANITY MIRRORS

To use the vanity mirror, swing the sun visor down and open the cover.

The vanity light comes on when you open the cover.

To adjust the brightness of the vanity light, slide the knob.

Sun visors

1 **To block out glare from the front , swing the sun visor down.**

2 **To block out glare from the side, remove the sun visor from the hook and swing it to the side.**

3 **To block out glare coming obliquely from behind you, slide the visor backwards.**

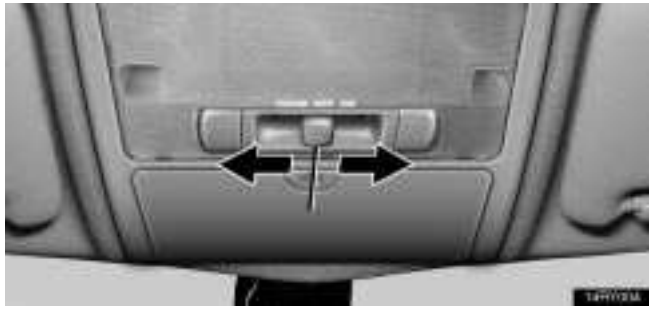
At this position, the vanity light does not come on.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

INTERIOR LIGHTS

Front

▶ ***Vehicles with moon roof***



▶ ***Vehicles without moon roof***

To turn on the interior light, slide the switch.

The interior light switch has the following positions:

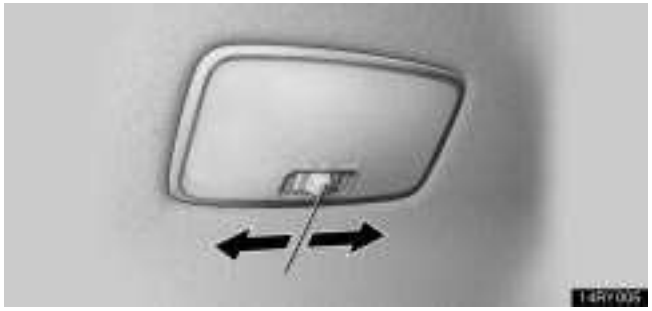
“ON” — Keeps the light on all the time.

“OFF” — Turns the light off.

“DOOR” — Turns the light on when any of the side doors or back door is opened. The light goes off when all the side doors and back door are closed. For details, see “Illuminated entry system” on page 98.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear



To turn on the interior light, slide the switch.

The interior light switch has the following positions:

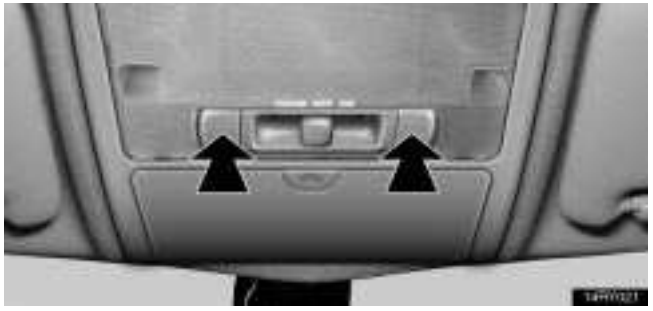
“ON” — Keeps the light on all the time.

“OFF” — Turns the light off.

“DOOR” — Turns the light on when any of the side doors or back door is opened. The light goes off when all the side doors and back door are closed. For details, see “Illuminated entry system” on page 98.

PERSONAL LIGHTS

▶ ***Vehicles with moon roof***

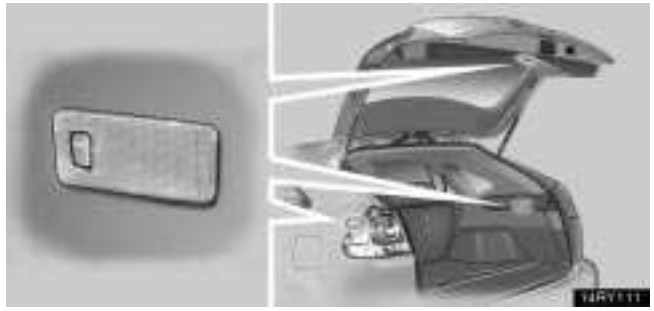


▶ ***Vehicles without moon roof***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To turn on the personal light, push the switch. To turn it off, push the switch again.

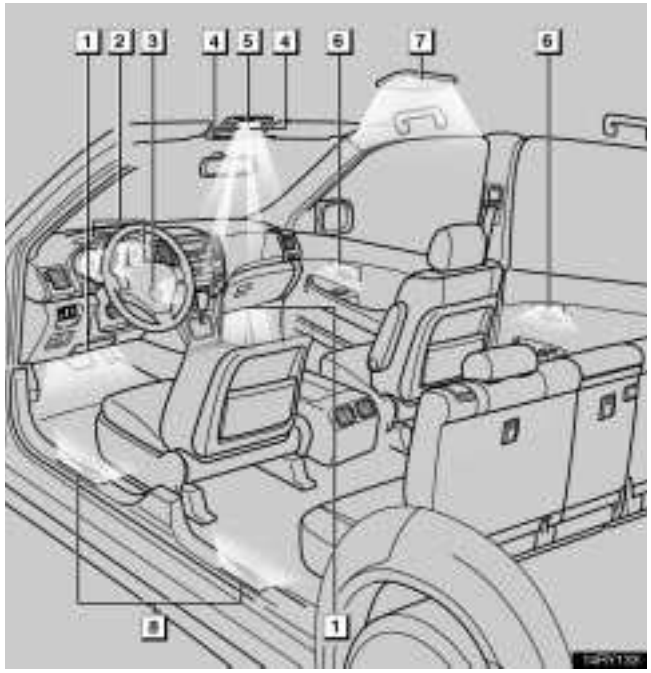
LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT LIGHTS



To turn on the luggage compartment light, open the back door and push the switch. The light goes off when the back door is closed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

ILLUMINATED ENTRY SYSTEM



► 1 ***Foot lights (on some models)***
2 ***Meter ring light***
3 ***Ignition switch light***
4 ***Center console spot lights***
5 ***Front interior light (with the “DOOR” position)***
6 ***Inside door handle lights (on some models)***
7 ***Rear interior light (with the “DOOR” position)***
8 ***Scuff plate lights (on some models)***

All of the lights except the center console spot lights and meter ring light will come on when any of the side doors are opened.* After all the doors are closed, the lights remain on for about 15 seconds before fading out.**

NOTE:
** The operating condition can be changed.*
*** The duration of lighting can be changed.*
Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

However, in the following cases, the lights go out immediately:

- All of the lights except the center console spot lights and meter ring light — All the side doors and back door are locked.
- Ignition switch light, front interior light, rear interior light and scuff plate lights — All the side doors are closed and the ignition key is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

When any of the side doors is unlocked, all of the lights except the center console spot light and meter ring light will come on and remain on for about 15 seconds before fading out.

To prevent the battery from being discharged, all of the lights will automatically turn off when the ignition key is removed and the door is left opened for about 20 minutes.

Ignition switch light, front interior light, rear interior light and scuff plate lights

The ignition switch light, front interior light, rear interior light and scuff plate lights also come on and remain on for about 15 seconds before fading out when the ignition switch is turned to the “LOCK” position.

Foot lights and inside door handle lights

The foot lights and inside door handle lights also come on when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position with the selector lever in the “P” position. When the selector lever is moved out of the “P” position, the foot lights and inside door handle lights will be dimmed.*

NOTE:
** The foot lights and inside door handle lights can be set to turn off when the selector lever is moved out of the “P” position.*
Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

When you turn the engine off, the lights remain on for about 15 seconds before fading out.

When the instrument panel light control knob is turned fully counterclockwise, the foot lights will turn off.

Center console spot lights

The center console spot lights come on when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

Meter ring light

The meter ring light comes on when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

The light also come on and remain on for about 15 seconds before fading out when the driver’s door is opened. However, if the driver’s door is opened when you turn the engine off, the light will not come on.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CLOCK

The digital clock indicates the time with the ignition key at the “ACC” or “ON” position. To reset the hour, press the “H” button. To reset the minutes, press the “M” button. To adjust the time to the nearest hour, press the “:00” button.

For example, if the “:00” button is pressed when the time is between 9:30 — 9:59 or between 10:01 — 10:29, the time will change to 10:00.

When the instrument panel lights are turned on, the brightness of the display will be reduced.

You can adjust the brightness of the display. To adjust the brightness, see “Multi-display light control” on page 91.

If the electrical power source has been disconnected from the clock, the time display will automatically be set to 1:00 (one o’clock).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

OUTSIDE TEMPERATURE DISPLAY

This display shows the outside temperature when the ignition switch is on.

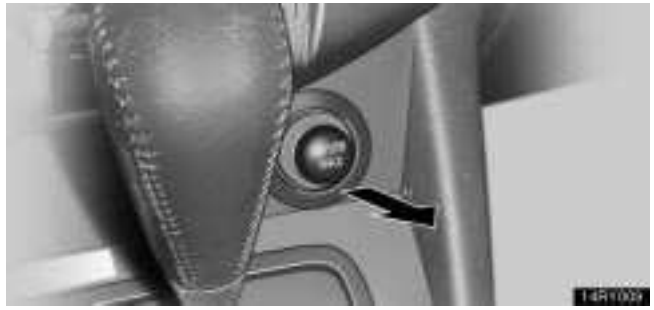
The displayed temperature ranges from -30°C (-22°F) up to 50°C (122°F). If the temperature does not appear on the display or it shows “- -”, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

When the instrument panel lights are turned on, the brightness of the display will be reduced.

You can adjust the brightness of the display. To adjust the brightness, see “Multi-display light control” on page 91.

POWER OUTLETS

12 VDC



▶ ***On the center cluster***

▶ ***On the tray under the rear console box***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ *In the luggage compartment*

The power outlets are designed for power supply for car accessories.

The ignition key must be in the “ACC” or “ON” position for the power outlets to be used.

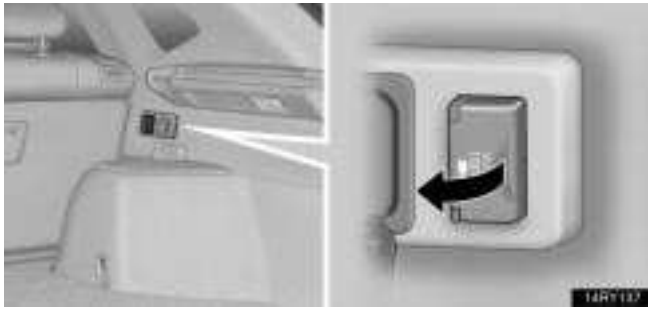
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- ***To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use the electricity over the total vehicle capacity of 12V/120W (all the outlets together).***
- ***To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the engine is not running.***
- ***Close the power outlet lids when the power outlets are not in use. Inserting anything other than an appropriate plug that fits the outlet, or allowing any liquid into the outlet may cause electrical failure or short circuits.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

115 VAC



This power outlet is designed for use as a power supply for the audio device connected to the input terminal adapter.

The key must be in the “ON” position for the power outlet to be used.

The maximum capacity for this power outlet is 115 VAC/100W. If you attempt to use an appliance that requires more than 115 VAC or 100W, the protection circuit will activate and cut the power supply. The power supply will restart automatically when you use an appliance that operates within the 115 VAC/100W limits.

NOTICE

- ***To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.***

▶ ***Main switch***

To use the power outlet, push the main switch on the instrument panel.

An indicator light will illuminate to indicate that the power outlet is ready for use.

Push the main switch once again to turn the power outlet off. When the power outlet is not in use, make sure that the main switch is turned off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- ***Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use. Inserting a foreign object other than the appropriate plug that fits the outlet may cause electrical failure or short circuit.***

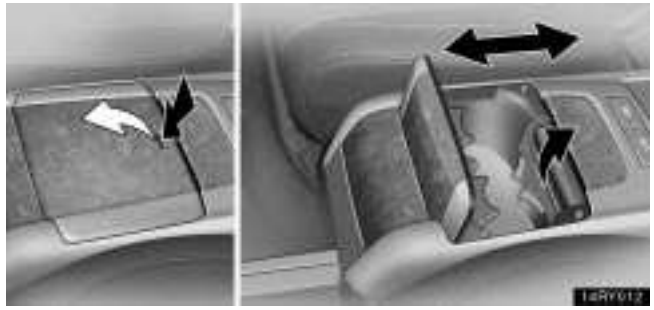
The power outlet is not designed for the following electric appliances even though their power consumption is under 115 VAC/100W. These appliances may not operate properly.

- **Appliances with high initial peak wattage:** Cathode-ray tube type televisions, compressor-driven refrigerators, electric pumps, electric tools, etc.
- **Measuring devices which process precise data:** Medical equipment, measuring instruments, etc.
- **Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply:** Microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc.

Certain electrical appliances may cause radio noise.

REAR CONSOLE BOX

Sliding the rear console box



To slide the rear console box:

1. Push on the cup holder lid in front of the rear console box.

2. Slide the rear console box forward or backward while gripping the lock release lever in the cup holder.

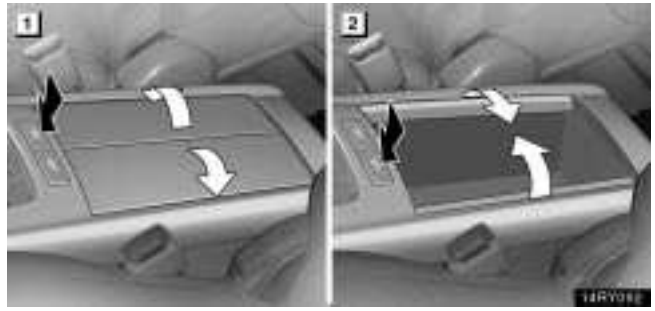
3. Release the lock release lever after sliding the rear console box to the desired position. Then make sure it is securely locked in position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not slide the rear console box while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.**
- **Be careful not to get hands or feet pinched between the rear console box and the center cluster or rear seat.**
- **Be careful not to hit any passengers with the rear console box while sliding it.**
- **After sliding the rear console box, make sure it is securely locked in position.**

Using the rear console box



▶ 1 *Open* 2 *Close*

To open the rear console box, push the “OPEN” button.

The rear console box light comes on when the tail lights are turned on.

To close the rear console box, push the “CLOSE” button.

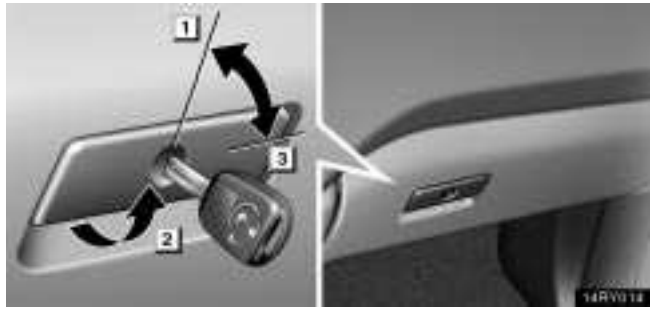
⚠ CAUTION

To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the rear console box closed while driving.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To remove the adapter tray inside the box, pull it up.

GLOVE BOX



▶ 1 ***Unlock*** 2 ***Open*** 3 ***Lock***

To open the glove box door, pull the lever. To lock the glove box door, insert the master key and turn it clockwise.

With the tail lights on, the glove box light will come on when the glove box door is open.

The power back door off switch is installed inside the glove box. See page 38 for further information.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

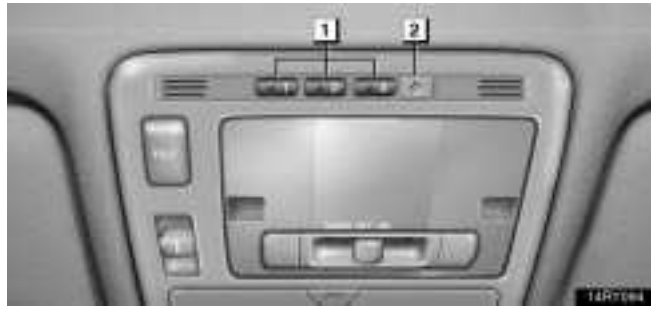
CAUTION

To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed while driving.

GARAGE DOOR OPENER

The garage door opener (HomeLink® Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink® and can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, and security systems, etc.

(a) Programming the HomeLink®



▶ 1 *Buttons* 2 *Indicator light*

The HomeLink® in your vehicle has 3 buttons and you can store one program for each button.

To ensure correct programming into the HomeLink®, install a new battery in the hand-held transmitter prior to programming.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The battery side of the hand-held transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink® during the programming process.

For Canadian users, follow the procedure in “Programming an entrance gate/Programming all devices in the Canadian market”.

1. Decide which of 3 HomeLink® buttons you want to program.

2. Place your hand-held garage transmitter 25 to 75 mm (1 to 3 in.) away from the surface of the HomeLink®.

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink® in view while programming.

3. Simultaneously press and hold the hand-held garage transmitter button along with the selected HomeLink® button.

4. When the indicator light on the HomeLink® changes from a slow to a rapid flash after 20 seconds, you can release both buttons.

5. Test the operation of the HomeLink® by pressing the newly programmed button. If programming a garage door opener, check to see if the garage door opens and closes.

If the garage door does not operate, identify if your garage transmitter is of the “Rolling Code” type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink® button. The garage door has the rolling code feature if the indicator light (on the HomeLink®) flashes rapidly and then remains lit after 2 seconds. If your garage transmitter is the “Rolling Code” type, proceed to the heading “Programming a rolling code system”.

6. Repeat steps 2 through 5 for each remaining HomeLink® button to program another device.

Programming a rolling code system

If your device is “Rolling Code” equipped, it is necessary to follow steps 1 through 4 under the heading “Programming the HomeLink®” before proceeding with the steps listed below.

1. Locate the “training” button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener. Refer to the owner’s guide supplied by the garage door opener manufacturer for the location of this “training” button.

2. Press the “training” button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor.

Following this step, you have 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3 below.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Press and release the vehicle's programmed HomeLink® button twice. The garage door may open. If the door does open, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink® unit and be able to activate the garage door up/down.

4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 for each remaining HomeLink® button to program another rolling code system.

Programming an entrance gate/programming all devices in the Canadian market

1. Decide which of the 3 HomeLink® buttons you want to program.

2. Place your hand-held gate/device transmitter 25 to 75 mm (1 to 3 in.) away from the surface of the HomeLink®.

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink® in view while programming.

3. Press and hold the selected HomeLink® button.

4. Continuously press and release (cycle) the hand-held gate/device transmitter button every two seconds until step 5 is complete.

5. When the indicator light on the HomeLink® changes from a slow to a rapid flash after 20 seconds, you can release both buttons.

6. Test the operation of the HomeLink® by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.

7. Repeat steps 1 through 6 for each remaining HomeLink® button to program another device.

Programming other devices

To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your authorized Lexus dealer for assistance.

Reprogramming a button

Individual HomeLink® buttons cannot be erased, however, to reprogram a single button, follow the procedure "Programming the HomeLink®".

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(b) Operating the HomeLink®

To operate the HomeLink®, press the appropriate HomeLink® button to activate the programmed device. The HomeLink® indicator light should come on. The HomeLink® continues to send the signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

(c) Erasing the entire HomeLink® memory (all three programs)

To erase all previously programmed codes at one time, press and hold down the 2 outside buttons for 20 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink® memory.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When programming the HomeLink® Universal Transceiver, you may be operating a garage door or other device. Make sure people and objects are out of the way of the garage door or other device to prevent potential harm or damage.**
- **Do not use this HomeLink® Universal Transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by federal safety standards. (This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.) A garage door opener which cannot detect an object (signaling the door to stop and reverse), does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases risk of serious injury or death.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of the Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: This transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and Industry Canada DOC/MPAC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

CUP HOLDERS

Front

▶ ***On the instrument panel***

To use the cup holder, push in the cup holder portion located on the instrument panel.

The cup holder is designed for holding cups or drink-cans securely.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ ***In front of the rear console box***

To use the cup holder, push the cup holder lid.

The cup holder is designed for holding cups or drink-cans securely.

The cup holder can be adjusted to the size of the cups by altering the arm position.

The cup holder light comes on when the tail lights are turned on.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not place anything else other than cups or drink-cans in the cup holder, as such items may be thrown about in the compartment and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.**
- **To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop while driving, keep the cup holder closed when not in use.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear

▶ ***Rear seat armrest***

To use the cup holder, pull down the rear seat armrest and push the button on the armrest.

The cup holder is designed for holding cups or drink-cans securely.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not place anything else other than cups or drink-cans on the cup holder, as such items may be thrown about in the compartment and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.**
- **To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop while driving, keep the cup holder closed when not in use.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

OVERHEAD CONSOLE BOX

To use the overhead console box, push the button.

⚠ CAUTION

- **To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the overhead console box closed while driving.**
- **Do not place any object heavier than 100 g (0.22 lb.) in it. Heavier objects may cause the box to open and the contents to fly out resulting in injuries.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

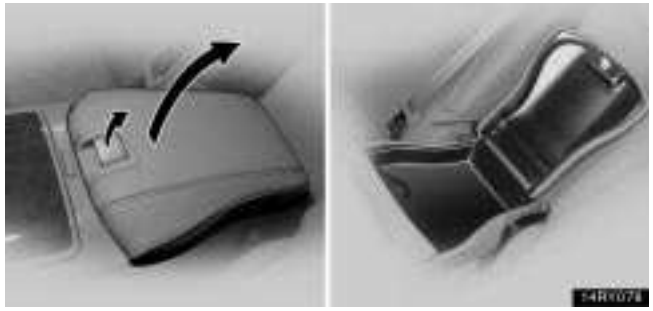
NOTICE
During hot weather, the interior of the vehicle becomes very hot. Do not leave anything flammable or deformable such as a lighter, glasses, etc. inside.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AUXILIARY BOXES

To use the auxiliary boxes, open as shown in the following illustrations.

▶ ***On the inner side of the front doors***



▶ ***Rear seat armrest***

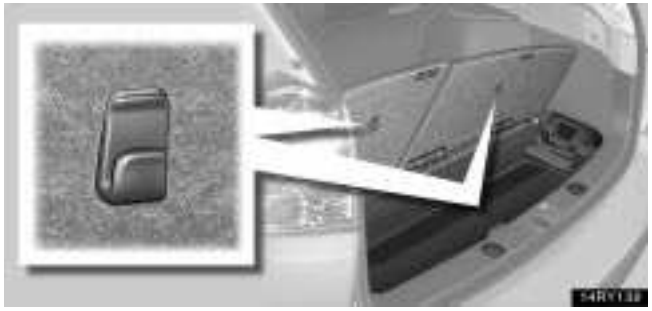
⚠ CAUTION

To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the auxiliary box closed while driving.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AUXILIARY BOX AND GROCERY BAG HOOKS

To use the auxiliary box, open it as shown above.



This auxiliary box is equipped with grocery bag hooks.

These hooks are designed for hanging things like grocery bags.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

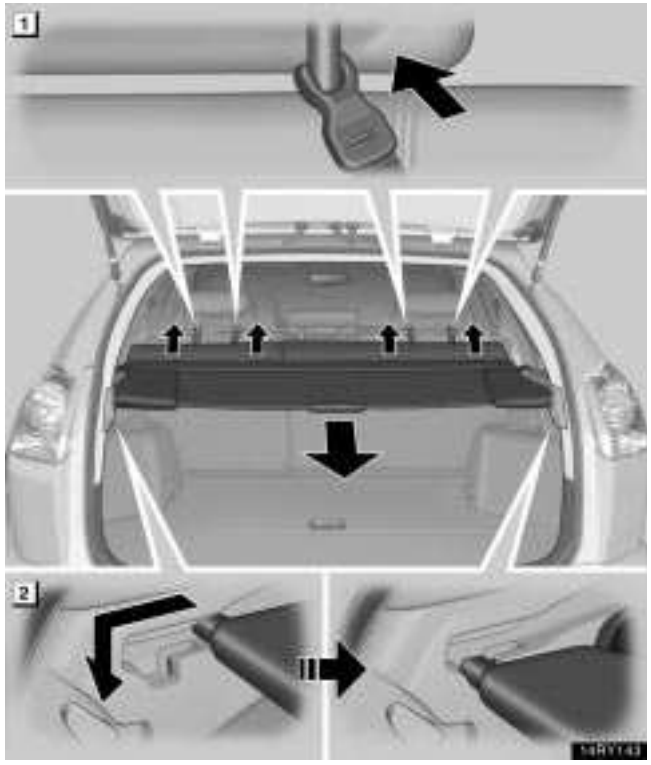
Except when using the grocery bag hooks — To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the auxiliary box closed while driving.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the hooks, do not hang any object heavier than 2 kg (4 lb.) on them.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

LUGGAGE COVER



To use the luggage cover:

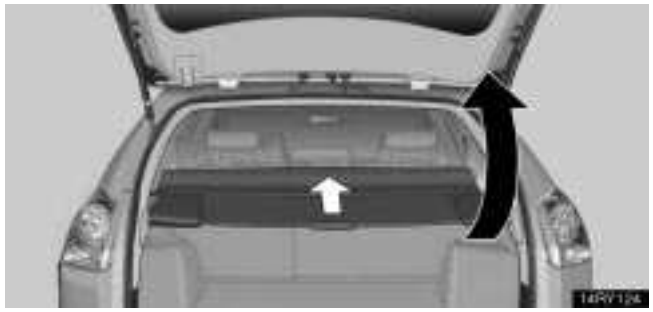
1. Attach the front hooks of the luggage cover to the head restraints.
2. Pull out the rear luggage cover and hook it onto the anchors.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not place anything on the luggage cover. Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or an accident.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic retract function



The rear luggage cover is retracted automatically when the back door is opened.

▶ ***Active position***

▶ ***Inactive position***

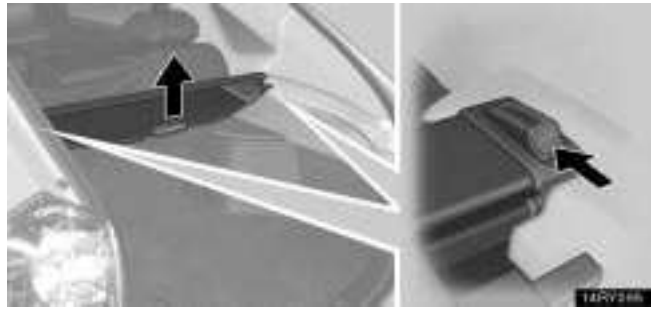
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To activate the automatic retract function, place the knobs in the active position.

If you do not want to activate the automatic retract function, push the knobs to place the inactive position while pulling the luggage cover toward you.

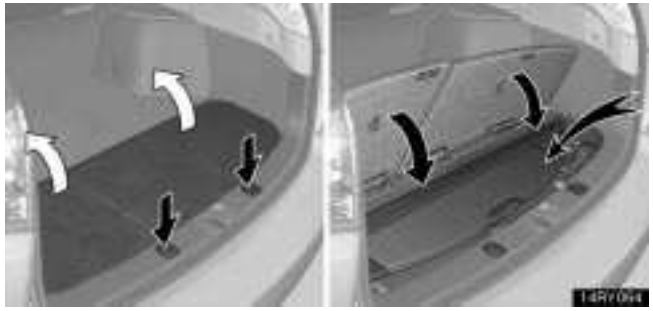
To reactivate the automatic retract function, push the knobs again to return them to the active position.

Removing luggage cover



To remove the luggage cover, lift it up after pushing forward the lock release knobs on both sides.

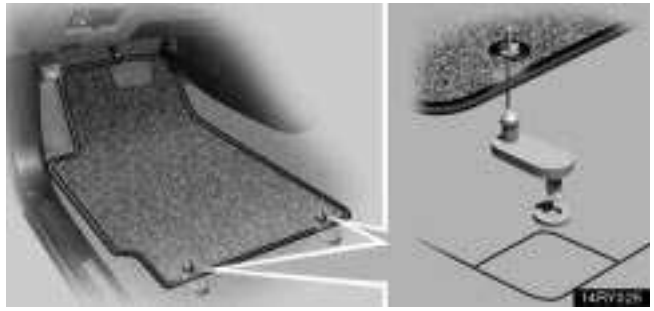
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



You can stow the luggage cover in the auxiliary box in the luggage compartment as shown in the illustration.

After removing the luggage cover, stow it in the auxiliary box or place it somewhere other than the passenger compartment. This will prevent passengers from being injured in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

FLOOR MAT



Use a floor mat of the correct size.

If the floor carpet and floor mat have 2 holes, then they are designed for use with locking clips. Fix the floor mat with locking clips into the holes in the floor carpet.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

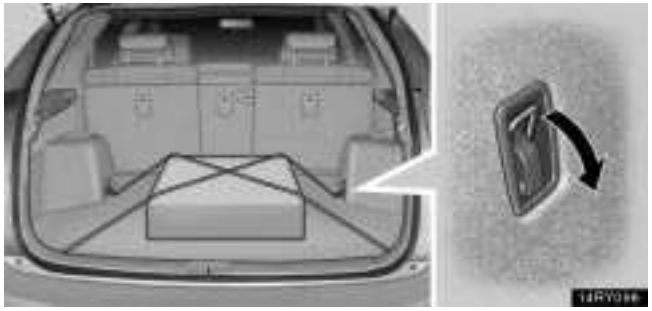
⚠ CAUTION

Make sure the floor mat is properly placed on the floor carpet. If the floor mat slips and interferes with the movement of the pedals during driving, it may cause an accident.

NOTICE

Do not use the anchor brackets on the back of the rear seatback instead of the tie-down hooks.

TIE-DOWN HOOKS



To secure your luggage, use the tie-down hooks as shown above.

See “Stowage precautions” on page 486 for precautions when loading luggage.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

-
-

DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 1 – 5

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Exterior equipment

Hood 141
Fuel tank cap 142
Moon roof (normal type) 145
Moon roof (multi-panel type) 149
Roof luggage carrier 154

DEALER E-PROCESS

HOOD

1. To open the hood, pull the hood lock release lever under the driver-side instrument panel. The hood will spring up slightly.

2. Insert your fingers under the hood, push up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.

Before closing the hood, check to see that you have not forgotten any tools, rags, etc. Then lower the hood and make sure it locks.

⚠ CAUTION

Before driving, be sure that the hood is closed and securely locked. Otherwise, the hood may open unexpectedly while driving and an accident may occur.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

FUEL TANK CAP

This indicates that the fuel filler door is on the left side of your vehicle.

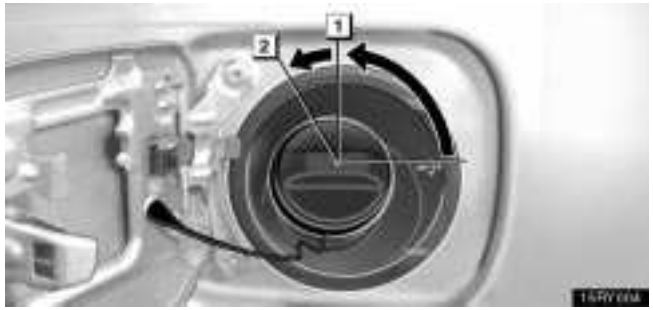
1. To open the fuel filler door, push the switch.

When refueling, turn off the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not smoke, cause sparks or allow open flames when refuelling. The fumes are flammable.**
- **When opening the cap, do not remove the cap quickly. In hot weather, fuel under pressure could cause injury by spraying out of the filler neck if the cap is suddenly removed.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



2. To remove the fuel tank cap, turn the cap counterclockwise by 90 degrees (to the pressure point 1), and then turn it a additional 30 degrees (to point 2). Pause slightly before removing it.

It is not unusual to hear a slight swoosh when the cap is opened.

3. The removed cap can be stored on the back side of the fuel filler door.

Position the cap so that the hooks point to the left and right, and set it in the receptacle on the back side of the door.

When installing the cap, turn the cap clockwise until you hear a click. When you hear the click, the cap is fully closed.

If the cap is not tightened securely, the malfunction indicator lamp comes on. Make sure the cap is tightened securely.

The indicator lamp goes off after driving several times. If the indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

- **Make sure the cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**
- **Use only a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap for replacement. It is designed to regulate fuel tank pressure.**

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the cap, apply force only in the turning direction to the cap. Do not pull or pry it.

DEALER E-PROCESS

In case the opener is not actuated

Open the auxiliary box in the luggage compartment, pull the manual lever.

This is used in case the fuel filler door cannot be opened due to a discharged battery or other trouble.

MOON ROOF (normal type)

▶ 1 *Open* 2 *Close*

To slide open the moon roof, push the slide control switch toward the back. The moon roof will open and stop partway 45 mm (1.8 in.) from the fully opened position. When you push the switch once again, the moon roof will fully open. To stop partway, push either side of the slide control switch.

As driving with the moon roof opened fully will cause wind throbs, we recommend you to drive with the moon roof partway 45 mm (1.8 in.) from the fully opened position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The sunshade can be opened or closed manually. However, if you open the moon roof, the sunshade will be opened with the moon roof.

To close the moon roof, push the slide control switch toward the front. The moon roof will fully close. To stop partway, push the either side of the slide control switch.

▶ 1 *Tilt up* 2 *Tilt down*

To tilt up the moon roof, push the "TILT" switch on the rear side. The moon roof will fully tilt up. To stop partway, push either side of the "TILT" switch.

To tilt down the moon roof, push the "TILT" switch on the front side. The moon roof will fully tilt down. To stop partway, push either side of the "TILT" switch.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To operate the moon roof, the ignition key must be in the “ON” position.

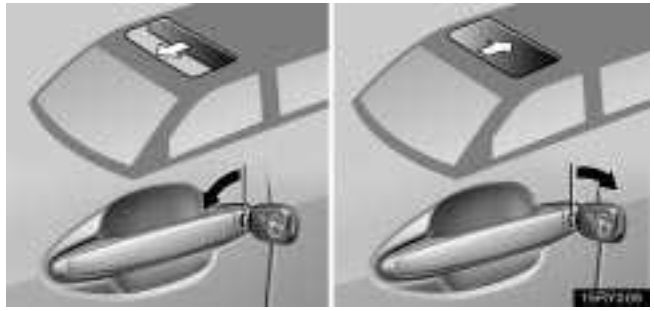
If the moon roof is left open when you turn the ignition key to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position and open the driver’s door, a buzzer will remind you to close the moon roof.

Key off operation: Even if the ignition key is turned to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position, the moon roof can be operated until either front door is opened (or for 43 seconds).

Operating the moon roof from outside the vehicle

The moon roof can be operated using an ignition key.*

NOTE:
** This feature can be deactivated.*
Ask your Lexus dealer for details.



▶ ***Close*** ▶ ***Open***

Insert the ignition key into the key hole on the driver’s door.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To close the moon roof: Turn the key in the locking direction and hold it.

After the doors are locked, the moon roof begins to close. To stop in the middle, return the key.

To open the moon roof: Turn the key in the unlocking direction and hold it.

After the door is unlocked, the moon roof begins to open. To stop in the middle, return the key.

The moon roof also can be opened using the wireless remote control. For details, see page 25.

Jam protection function

- If something gets caught between the moon roof and frame during slide closing operation, the moon roof stops and opens half way.
- If something gets caught between the moon roof and frame during tilting down operation, the moon roof stops and opens fully.

If the moon roof receives a strong impact, this function may work even if nothing is caught.

If the battery is disconnected or run down

The moon roof may not operate automatically and the jam protection function will not function correctly after you reconnect, replace or recharge the battery. In any of these cases, you should normalize the moon roof.

To normalize the moon roof, push and hold the slide control switch toward the front or “TILT” switch on the rear side. The moon roof will tilt up and down, then slide open and close. After the slide close operation, release the switch.

Make sure that the moon roof opens and closes automatically. If the moon roof cannot be operated properly, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

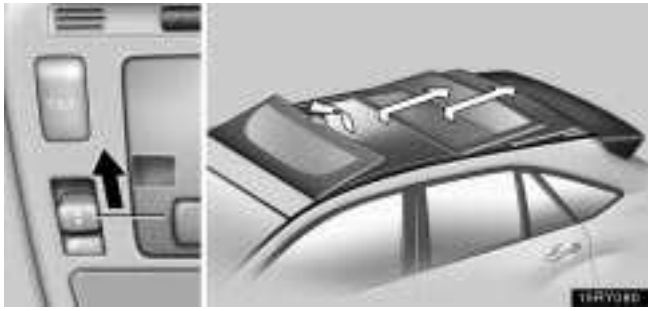
To avoid serious personal injury, you must do the following.

- **While the vehicle is moving, always keep the heads, hands and other parts of the bodies of all occupants away from the roof opening. Otherwise, they could be seriously injured if the vehicle stops suddenly or if the vehicle is involved in an accident.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Before you close the moon roof, always make sure there is nobody around the moon roof. You must also make sure nobody places his or her head, hands and other parts of the body in the roof opening. If someone's neck, head or hands get caught in the closing roof, it could result in a serious injury. When anyone closes the moon roof, first make sure it is safe to do so.**
- **Be sure to remove the ignition key when you leave your vehicle.**
- **Never leave anyone (particularly a small child) alone in your vehicle, especially with the ignition key still inserted. Otherwise, he/she could use the moon roof switches and get trapped in the roof opening. Unattended person (particularly a small child) can be involved in a serious accident.**
- **Never sit on top of the vehicle around the roof opening.**
- **Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.**
- **The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof is fully closed.**

MOON ROOF (multi-panel type)

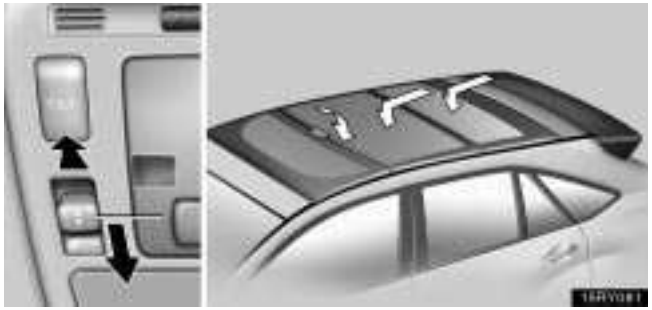


To open the moon roof, push the slide control switch toward the back. The front panel tilts up and the center and rear panels fully open. To stop partway, push either side of the slide control switch or the "TILT" switch briefly.

The sunshade can be opened or closed manually. However, if you open the moon roof, the sunshade will be opened with the moon roof.

Vehicles without the Lexus link system — Before opening the moon roof, make sure the radio antenna is in the lock position. Otherwise, the antenna may get caught between the moon roof and frame.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



To close the moon roof, push the slide control switch toward the front. The center and rear panels fully close. Then push and hold the slide control switch toward the front or the "TILT" switch on the front side until the front panel is fully down. To stop partway, push either side of the slide control switch or the "TILT" switch briefly.

The center and rear panels will not close automatically when the center panel position is near its closed position. In this case, push the slide control switch toward the front until the panels fully close.

▶ 1 *Tilt up* 2 *Tilt down*

To tilt up the front panel, push the "TILT" switch on the rear side. The moon roof will fully tilt up. To stop partway, push either side of the "TILT" switch or the slide control switch briefly.

To tilt down the front panel, push and hold the "TILT" switch on the front side or the slide control switch toward the front until the panel is fully down.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To operate the moon roof, the ignition key must be in the “ON” position.

If the moon roof is left open when you turn the ignition key to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position and open the driver’s door, a buzzer will remind you to close the moon roof.

Key off operation: Even if the ignition key is turned to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position, the moon roof can be operated until either front door is opened (or for 43 seconds).

Jam protection function

- If something gets caught between the moon roof and frame during slide closing operation, the moon roof stops and opens half way.
- If something gets caught between the moon roof and frame during tilting down operation, the moon roof stops and opens fully.

If the moon roof receives a strong impact, this function may work even if nothing is caught.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the battery is disconnected or run down

The moon roof may not operate automatically and the jam protection function will not function correctly after you reconnect, replace or recharge the battery. In any of these cases, you should normalize the moon roof.

To normalize the moon roof, push the slide control switch toward the front or the “TILT” switch on the front side until the front panel fully closes, and hold the switch for about 1 second.

Make sure that the moon roof opens and closes automatically. If the moon roof cannot be operated properly, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid serious personal injury, you must do the following.

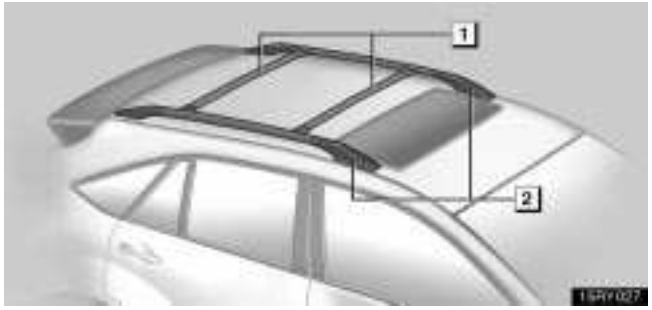
- **While the vehicle is moving, always keep the heads, hands and other parts of the bodies of all occupants away from the roof opening. Otherwise, they could be seriously injured if the vehicle stops suddenly or if the vehicle is involved in an accident.**
- **Before you close the moon roof, always make sure there is nobody around the moon roof. You must also make sure nobody places his or her head, hands and other parts of the body in the roof opening. If someone’s neck, head or hands get caught in the closing roof, it could result in a serious injury. When anyone closes the moon roof, first make sure it is safe to do so.**
- **Be sure to remove the ignition key when you leave your vehicle.**
- **Never leave anyone (particularly a small child) alone in your vehicle, especially with the ignition key still inserted. Otherwise, he/she could use the moon roof switches and get trapped in the roof opening. Unattended person (particularly a small child) can be involved in a serious accident.**
- **Never sit on top of the vehicle around the roof opening.**
- **Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.**
- **The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof is fully closed.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE
There is the possibility that water or rain will get into the vehicle if you operate the moon roof after a rainfall, snowfall or car wash. Wipe the moon roof dry with a cloth before operating it.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

ROOF LUGGAGE CARRIER



▶ 1 *Cross rails* 2 *Roof rails*

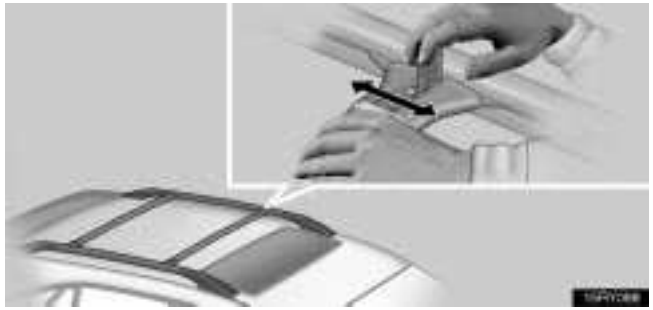
The roof luggage carrier consists of roof rails and sliding cross rails.

Adjusting the position of cross rails

1. Pull the lock release lever up to release the cross rails.

You can release the cross rails by operating only the single side lock release lever.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



2. Slide the cross rails to the appropriate position for loading luggage and release the lever.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure the cross rails are locked securely by pushing forward and rearward them. Failure to do so may cause an unexpected accident or severe injury in the event of emergency braking or a collision.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions when installing the attachments or their equivalent.

⚠ CAUTION

When you load cargo on the roof luggage carrier, observe the following:

- **Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.**
- **If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width. (See "Specifications" on page 712 for information on your vehicle overall length and width.)**
- **Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened on the roof luggage carrier.**
- **Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle now and then during the trip to make sure the cargo remains in its place.**
- **Do not exceed 75 kg (165 lb.) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier.**

NOTICE

When loading the luggages, be careful not to scratch the surface of the moon roof.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 1 – 6

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Occupant restraint systems

Seats 158
Front seats 158
Rear seats 166
Armrests 169
Head restraints 170
Seat belts 172
SRS driver airbags and front passenger airbag 189
SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags 204
Front passenger occupant classification system 219
Child restraint 224
Driving position memory system 251

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SEATS

While the vehicle is being driven, all vehicle occupants should have the seatback upright, sit well back in the seat and properly wear the seat belts provided.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not drive the vehicle unless the occupants are properly seated. Do not allow any passengers to sit in the luggage compartment or cargo area. Persons not properly seated and/or not properly restrained by seat belts can be severely injured in the event of emergency braking or a collision.**
- **During driving, do not allow any passengers to stand up or move around between seats. Otherwise, severe injuries can occur in the event of emergency braking or a collision.**

FRONT SEATS

Front seat precautions

Driver seat

⚠ CAUTION

The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (“NHTSA”) advises:

Since the risk zone for driver airbag is the first 50 — 75 mm (2 — 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

- **Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.**
- **If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.**

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

Front passenger seat

⚠ CAUTION

The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Front seats (with SRS side airbags)

⚠ CAUTION

The SRS side airbags are installed in the driver and front passenger seats. Observe the following precautions.

- **Do not lean against the front door when the vehicle is in use, since the side airbag inflates with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, you may be killed or seriously injured.**
- **Do not use seat accessories which cover the area where the side airbags inflate. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, causing death or serious injury.**
- **Do not modify or replace the seats or upholstery of the seats equipped with side airbags. Such change may prevent the side airbag system from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.**

NOTICE

Do not operate the control switch in more than one dimension at a time. It may cause electrical overload.

Seat adjustment precautions

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **Be careful that the seat does not hit a passenger, luggage or the rear seat.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting front seats

▶ 1 *Seat position control, seat cushion angle and height control switch*
2 *Seatback angle control switch*
3 *Lumbar support control switch*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting seat position

Move the control switch in the desired direction.

Releasing the switch will stop the seat in that position. Do not place anything under the seat, as this might interfere with the seat movement.

Adjusting seatback angle

Move the control switch in the desired direction.

Releasing the switch will stop the seatback in that position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, avoid reclining the seatback any more than needed. The seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger are sitting up straight and well back in the seats. If you are reclined, the lap belt may slide past your hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen. In the event of a frontal collision, the more the seat is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury.

Adjusting seat cushion angle and height (driver's seat only)

Move the control switch in the desired direction.

Releasing the switch will stop the seat cushion in that position.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting lumbar support (driver's seat only)

Push the control switch on either side.

The amount of lumbar support will change while the switch is pushed.

Flattening seatbacks

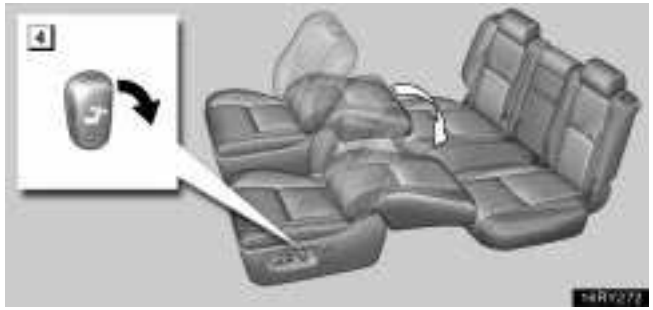
Before flattening seatbacks, slide the rear seats as far back as possible.

1 Push the seat position control switch forward to move the seat forward.

2 Push the lock release button on the head restraint to remove it.

3 Push the seat position control switch upward to raise the seat (driver's seat only).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



4 Move the seatback angle control switch backward to flatten the seatback.

5 Push the seat position control switch downward to lower the seat at the same level as the rear seat (driver's seat only).

After returning the seat to its original position, be certain to replace the head restraint.

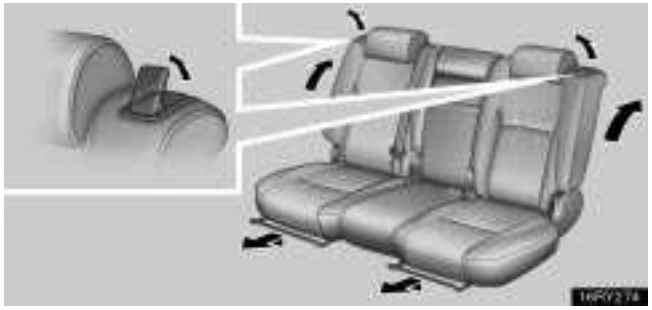
⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not allow passengers to ride on the flattened seat while driving; use the seat in the normal position.**
- **After putting back the seat, try pushing the seatback forward and rearward to make sure it is secured in place. Be certain to replace head restraint.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

REAR SEATS

Sliding and reclining rear seats



Sliding the rear seats — Hold the center of the slide lock release lever and pull it up. Then slide the seat to the desired position with slight body pressure and release the lever.

Reclining the rear seats — Pull the seatback lock release lever. Then lean back to the desired angle and release the lever.

⚠ CAUTION

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, avoid reclining the seatback any more than needed. The seat belts provide maximum protection when the passengers are sitting up straight and well back in the seats. If you are reclined, the lap belt may slide past your hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen. In the event of a frontal collision, the more the seat is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury.

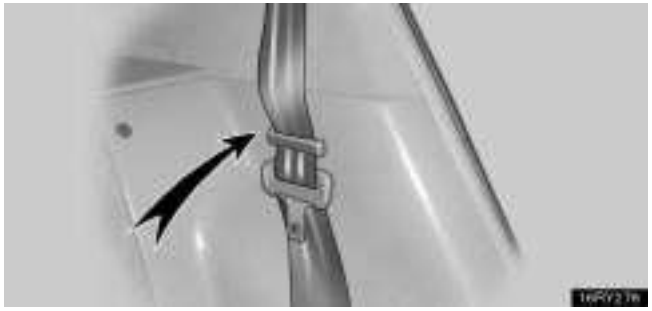
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Folding down rear seatbacks

▶ *Before folding down rear seatbacks*

Stow the rear seat belt buckles as shown above.

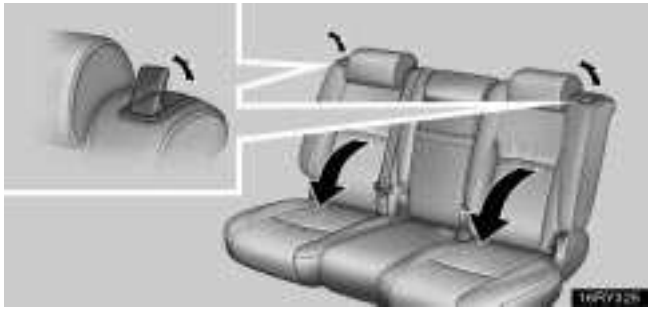
NOTICE
The seat belts and the buckles must be stowed before you fold down the rear seatbacks.



▶ *Seat belt hanger*

For the outer seat belts, use the seat belt hangers to prevent the belts from being tangled.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ ***Folding down rear seatbacks***

Lower the head restraints, unlock the seatbacks by pulling the seatback lock release lever and fold them down until they lock.

When returning the rear seatbacks to their original positions, unlock the seatbacks by pulling the seatback lock release lever and lift them up until they lock.

▶ ***Folding down rear center seatback***

You can fold down only the rear center seatback.

To fold down the center seatback, lower the center head restraint, unlock the seatback by pulling the center seatback lock release lever behind the seatback and fold it down. To return the center seatback to its original position, lift the center seatback up until it locks.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- **When folding down the rear seatback, be careful not to get hands or feet pinched between the rear console box and the rear seat.**
- **When returning the seatback to the upright position, observe the following precautions in order to prevent personal injury in a collision or sudden stop:**

  Make sure the seat is securely locked by pushing forward and rearward on the top of the seatback. Failure to do so will prevent the seat belt from operating properly.

  Make sure the seat belts are not twisted or caught under the seat and are arranged in their proper position and are ready to use.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the armrests, avoid putting heavy loads on them.

ARMRESTS

▶ 1 *Front* 2 *Rear*

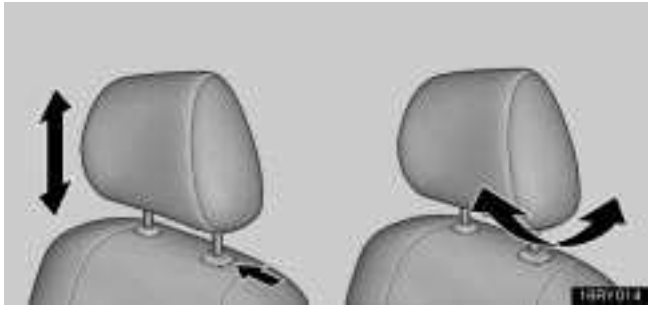
To use the armrests, pull them down as shown above.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

HEAD RESTRAINTS

For your safety and comfort, adjust the head restraint before driving.

Front seats



To raise the head restraint, pull it up. To lower it, press the lock release button and push the head restraint down. To move the head restraint forward or rearward, pull or push the base of the head restraint.

The head restraint is most effective when it is close to your head. Therefore, using a cushion on the seatback is not recommended.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Adjust the center of the head restraint so that it is closest to the top of your ears.**
- **After adjusting the head restraint, make sure it is locked in position.**
- **Do not drive with the head restraints removed.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear seats

To raise the head restraint, pull it up. To lower it, press the lock release button and push the head restraint down.

Rear center head restraint — When an occupant sits on the rear center seat, always pull up the rear center head restraint to the lock position.

The head restraint is most effective when it is close to your head. Therefore, using a cushion on the seatback is not recommended.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Adjust the center of the head restraint so that it is closest to the top of your ears.**
- **After adjusting the head restraint, make sure it is locked in position.**
- **Do not drive with the head restraints removed.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

SEAT BELTS

Seat belt precautions

Lexus strongly urges that the driver and passengers in the vehicle be properly restrained at all times with the seat belts provided. Failure to do so could increase the chance of injury and/or the severity of injury in accidents.

The seat belts provided for your vehicle are designed for people of adult size, large enough to properly wear them.

Child. Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belts. See "Child restraint" on page 224 for details.

If a child is too large for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and must be restrained using the vehicle's seat belt. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

If a child must sit in the front seat, the seat belts should be worn properly. If an accident occurs and the seat belts are not worn properly, the force of the rapid inflation of the airbag may cause death or serious injury to the child.

Do not allow any children to stand up or kneel on either rear or front seats. An unrestrained child could suffer serious injury or death during emergency braking or a collision. Also, do not let the child sit on your lap. Holding a child in your arms does not provide sufficient restraint.

Pregnant woman. Lexus recommends the use of a seat belt. Ask your doctor for specific recommendations. The lap belt should be worn securely and as low as possible over the hips and not on the waist.

Injured person. Lexus recommends the use of a seat belt. Depending on the injury, first check with your doctor for specific recommendations.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Persons should ride in their seats properly wearing their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer serious bodily injury or death in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

When using the seat belts, observe the following:

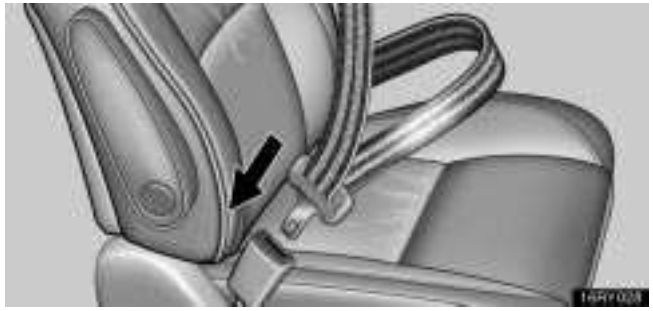
- **Use the belt for only one person at a time. Do not use a single belt for two or more people — even children.**
- **To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, avoid reclining the seatback any more than needed. The seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger are sitting up straight and well back in the seats. If you are reclined, the lap belt may slide past your hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen. In the event of a frontal collision, the more the seat is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury.**
- **Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. Take care that they do not get caught or pinched in the seat or doors.**
- **Inspect the belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Damaged parts should be replaced. Do not disassemble or modify the system.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Keep the belts clean and dry. If they need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Never use bleach, dye, or abrasive cleaners, or allow them to come into contact with the belt — they may severely weaken the belts. (See “Cleaning the interior” on page 719 for instructions.)**
- **Replace the belt assembly (including bolts) if it has been used in a severe impact. The entire assembly should be replaced even if damage is not obvious.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fastening front and rear seat belts



Adjust the seat as needed and sit up straight and well back in the seat. To fasten your belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the tab into the buckle.

You will hear a click when the tab locks into the buckle.

The seat belt length automatically adjusts to your size and the seat position.

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It also may lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend, and you can move around freely.

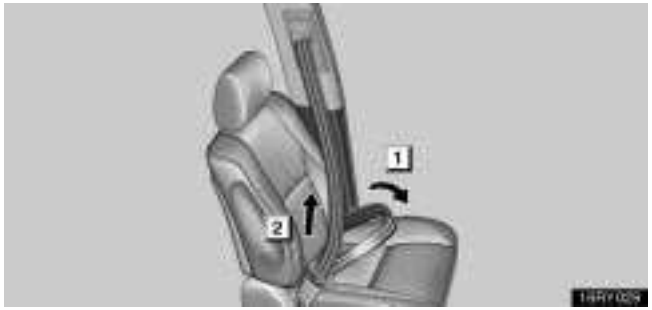
When a rear seat belt is completely extended and is then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system securely. (For details, see “Child restraint” on page 224.) To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more.

If the seat belt cannot be pulled out of the retractor, firmly pull the belt and release it. You will then be able to smoothly pull the belt out of the retractor.

⚠ CAUTION

- **After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the belt is not twisted.**
- **Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent you from properly latching the tab and buckle.**
- **If the seat belt does not function normally, immediately contact your Lexus dealer. Do not use the seat until the seat belt is fixed, because it cannot protect an adult occupant or your child from injury.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



Adjust the position of the lap and shoulder belts.

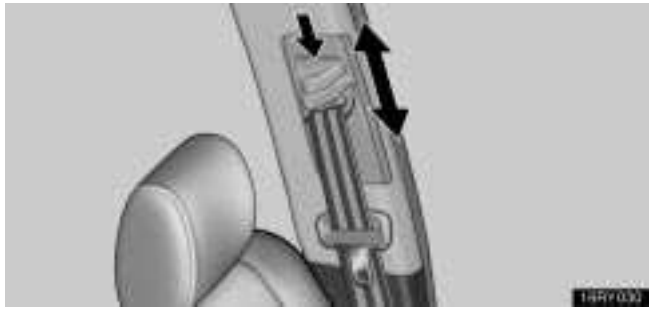
1 Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips — not on your waist.

2 Adjust it to a snug fit by pulling the shoulder portion upward through the latch plate.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause serious injuries due to sliding under the lap belt during a collision or other unintended event. Keep the lap belt positioned as low on hips as possible.**
- **Do not place the shoulder belt under your arm.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ ***Front seat belts only***

Adjust the shoulder anchor position to your size.

To raise the anchor position, push the anchor up. To lower the anchor position, support the anchor while you push the lock release button then slide the anchor down. After the adjustment, make sure the anchor is locked in position.

⚠ CAUTION

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause serious injuries in a collision.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To release the belt, press the buckle release button and allow the belt to retract.

If the belt does not retract smoothly, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Then make sure it remains untwisted as it retracts.

Seat belt comfort guides

The outside shoulder belt comfort guides for the rear seat outside positions will provide added seat belt comfort for children who have outgrown child restraints and for small adults. When the outside shoulder belt is inserted through the guide, the comfort guide pulls the belt away from the neck and head of an occupant.

To use the comfort guide, do as follows.

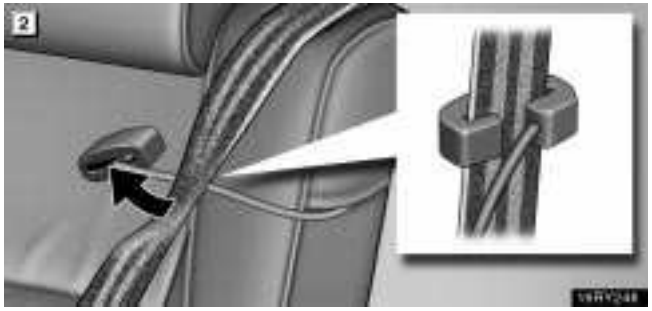
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Seat belt comfort guides are stored in the both pockets on the sides of the rear seatback.

INSTALLING THE COMFORT GUIDE

1. Pull the comfort guide from the pocket.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



2. Pinch the two edges of the shoulder belt for the rear seat outside position with your fingers and slide the belt past the slot of the guide as shown above. At this time, the elastic cord must be behind the seat belt.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure the belt is not twisted and that it lies flat. The elastic cord must be behind the belt and the guide must be on the front.

3. Buckle, position and release the seat belt. (For wearing the seat belt, see page 175.) Make sure the shoulder belt crosses the shoulder.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

REMOVING AND STORING THE COMFORT GUIDE

Pinch the two edges of the seat belt together so that you can slide them out of the guide. Store the guide with the elastic cord into the pocket.

⚠ CAUTION

To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop while driving, remove and store the comfort guide in its pocket when it is not in use.

Seat belt extender

If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.

Please contact your local Lexus dealer so that the dealer can order the proper required length for the extender. Bring the heaviest coat you expect to wear for proper measurement and selection of length. Additional ordering information is available at your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

When using the seat belt extender, observe the following precautions. Failure to follow these instructions could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt restraint system in case of an accident, increasing the chance of personal injury.

- **Remember that the extender provided for you may not be safe when used on a different vehicle, for another person, or at a different seating position than the one originally intended.**

- **If the seat belt extender has been connected to the driver's seat belt buckle without wearing the seat belt when using the extender in the driver's seat, the SRS driver's airbag system will judge that the driver wears the seat belt even if not wearing it. In this case, the driver's airbag may not activate correctly, causing death or serious injury in the event of collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Make sure the “AIRBAG OFF” indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the “AIRBAG OFF” indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the “AIRBAG OFF” indicator light is not illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the “AIRBAG OFF” indicator light is illuminated, the front passenger airbag and side airbag on the front passenger side may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of collision.**
- **Be sure to wear the seat belt without the seat belt extender if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.**
- **Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of collision.**

To connect the extender to the seat belt, insert the tab into the seat belt buckle so that the “PRESS” signs on the buckle release buttons of the extender and the seat belt are both facing outward as shown.

You will hear a click when the tab locks into the buckle.

When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt. This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and extender itself.

As far as the seat belt extender on the front passenger side is concerned, ba sure to disconnect the extender from the seat belt after the above operation in order to activate the front passenger airbag correctly when getting into the vehicle next time.

When not in use, remove the extender and store in the vehicle for future use.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

- **After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder portions of the belt and the seat belt extender are not twisted.**
- **Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent you from properly latching the tab and buckle.**
- **If the seat belt does not function normally, immediately contact your Lexus dealer. Do not use the seat until the seat belt is fixed, because it cannot protect an adult occupant or your child from injury.**

Seat belt pretensioners

The driver and front passenger's seat belt pretensioners are designed to be activated in response to a severe frontal impact.

When the sensor detects a severe frontal impact, the front seat belts are quickly drawn back by the retractors so that the belts snugly restrain the front seat occupants.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The front passenger's seat belt pretensioner will not activate if no passenger is detected in the front passenger seat by the front passenger occupant classification system. However, the front passenger's seat belt pretensioner may activate if luggage is put on the seat, or the seat belt is buckled up regardless of the presence of an occupant in the seat. (As for the front passenger occupant classification system, see page 219.)

The seat belt pretensioners and SRS airbags may not operate together in case of collisions at a certain speeds and angles.

▶ 1 ***Front airbag sensors***
2 ***Front seat belt pretensioner assemblies***
3 ***SRS warning light***
4 ***Airbag sensor assembly***
5 ***Front passenger occupant classification system (ECU and sensors)***
6 ***Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The front seat belt pretensioner system mainly consists of the above components, and their locations are shown in the illustration.

The front seat belt pretensioners are controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and airbag sensor.

When the front seat belt pretensioners are activated, an operating noise may be heard and a small amount of non-toxic gas may be released. This does not indicate that a fire is occurring. This gas is normally harmless.

Once the front seat belt pretensioners have been activated, the seat belt retractors remain locked.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not modify, remove, strike or open the front seat belt pretensioner assemblies, airbag sensor or surrounding area or wiring. Failure to follow these instruction may prevent the seat belt pretensioners from activating correctly, cause sudden operation of the system or disable the system, which could result in death or serious injury. Consult your Lexus dealer about any repairs and modifications.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

Do not perform any of the following changes without consulting your Lexus dealer. Such changes can interfere with proper operation of the front seat belt pretensioners in some cases.

- ***Installation of electronic devices such as a mobile two-way radio, cassette tape player or compact disc player***
- ***Repairs on or near the front seat belt retractor assemblies***
- ***Modification of the suspension system***
- ***Modification of the front end structure***
- ***Attachment of a grille guard (bull bar, kangaroo bar, etc.), snowplow, winches or any other equipment to the front end***
- ***Repairs made on or near the front fenders, front end structure or console***

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

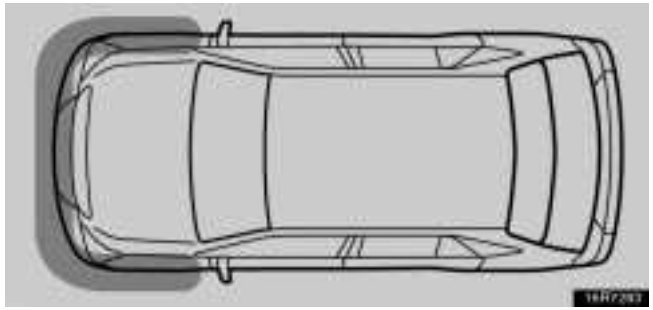
This indicator comes on when the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position. It goes off after about 6 seconds. This means the front seat belt pretensioners are operating properly.

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies, curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies, driver’s seat position sensor, driver’s seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system, “AIRBAG OFF” indicator light, front passenger’s seat belt buckle switch, front seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (For details, see “Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers” on page 87.)

If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the pretensioners. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

- When the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position, the light does not come on, remains on or flashes.
- The light comes on or starts flashing while driving.
- If either front seat belt does not retract or cannot be pulled out due to a malfunction or activation of the relevant front seat belt pretensioner.
- The seat belt pretensioner assembly or surrounding area has been damaged.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible:

- The front seat belt pretensioner assembly or surrounding area has been damaged.
- The front of the vehicle (shaded in the illustration) was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the seat belt pretensioners to operate.
- The front seat belt pretensioner assembly is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

SRS DRIVER AIRBAGS AND FRONT PASSENGER AIRBAG

▶ 1 ***Driver airbag***
2 ***Front passenger airbag***
3 ***Driver knee airbag***

The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags are designed to provide further protection for the driver and front passenger in addition to the primary safety protection provided by the seat belts.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

In response to a severe frontal impact, the SRS front airbags work together with the seat belts to help reduce injury by inflating. The SRS front airbags deploy when receiving the severe frontal impact that may cause serious injuries to the driver and front passenger. And together with the feature of the seat belts to restrain their bodies, the SRS front airbags help reduce injuries mainly to the driver's and front passenger's heads and chests caused hitting the vehicle interior.

The front passenger airbag will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front passenger airbag may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is buckled up regardless of the presence of the occupant in the seat.

Always wear your seat belt properly.

Your vehicle is equipped with a crash sensing and diagnostic module, which will record the use of the seat belt restraint system by the driver and front passenger when the SRS airbags are inflated.

⚠ CAUTION

- **The SRS front airbag system is designed only as a supplement to the primary protection of the driver and front passenger seat belt systems. The driver and front passenger can be killed or seriously injured by the inflating airbags if they do not wear the available seat belts properly. During sudden braking just before a collision, an unrestrained driver or front passenger can move forward into direct contact with or close proximity to the airbag which may then deploy during the collision. To ensure maximum protection in an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. Wearing a seat belt properly during an accident reduces the chances of death or serious injury or being thrown out of the vehicle. For instructions and precautions concerning the seat belt system, see "Seat belts" on page 172.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by the deploying airbags. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seat of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seat is the safest for infants and children. For instructions concerning the installation of a child restraint system, see “Child restraint” on page 224 .**

The SRS front airbags are designed to deploy in severe (usually frontal) collisions where the magnitude and duration of the forward deceleration of the vehicle exceeds the designed threshold level.

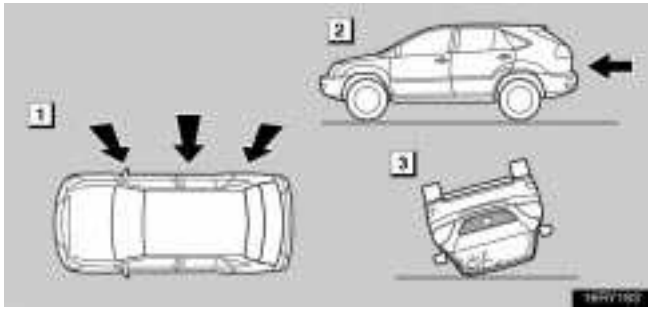
The SRS front airbags will deploy if the severity of the impact is above the designed threshold level, comparable to an approximate 25 km/h (15 mph) collision when the vehicle has the impact straight into a fixed barrier that does not move or deform.

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides”, or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).

It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed threshold level, the SRS front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not activate together.

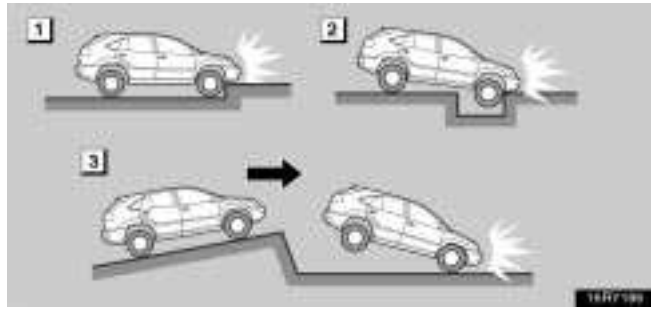
Always wear your seat belts properly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ 1 *Collision from the side*
2 *Collision from the rear*
3 *Vehicle rollover*

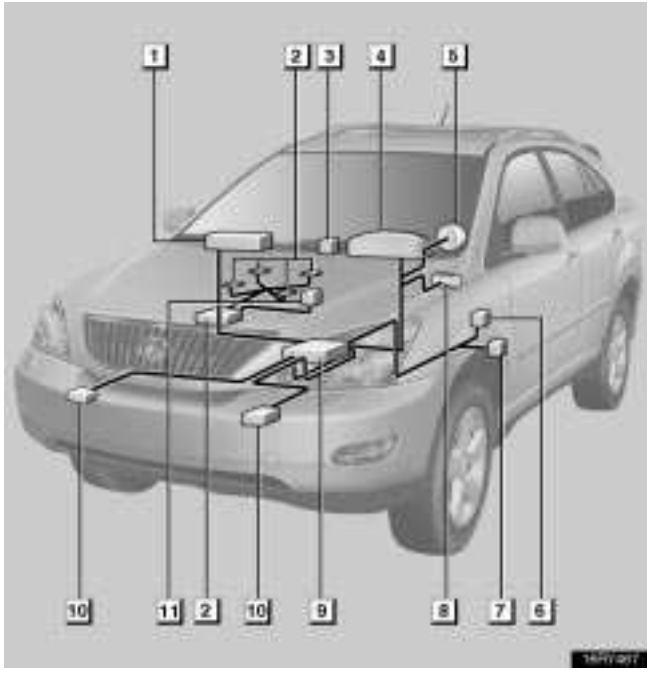
The SRS front airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.



▶ 1 *Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface*
2 *Falling into or jumping over a deep hole*
3 *Landing hard or vehicle falling*

The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ 1 ***Airbag module for front passenger (airbag and inflator)***
2 ***Front passenger occupant classification system (ECU and sensors)***
3 ***"AIRBAG OFF" indicator light***
4 ***SRS warning light***
5 ***Airbag module for driver (airbag and inflator)***
6 ***Driver's seat belt buckle switch***
7 ***Driver's seat position sensor***
8 ***Knee airbag module for driver (airbag and inflator)***
9 ***Airbag sensor assembly***
10 ***Front airbag sensors***
11 ***Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch***

The SRS front airbag system consists mainly of the above components, and their locations are shown in the illustration.

The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and airbag sensor.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The airbag sensors constantly monitor the forward deceleration of the vehicle. If an impact results in a forward deceleration beyond the designed threshold level, the system triggers the airbag inflators. At this time a chemical reaction in the inflators very quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the forward motion of the occupants. The front airbags then quickly deflate, so that there is no obstruction of the driver's vision should it be necessary to continue driving.

When the airbags inflate, they produce a loud noise and release some smoke and residue along with non-toxic gas. This does not indicate a fire. This smoke may remain inside the vehicle for some time, and may cause some minor irritation to the eyes, skin or breathing. Be sure to wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent any potential skin irritation with soap and water. If you can safety exit from the vehicle, you should do so immediately.

Deployment of the airbags happens in a fraction of a second, so the airbags must inflate with considerable force. While the system is designed to reduce serious injuries, primarily to the head and chest, it may also cause other, less severe injuries to the face, chest, arms and hands. These are usually in the nature of minor burns or abrasions and swelling, but the force of a deploying airbag can cause more serious injuries, especially if an occupant's hands, arms, chest or head are in close proximity to the airbag module at the time of deployment. This is why it is important for the occupant to: avoid placing any object or part of the body between the occupant and the airbag module; sit straight and well back into the seat; wear the available seat belt properly; and sit as far as possible from the airbag module, while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, lower portion of instrument panel, airbag cover and inflator) may be hot for several minutes after deployment, so do not touch! The airbags inflate only once. The windshield may be damaged by absorbing some of the force of the inflating airbag.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

The driver or front passenger who is too close to the steering wheel or dashboard during airbag deployment can be killed or seriously injured. Lexus strongly recommends that:

- **The driver sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel while still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **The front passenger sit as far back as possible from the dashboard.**
- **All vehicle occupants be properly restrained using the available seat belts.**
- **If the seat belt extender has been connected to the driver's seat belt buckle without wearing the seat belt when using the extender in the driver's seat, the SRS driver's airbag system will judge that the driver wears the seat belt even if not wearing it. In this case, the driver's airbag may not activate correctly, causing death or serious injury in the event of collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.**

For instructions and precautions concerning the seating position, see "Front seat precautions" on page 158.

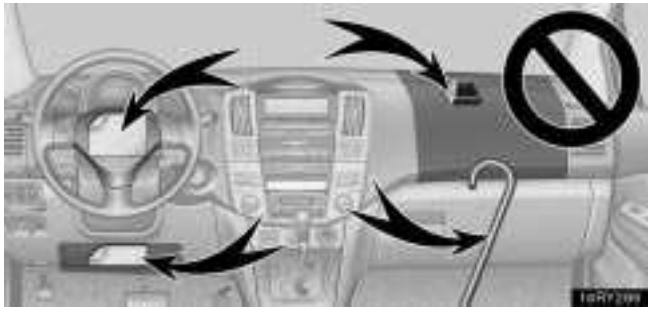
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean over the dashboard when the vehicle is in use, since the front passenger airbag could inflates with considerable speed and force. Anyone who is up against, or very close to, an airbag when it inflates, can be killed or seriously injured. Sit up straight and well back in the seat, and always use your seat belt properly.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seat of the vehicle and be properly restrained.**
- **Do not hold a child on your lap or in your arms. Use a child restraint system in the rear seat. For instructions concerning the installation of a child restraint system, see “Child restraint” on page 224.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



- **Do not put anything or any part of your body or install anything such as accessories or turbo timers on or in front of the dashboard, lower portion of instrument panel or steering wheel pad that houses the front airbag system. They might restrict inflation or cause death or serious injury as they are projected rearward by the force of the deploying airbags. Likewise, the driver and front passenger should not hold objects in their arms or on their knees.**
- **Do not modify or remove any wiring. Do not modify, remove, strike or open any components, such as the steering wheel pad, steering wheel, column cover, front passenger airbag cover, front passenger airbag, driver knee airbag or airbag sensor assembly. Doing so may prevent the front airbag system from activating correctly, cause sudden activation of the system or disable the system, which could result in death or serious injury.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury. Consult your Lexus dealer about any repair and modification.

- **Do not attach any heavy, sharp or hard objects such as keys or accessories to the ignition key. The objects may restrict the SRS knee airbag inflation or be thrust into the driver's seat area by the force of the deploying airbag, thus causing a danger.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

Do not perform any of the following changes without consulting your Lexus dealer. Such changes can interfere with proper operation of the SRS front airbag system in some cases.

- ***Installation of electronic devices such as a mobile two-way radio, cassette tape player or compact disc player***
- ***Modification of the suspension system***
- ***Modification of the front end structure***
- ***Attachment of a grille guard (bull bar, kangaroo bar, etc.), snowplow, winches or any other equipment to the front end***
- ***Repairs made on or near the front fenders, front end structure, console, steering column, steering wheel, lower portion of instrument panel or dashboard near the front passenger airbag***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The indicator comes on when the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position. It goes off after about 6 seconds. This means the SRS airbags are operating properly.

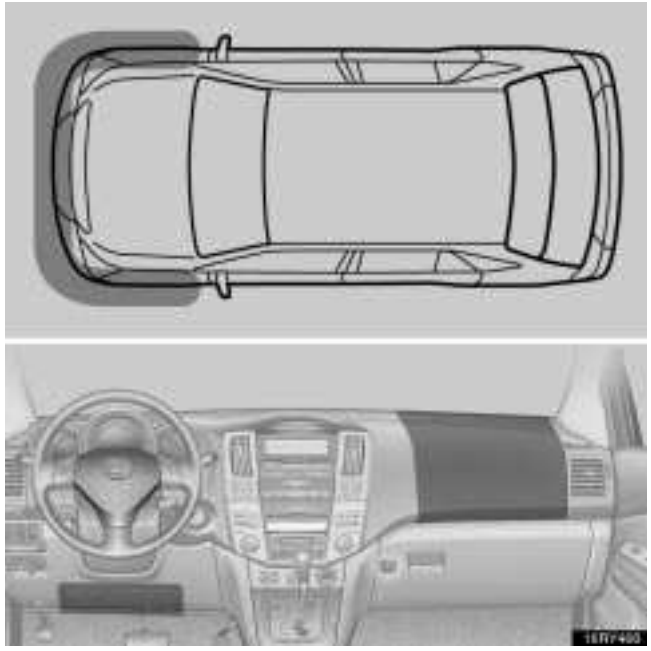
This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies, curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies, driver’s seat position sensor, driver’s seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system, “AIRBAG OFF” indicator light, front passenger’s seat belt buckle switch, front seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (For details, see “Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers” on page 87.)

If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

- When the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position, the light does not come on, remains on or flashes.
- The light comes on or starts flashing while driving.

If the light stays on, it indicates that the SRS driver and front passenger airbags and/or front passenger occupant classification system and the “AIRBAG OFF” indicator light fail. If the light flashes, the SRS side and curtain shield airbags have a problem.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible:

- The SRS front airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle (shaded in the illustration) was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags to inflate.
- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard, lower portion of instrument or front passenger airbag cover (shaded in the illustration) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE
Do not disconnect the battery cables before contacting your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SRS SIDE AIRBAGS AND CURTAIN SHIELD AIRBAGS

The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) side airbags and curtain shield airbags are designed to provide further protection for the driver, front passenger and rear outside passengers in addition to the primary safety protection provided by the seat belts.

In response to a severe side impact, the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags work with the seat belts to help reduce injury by inflating. The SRS side airbags help reduce injuries mainly to the driver's or front passenger's torso and the SRS curtain shield airbags help reduce injuries mainly to the driver's, front passenger's or rear outside passenger's head.

The side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the side airbag on the passenger seat may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is buckled up regardless of the presence of the occupant in the seat. (As for the front passenger occupant classification system, see "Front passenger occupant classification system" on page 219.)

The SRS curtain shield airbag on the passenger side are activated even with no passenger in the front seat or rear outside seat.

The curtain shield airbags may activate even when the side airbags are not activated.

Always wear your seat belt properly.

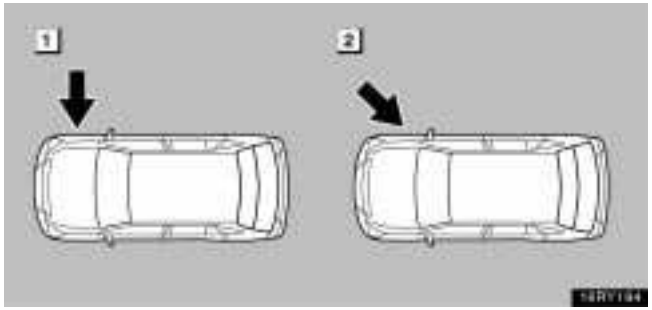
Your vehicle is equipped with a crash sensing and diagnostic module, which will record the use of the seat belt restraint system by the driver and front passenger when the SRS side airbags are inflated.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- **The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system is designed only as a supplement to the primary protection of the driver and front passenger and rear outside passenger seat belt systems. To ensure maximum protection in an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. Wearing a seat belt properly during an accident reduces the chances of death or serious injury or being thrown out of the vehicle. For instructions and precautions concerning the seat belt system, see “Seat belts” on page 172.**
- **Do not allow anyone to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front pillar, rear pillar or roof side rail from which the SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag deploy eve if he/she is a child seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, and the impact of the deploying airbags could cause death or serious injury to the occupant.**
- **Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by the deploying airbags. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are the safest for infants and children. For instructions concerning the installation of a child restraint system, see “Child restraint” on page 224.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

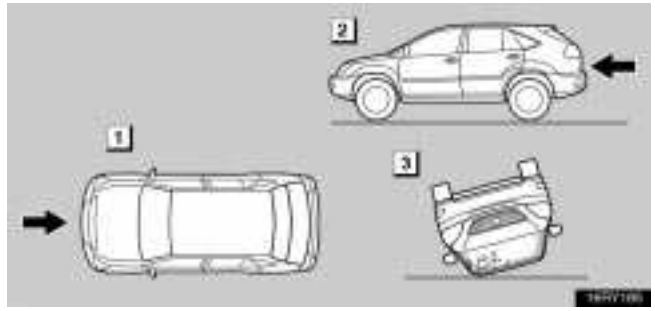


▶ 1 *Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment*
2 *Collision from the side at an angle*

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment as shown in the illustration.

The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are designed to inflate when the passenger compartment are suffers a severe impact from the side.

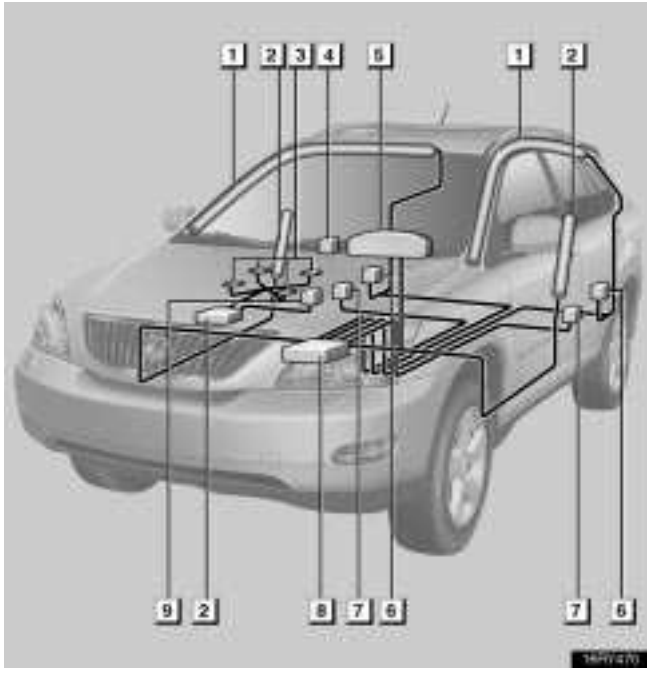
Always wear your seat belts properly.



▶ 1 *Collision from the front*
2 *Collision from the rear*
3 *Vehicle rollover*

The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a front or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ 1 ***Curtain shield airbag modules (airbag and inflater)***
2 ***Side airbag modules (airbag and inflator)***
3 ***Front passenger occupant classification system (ECU and sensors)***
4 ***"AIRBAG OFF" indicator light***
5 ***SRS warning light***
6 ***Curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies***
7 ***Side and curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies***
8 ***Airbag sensor assembly***
9 ***Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch***

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system consists mainly of the above components, and their locations are shown in the illustration.

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and airbag sensor.

In a severe side impact, the side and curtain shield airbag sensor and/or the curtain shield airbag sensor trigger(s) the side airbag inflators and/or the curtain shield airbag inflators. At this time a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the lateral motion of the occupants.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When the airbags inflate, they produce a fairly loud noise and release some smoke and residue along with non-toxic gas. This does not indicate a fire. This smoke may remain inside the vehicle for some time, and may cause some minor irritation to the eyes, skin or breathing. Be sure to wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent any potential skin irritation with soap and water. If you can safely exit from the vehicle, you should do so immediately.

Deployment of the airbags happens in a fraction of a second, so the airbags must inflate with considerable force. While the system is designed to reduce serious injuries, it may also cause minor burns or abrasions and swelling.

Front seats as well as parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rail may be hot for several minutes, but the airbags themselves will not be hot. The airbags are designed to inflate only once.

⚠ CAUTION

SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate with considerable force. To reduce the possibility of death or serious injury when they inflate, the driver, front passenger and rear outside passengers must:

- **Wear their seat belts properly.**
- **Remain properly seated with their backs upright and against the seats at all times.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Do not allow anyone to lean against the door when the vehicle is in use, since the side airbag and curtain shield airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, he/she may be killed or seriously injured. Special care should be taken especially when you have a small child in the vehicle.**
- **Sit up straight and well back in the seat, distributing your weight evenly in the seat. Do not apply excessive weight to the outer side of the seats with a side airbag and to the front pillar, rear pillar and roof side rail with a curtain shield airbag.**

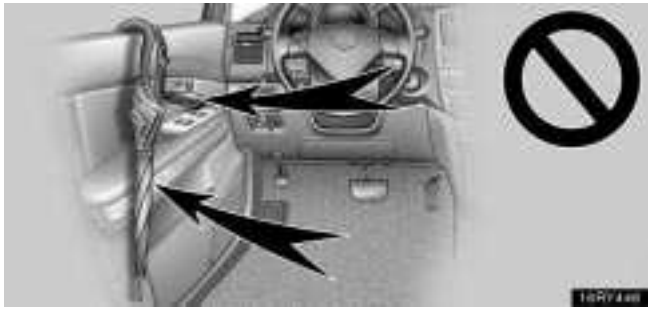
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Do not get allow anyone to get his/her head closer to the area where the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, since these airbags could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, he/she may be killed or seriously injured. Special care should be taken especially when you have a small child in the vehicle.**
- **Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat, facing the passenger's side door, since the side airbag and curtain shield airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, he/she may be killed or seriously injured. Special care should be taken especially when you have a small child in the vehicle.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Do not allow anyone to get his/her head or hands out of windows, since the curtain shield airbags could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, he/she may be killed or seriously injured. Special care should be taken especially when you have a small child in the vehicle.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



- **Do not attach a cup holder or any other device or object on or around the door. When the side airbag inflates, the cup holder or any other device or object will be thrown with great force, or the side airbag may not activate correctly, resulting in death or serious injury. Likewise, the driver and front passenger should not hold objects in their arms or on their knees.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Do not attach a microphone or any other device or object around the area where the curtain shield airbag activates such as on the windshield glass, side door glass, front and rear pillars, roof side rail and assist grips. When the curtain shield airbag inflates, the microphone or other device or object will be thrown away with great force or the curtain shield airbag may not activate correctly, resulting in death or serious injury.**
- **Do not hook a hanger, heavy or sharp pointed objects on the coat hook. If the curtain shield airbag inflates, those items will be thrown away with great force or the curtain shield airbag may not activate correctly, resulting in death or serious injury. When you hang clothes, hang them on the coat hook directly.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the side airbags inflate. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, causing death or serious injury.**
- **Do not modify or replace the seats or upholstery of the seats with side airbags. Such changes may prevent the side airbag system form activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.**
- **Do not disassemble or repair the front and rear pillars and roof side rails containing the curtain shield airbags. Such changes may disable the system or cause the curtain shield airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.**

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury. Consult your Lexus dealer about any repair and modification.

NOTICE

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not perform any of the following changes without consulting your Lexus dealer. Such changes can interfere with proper operation of the SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system in some cases.

- ***Installation of electronic devices such as a mobile two-way radio, cassette tape player or compact disc player***
- ***Modification of the suspension system***
- ***Modification of the structure of the passenger compartment***
- ***Repairs made on or near the console or front seat***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The indicator comes on when the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position. It goes off after about 6 seconds. This means the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are operating properly.

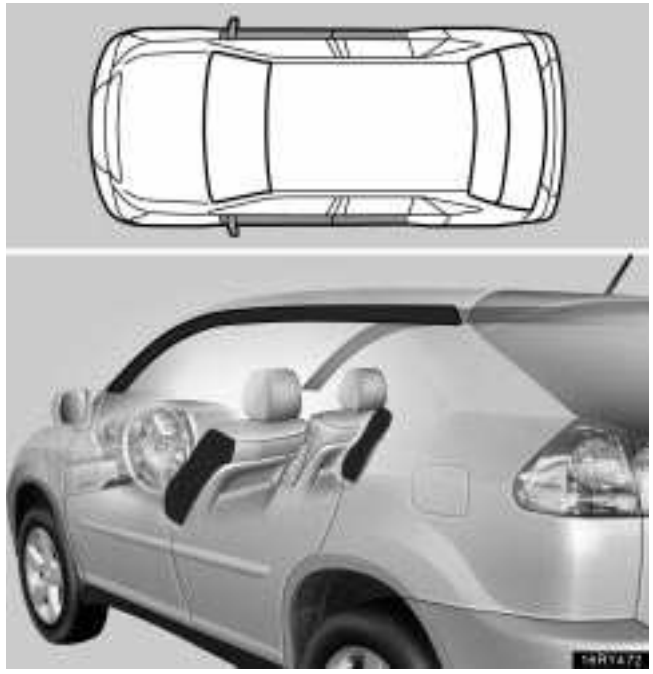
This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies, curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies, driver’s seat position sensor, driver’s seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system, “AIRBAG OFF” indicator light, front passenger’s seat belt buckle switch, front seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (For details, see “Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers” on page 87 for instructions.)

If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

- When the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position, the light does not come on, remains on or flashes.
- The light comes on or starts flashing while driving.

If the light stays on, it indicates that the SRS driver and front passenger airbag and/or front passenger occupant classification system and “AIRBAG OFF” indicator light have a problem. If the light flashes, the SRS side and curtain shield airbags have a problem.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible:

- Any of the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags have been inflated.
- The portion of the doors (shaded in the illustration) was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.
- The surface of the seats with the side airbag (shaded in the illustration) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside (shaded in the illustration) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

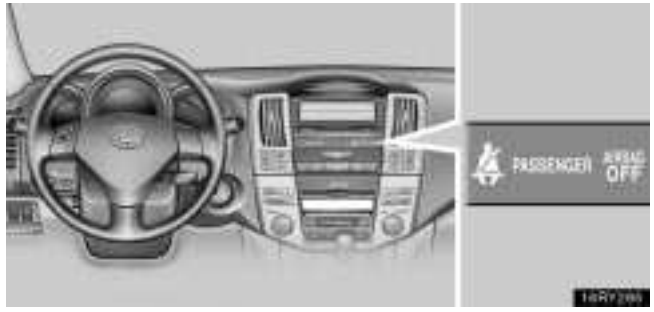
NOTICE
Do not disconnect the battery cables before contacting your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

FRONT PASSENGER OCCUPANT CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions 1 — 4 in the table shown below, and based on these conditions activates or deactivates the airbags. The system monitors the weight and load on the front passenger seat, and the seat belt buckle switch in determining conditions 1 — 4. In order for the system to detect the conditions correctly, do not do any of the following.

- Put a heavy load on the front passenger seat.
- Attach a seatback table to the front passenger seatback.
- Put weight on the front passenger by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the rear passenger seat.



▶ ***"AIRBAG OFF" indicator and front passenger's seat belt reminder light***

▶ ***SRS warning light***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light will be illuminated when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position and a child or child restraint system is in the front passenger seat (see table-condition 2). This indicates that in the event of a severe frontal or passenger's side impact, the front passenger airbag and side airbag on the front passenger seat are deactivated and will not deploy.

If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator may also be illuminated if the following occurs.

- The rear passenger lifts the front passenger seat cushion with their legs.
- Objects are placed under the front passenger seat.
- A front passenger seat seatback is in contact with a rear seat.

To ensure the system correctly detects an adult sitting in the front passenger seat, make sure the above do not happen.

Make sure the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is not illuminated when an adult sits in the front passenger seat. If the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light still remains illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.

The "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light will be initially illuminated when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position. It will remain for about four seconds and then go off. After about two seconds, the front passenger occupant classification system operates and judges whether to turn the indicator light on or not.

The SRS warning light and "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light will be illuminated if there is a malfunction in the front passenger occupant classification system.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEALER E-PROCESS

Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

Condition detected by the front passenger occupant classification system	Indicator/warning light			Devices			
	"AIRBAG OFF" indicator light	SRS warning light	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Front passenger airbag	Side airbag on the front passenger seat	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner
1 Adult*1	Not illuminated	OFF	Flashing*4	Activated			
2 Child *2 or child restraint system*3	Illuminated	OFF	Flashing*4	Deactivated		Activated	Activated
3 Unoccupied	Not illuminated	OFF	OFF	Deactivated			Deactivated
4 There is a malfunction in the system	Illuminated	ON	OFF	Deactivated			Activated

*1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.

*2: When a larger child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique or posture.

*3: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A forward-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (See "Child restraint system" as for installing the child restraint system.)

*4: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid potential death or serious injury when the front passenger occupant classification system does not detect the conditions correctly, observe the following.

- **Wear the seat belt properly.**
- **Make sure the front passenger's seat belt tab has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.**
- **Make sure the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is not illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, the front passenger airbag and side airbag on the front passenger side may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of collision.**
- **Do not put a heavy load in the front passenger seatback pocket or attach a seatback table to the front passenger seat seatback.**
- **Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the rear passenger seat.**
- **Do not let a rear passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.**
- **Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.**
- **Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a rear seat. This may cause the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the passenger's airbags will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the rear seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the rear seat.**

  Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.
- **If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is not illuminated. If the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator still remain illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **When it is unavoidable to install the forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (As for the installation order, see “Child restraint system” on page 226.)**
- **Do not remove the seat.**
- **Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction of the detection system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.**
- **Child restraint systems installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seatbacks.**

In addition to the precautions outlined above, the “AIRBAG OFF” indicator light may not be illuminated when a child sits in the front passenger seat or a forward-facing child restraint system is installed in the front passenger seat. If the “AIRBAG OFF” indicator light is not illuminated in these circumstances, the front passenger airbag and side airbag on the front passenger side are in an activated condition — the airbags will deploy if an impact meets the deployment criteria. Refer to all the cautions in this Section and “Child restraint system” on page 226.

CHILD RESTRAINT

Child restraint precautions

Lexus strongly urges the use of child restraint systems for children small enough to use them.

The laws of all 50 states in the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of a child restraint system.

Your vehicle conforms to SAE J1819.

If a child is too large for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and must be restrained using the vehicle’s seat belt. See “Seat belts” on page 172 for details.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Lexus strongly urges use of a proper child restraint system which conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- Only when it is unavoidable should a forward-facing child restraint system be installed on the front passenger seat. Always move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- On vehicles with side airbags and curtain shield airbags, do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillar or roof side rail from which the side airbags or curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of collision.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Child restraint system

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt. You must carefully consult the manufacturer's instructions which accompany the child restraint system.

To provide proper restraint, use a child restraint system following the manufacturer's instructions about the appropriate age and size of the child for the child restraint system.

Install the child restraint system correctly following the instructions provided by its manufacturer. General directions are also provided under the following illustrations.

The child restraint system should be installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

When not using the child restraint system, keep it secured with the seat belt or place it somewhere other than the passenger compartment. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

Types of child restraint system

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types depending on the child's age and size.

(A) Infant seat
(B) Convertible seat
(C) Booster seat

Install the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.

Your vehicle has anchor brackets for securing the top strap of a child restraint system.

For instructions about how to use the anchor bracket, see "Using a top strap" on page 244.

The child restraint lower anchorages approved for your vehicle may also be used. See "Installation with child restraint lower anchorages" on page 247 for instructions.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(A) Infant seat

(B) Convertible seat

(C) Booster seat

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

INSTALLATION WITH 3-POINT TYPE SEAT BELT

(A) Infant seat installation

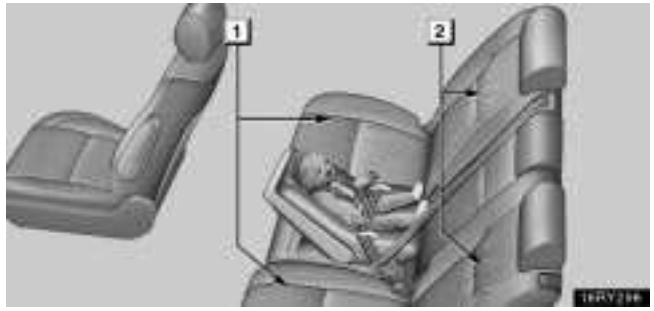
An infant seat must be used in rear-facing position only.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

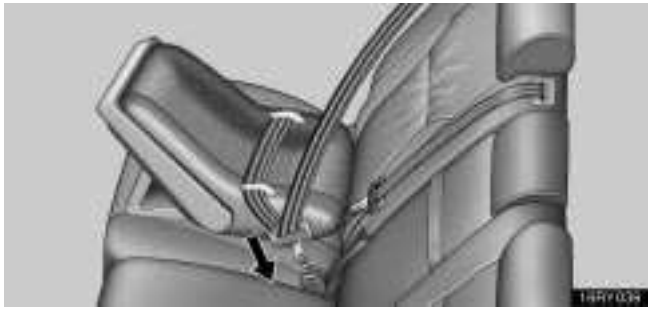
- **If the driver's seat position does not allow sufficient space for safe installation, install the child restraint system on the rear right seat. Child restraint system installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seatbacks.**



▶ 1 *Same position* 2 *Same angle*

- **When installing a child restraint system in the rear center position, adjust both seat cushions to the same position and align both seatbacks at the same angle. Otherwise, the child restraint system cannot be securely restrained and this may cause death or serious injuries in a collision.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



1. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the infant seat following the instructions provided by its manufacturer and insert the tab into the buckle taking care not to twist the belt. Keep the lap portion of the belt tight.

⚠ CAUTION

- **After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder portions of the belt are not twisted.**
- **Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent your child from properly latching the tab and buckle.**
- **If the seat belt does not function normally, it cannot protect your child from death or serious injury. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately. Do not install the child restraint system on the seat until the seat belt is fixed.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Fully extend the shoulder belt to put it in the lock mode. When the belt is then retracted even slightly, it cannot be extended.

To hold the infant seat securely, make sure the belt is in the lock mode before letting the belt retract.

3. While pressing the infant seat firmly against the seat cushion and seatback, let the shoulder belt retract as far as it will go to hold the infant seat securely.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.

4. To remove the infant seat, press the buckle-release button and allow the belt to retract completely. The belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or older child passenger.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(B) Convertible seat installation

A convertible seat must be used in forward-facing or rear-facing position depending on the age and size of the child. When installing, follow the manufacturer's instructions about the appropriate age and size of the child as well as directions for installing the child restraint system.

Install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. In order to activate the occupant classification system correctly, install the forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the following order:

1. Turn the ignition key to the "ON" position.
2. Move the front passenger seat to the rearward position.
3. Put the child restraint system on the front passenger seat without putting your weight on the front passenger seat.
4. Insert the seat belt tab into the seat belt buckle.
5. Fully extend the shoulder belt to put it in the lock mode. When the belt is then retracted even slightly, it cannot be extended. To hold the seat securely, make sure the belt is in the lock mode before letting the belt retract.
6. While pressing the convertible seat firmly against the seat cushion and seatback, let the shoulder belt retract as far as it will go to hold the convertible seat securely.

⚠ CAUTION

Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.

7. Put a child on the child restraint system and secure the child, complying with the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

The "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated when the ignition key is "ON" and the child is in the child restraint system after following these procedures. The "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light indicates the SRS front passenger airbag and side airbag on the passenger side will not deploy. If the indicator light is not illuminated, remove the child restraint system and reinstall it with the ignition key in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position. If the indicator light is not illuminated when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, then the SRS front passenger airbag and side airbag on the passenger side may deploy in an accident. Do not drive the vehicle in this condition. Remove the child restraint system and contact your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

When it is unavoidable to install the forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. Otherwise, the front passenger occupant classification system can not detect the presence of the child restraint system and the front passenger airbag and side airbag on the front passenger seat could deploy.

- **Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

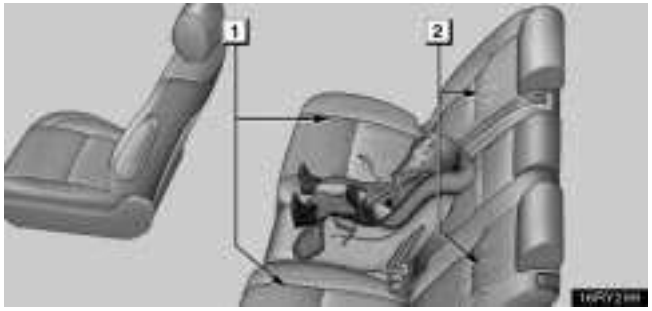
▶ *Move seat fully back*

- **A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, because the front passenger airbag inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.**

- **On vehicles with side airbags and curtain shield airbags, do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillar, or roof side rail from which the side airbags or curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **If the driver's seat position does not allow sufficient space for safe installation, install the child restraint system on the rear right seat. Child restraint system installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seatbacks.**



▶ 1 *Same position* 2 *Same angle*

- **When installing a child restraint system in the rear center position, adjust both seat cushions to the same position and align both seatbacks at the same angle. Otherwise, the child restraint system cannot be securely restrained and this may cause death or serious injuries in a collision.**

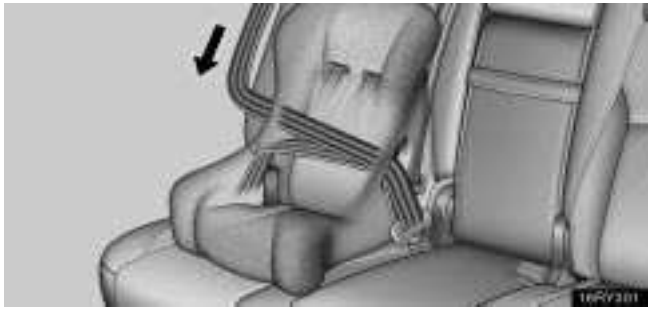
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

1. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the convertible seat following the instructions provided by its manufacturer and insert the tab into the buckle taking care not to twist the belt. Keep the lap portion of the belt tight.

⚠ CAUTION

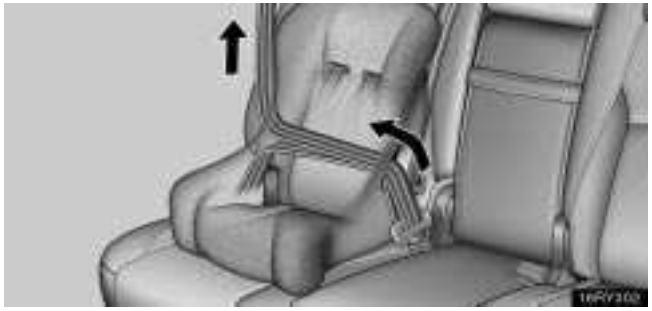
- **After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder portions of the belt are not twisted.**
- **Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent your child from properly latching the tab and buckle.**
- **If the seat belt does not function normally, it cannot protect your child from death or serious injury. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately. Do not install the child restraint system on the seat until the seat belt is fixed.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



2. Fully extend the shoulder belt to put it in the lock mode. When the belt is then retracted even slightly, it cannot be extended.

To hold the convertible seat securely, make sure the belt is in the lock mode before letting the belt retract.

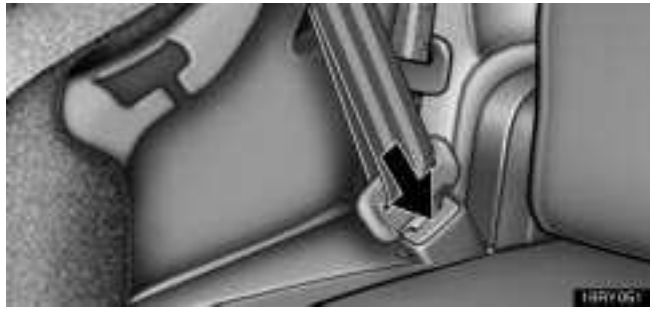


3. While pressing the convertible seat firmly against the seat cushion and seatback, let the shoulder belt retract as far as it will go to hold the convertible seat securely.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.



4. To remove the convertible seat, press the buckle-release button and allow the belt to retract completely. The belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or older child passenger.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(C) Booster seat installation

A booster seat must be used in forward-facing position only.

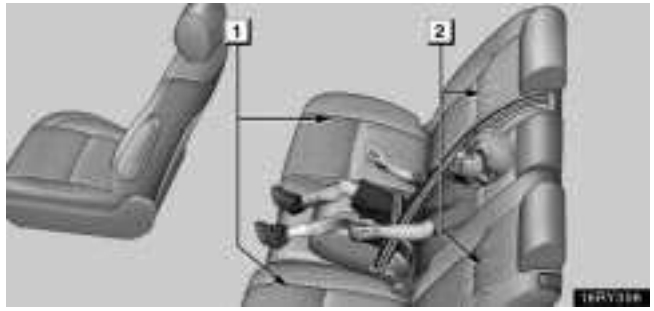
▶ ***Move seat fully back***

⚠ CAUTION

- **A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **On vehicles with side airbags and curtain shield airbags, do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillar or roof side rail from which the side airbags or curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.**



▶ 1 *Same position* 2 *Same angle*

- **When installing a child restraint system in the rear center position, adjust both seat cushions to the same position and align both seatbacks at the same angle. Otherwise, the child restraint system cannot be securely restrained and this may cause death or serious injuries in a collision.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

1. Sit the child on a booster seat. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the booster seat and child following the instructions provided by its manufacturer and insert the tab into the buckle taking care not to twist the belt.

Make sure the shoulder belt is correctly across the child's shoulder and that the lap belt is positioned as low as possible on child's hips. See "Seat belts" on page 172 for details.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from child's neck, but not falling off child's shoulder. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured in case of sudden braking or a collision.**
- **Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause death or serious injuries due to sliding under the lap belt during a collision or other unintended event. Keep the lap belt positioned as low on a child's hips as possible.**
- **For child's safety, do not place the shoulder belt under child's arm.**
- **After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder portions of the belt are not twisted.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent your child from properly latching the tab and buckle.**
- **If the seat belt does not function normally, it cannot protect your child from death or serious injury. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately. Do not install the child restraint system on the seat until the seat belt is fixed.**

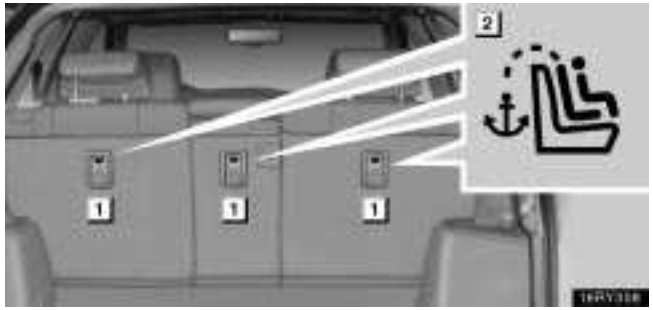
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. To remove the child restraint system, press the buckle-release button and allow the belt to retract.

Using a top strap

Follow the procedure below for a child restraint system that requires the use of a top strap.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



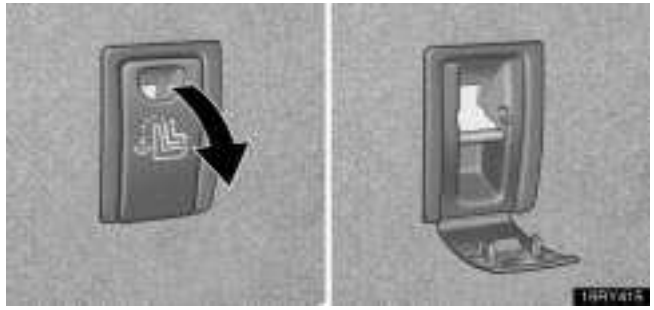
▶ 1 ***Anchor brackets*** 2 ***Symbol mark***

Use the anchor brackets on the back of the rear seatback to attach the top strap.

Anchor brackets are installed for each rear seating position.

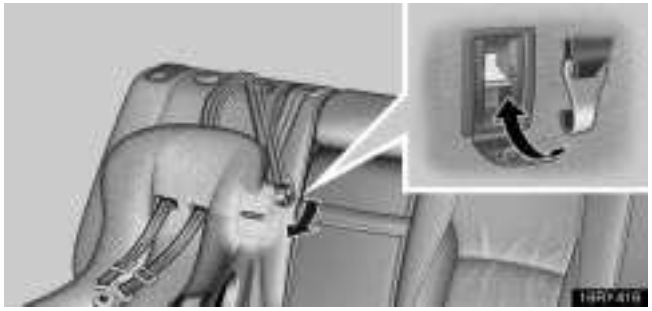
This symbol mark indicates the location of the anchor brackets.

1. Remove the head restraint.



2. Open the cover of the anchor bracket.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



3. Fix the child restraint system with the seat belt.

4. Latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

For instructions to install the child restraint system, see “Child restraint system” on page 226.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure the top strap is securely latched, and check that the child restraint system is securely by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Replace the head restraint and lift it up to the uppermost lock position.

Be sure to close the cover when the anchor bracket is not in use.

Installation with child restraint lower anchorages

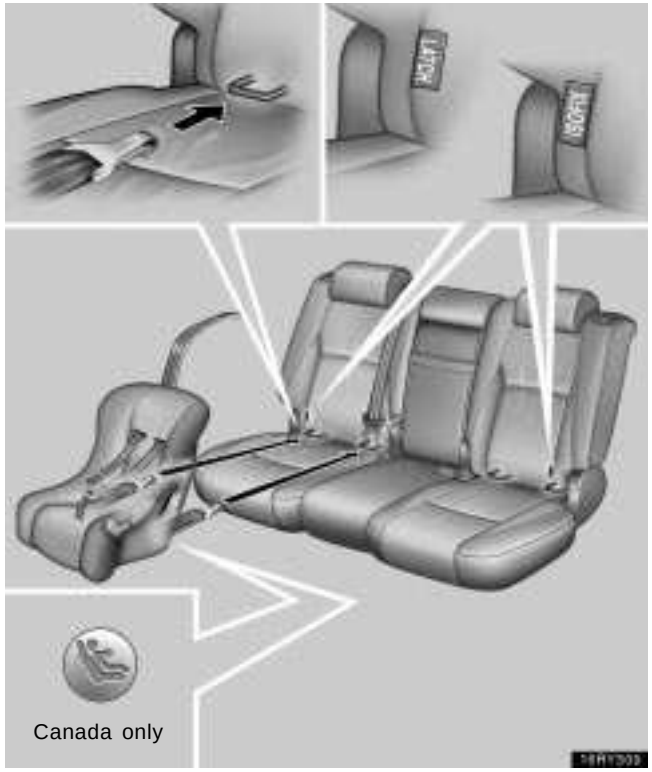
Lower anchorages for the child restraint systems complying with the FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2 specifications are installed in the rear seat.

The anchorages are installed in the seat cushion of the right side seating position and between the center and left side seating position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

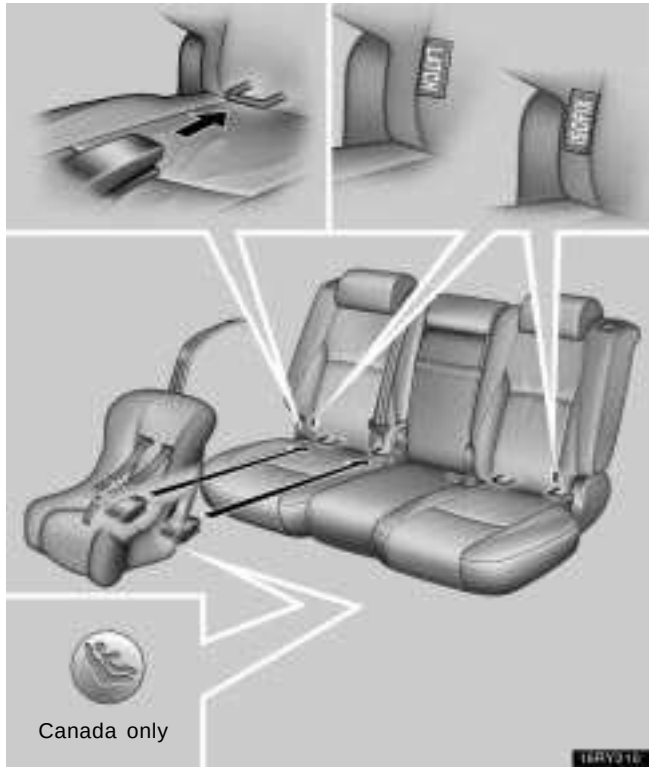
Child restraint system complying with the FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2 specification can be fixed to these anchorages. In this case, it is not necessary to fix the child restraint system with a seat belt on the vehicle.

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM INSTALLATION



▶ ***Type A***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ ***Type B***

For owners in Canada

The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

Type A —

1. Widen the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback a little and confirm the position of the lower anchorages below the tag in the seatback.

2. Latch the hooks of lower straps onto the anchorages and tighten the lower straps.

Type B —

1. Widen the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback a little and confirm the position of the lower anchorages below the tag in the seatback.

2. Latch the buckles onto the anchorages.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If your child restraint system has a top strap, it should be anchored. (For the installation of the top strap, see “Using a top strap” on page 244.)

For the installation details, refer to the instruction manual equipped with each product.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When using the lower anchorages for the child restraint system, be sure that there are no irregular objects around the anchorages or that the seat belt is not caught.**
- **Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.**
- **When using the lower anchorages for a child restraint system, ensure that the seat is moved to the rear-most position, with the seatback close to the child restraint system.**
- **After securing the child restraint system, never slide or recline the seat.**
- **Do not install a child restraint system on the rear seat if it interferes with the lock mechanism of the front seats. This can cause death or serious injury to the child and front passenger in case of sudden braking or a collision.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

DRIVING POSITION MEMORY SYSTEM

A microcomputer will memorize the position of the driver's seat, and the positions of the tilt and telescopic steering, and outside rear view mirrors. Two different driving position profiles can be entered into the computer's memory.

Recording a driving position in the computer's memory can only be done when the ignition key is in the "ON" position and the selector lever is in the "P" position.

Setting the driving position

1. Adjust the driver's seat, tilt and telescopic steering and outside rear view mirrors to the desired position.

2. While pushing the "SET" button, push button "1" or "2" until the signal beeps.

The beep sound means that the positions are recorded in the computer's memory.

By repeating these two steps and pressing the remaining button, the driving position for another driver can be recorded.

To set a new memorized position, select the desired position and perform step 2. The previous memory will be erased and the new position will be set.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To make only slight changes to an already memorized position, the easiest way is to first activate the memorized position, then make the desired changes and perform step 2 above.

Recalling the memorized position

When you push button “1” or “2”, the driving position will be automatically adjusted to the position recorded for that button.

Conditions for memorized position activation

- Ignition key “ON” and selector lever in “P” position.
  All parts of the memorized positions can be activated.
- Key not in ignition switch and within 30 seconds of opening driver’s door.
  The memorized position can be activated, except for the tilt and telescopic steering.

If any driving position memory switch is pushed while one of the memorized driving position profiles is being activated, the operation will stop.

To activate the system, push the desired button (“1” or “2”) again.

The driving position memory control system cannot be operated while the vehicle is moving.

If the vehicle’s battery is disconnected, the computer’s memory will be erased and the memorized positions will have to be set again.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not start the vehicle while the adjustments are being made.**
- **Take care not to select the wrong button, or the seat could strike the rear passenger or hit your body against the steering wheel. If this happens, you can stop the movement by pressing another driving position memory switch.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 1 – 7

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Steering wheel and mirrors

Steering wheel (tilt type)) 256
Steering wheel (tilt and telescopic type)) 257
Outside rear view mirrors 258
Inside rear view mirror 261

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEERING WHEEL (tilt type)

To change the steering wheel angle, hold the steering wheel, pull up the lock release lever, tilt the steering wheel to the desired angle and release the lever.

When the steering wheel is in a low position, it will spring up as you release the lock release lever.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.**
- **After adjusting the steering wheel, try moving it up and down to make sure it is locked in position.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEERING WHEEL (tilt and telescopic type)

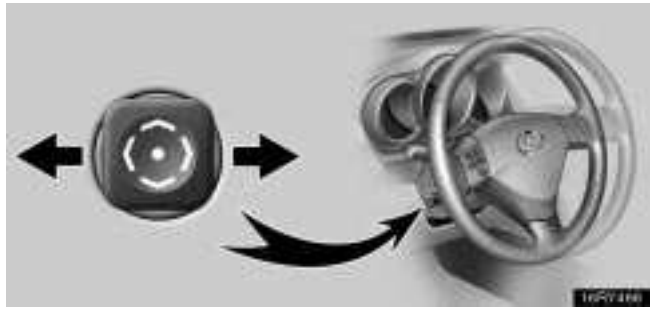
Adjustment of steering wheel tilt

To adjust the tilt of the steering wheel, push the control switch upward or downward to set it to the desired position.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.

Adjustment of telescopic steering column



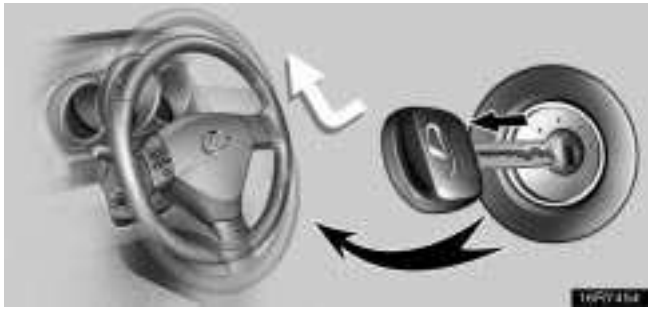
To adjust the steering column length, push the control switch forward or backward to set the steering wheel to the desired position.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not adjust the steering column while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Auto tilt away*



When the ignition key is removed, the steering column moves forward away from the driver and also tilts up for easy exit and entry.

When the key is inserted in the ignition switch, the steering column returns to the previously set position.

NOTE:
** This feature can be deactivated.*
Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

OUTSIDE REAR VIEW MIRRORS

Adjust the mirror so that you can just see the side of your vehicle in the mirror.

When the inside rear view mirror darkens in AUTO mode, the outside rear view mirrors also darken to reduce the reflection of the headlights of the following vehicle. For details, see “Inside rear view mirror” on page 261.

When you push the rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger switch, the heater panels in the outside rear view mirrors will quickly clear the mirror surface. (See “Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger, and windshield wiper deicer switch” on page 70.)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur, resulting in death or serious injuries.**
- **Since the mirror surfaces can get hot, do not touch them when the rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger switch is on.**

Power rear view mirror control

▶ 1 *Master switch* 2 *Control switch*

Pull down the switch cover.

To adjust the power rear view mirror, first push the "L" (left) or "R" (right) of the master switch, and push the control switch on the desired side.

The power rear view mirror can be adjusted when the key is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicles with driving position memory system —

When the automatic transmission selector lever is shifted into “R” position with the master switch in the “L” or “R” position, the rear view mirrors automatically down to help backing up.

NOTICE

If ice should jam the mirror, do not operate the control or scrape the mirror face. Use a spray de-icer to free the mirror.

The mirrors return to the previous position in the following operations.

- Shift the transmission lever out of “R” position.
- Place the master switch in the neutral position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Folding rear view mirrors

To fold the rear view mirror, push backward.

The rear view mirrors can be folded backward for parking in restricted areas.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not drive with the mirrors folded backward. Both the driver and passenger side rear view mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

INSIDE REAR VIEW MIRROR

▶ ***Type A***

▶ ***Type B***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjust the mirror so that you can just see the rear of your vehicle in the mirror.

Type A — Pushing the “AUTO” switch and “OFF” switch change the mode between AUTO and DAY.

Type B — Pushing the “MIRROR” switch changes the mode between AUTO and DAY.

The indicator comes on when the AUTO mode is selected.

DAY mode: The mirror surface is normal.

AUTO mode: If the mirror detects light from the headlights of the vehicle behind you, the mirror surface darkens slightly to reduce the reflected light.

When the inside rear view mirror surface changes, the outside rear view mirror surfaces will also become darker.

When the ignition key is inserted and turned on, the inside rear view mirror always turns on in the AUTO mode.

When the outside air temperature is low, it may take a little longer for the mirror to darken in response to the detection of headlights.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Type A

Type B

To ensure correct functioning of an anti-glare mirror sensor located on the back side of the mirror, do not touch or cover the sensor with your finger or a piece of cloth, etc.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Compass (type B only)

The compass indicates the direction in which the vehicle is heading. The illustration shown above indicates the vehicle is heading north.

Push the “COMP” switch to turn the compass system on and off.

If the ignition switch was turned off with the system on, the system will automatically turn back on when the ignition switch is turned on.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Displays	Directions
N	North
NE	Northeast
E	East
SE	Southeast
S	South
SW	Southwest
W	West
NW	Northwest

The compass may not show the correct direction in the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped immediately after turning.

  The compass does not adjust while the vehicle is stopped.
- The ignition switch is turned off immediately after turning.
- The vehicle is on an inclined surface.
- The vehicle is in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground parking, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof parking, near a crossing, near a large vehicle, etc.).
- The vehicle is magnetized. (There is a magnet or a metal object on or near the inside rear view mirror.)
- The battery has been disconnected.

Your vehicle is out of the set zone. Refer to the "Calibrating the compass" in this Section to set the zone number.

The compass works to calibrate the direction automatically while the vehicle is in motion, if deviation is small.

For obtaining additional precision or for complete calibrating, see "Calibrating the compass" below.

If the direction is not indicated or the system does not operate properly, contact your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ *Compass sensor*

NOTICE

Do not put magnets or a metal object on or near the inside rear view mirror of the vehicle. Doing this may cause malfunction of the compass sensor in the mirror.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Calibrating the compass (deviation calibration)

The direction display on the compass deviates from the true direction determined by the earth's magnetic field. The angle of deviation varies according to the geographic position of the vehicle.

To adjust this deviation, stop the vehicle, then push and hold the "COMP" switch until the zone number appears on the display. Then push the "COMP" switch, referring to the following map to select the number of the zone where the vehicle is.

▶ ***Zone numbers***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Leaving the system after the calibration for several seconds, the direction will appear on the display. It shows the zone number is set.

⚠ CAUTION

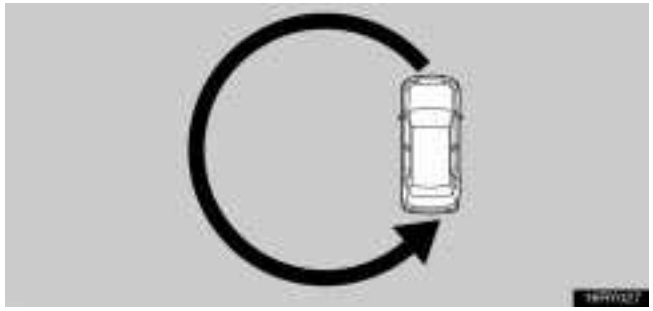
Do not adjust the display while the vehicle is moving. Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.

Calibrating the compass (circling calibration)

To rectify the compass, stop the vehicle and push and hold the “COMP” switch until “C” appears on the display.

There is also a case that “C” appears on the display in case of a drastic change in the magnetic field.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



Drive the vehicle slowly (at 8 km/h [5 mph] or lower) in a circle until the direction is displayed. If there is not enough space to drive in a circle, drive around the block until the direction is displayed.

After driving in 1 to 3 circles in the above method, calibration is complete with the direction shown on the display.

Perform circling calibration just after you have purchased your Lexus. And then always perform circling calibration after the battery has been removed, replaced or disconnected.

- Do not perform circling calibration of the compass in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground parking, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof parking, near a crossing, near a large vehicle, etc.).
- During calibration, do not operate electric systems (moon roof, power windows, etc.) as they may interfere with the calibration.

CAUTION

- **When doing the circling calibration, be sure to secure a wide space, and watch out for people and vehicles in the neighborhood. Do not violate any local traffic rules while performing circling calibration.**
- **Do not adjust the display while the vehicle is moving. Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 2 – 1

AIR CONDITIONING AND AUDIO

Air conditioning

Automatic air conditioning controls 271

For vehicles equipped with Navigation System, please refer to the separate "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AUTOMATIC AIR CONDITIONING CONTROLS

▶ ***You can adjust the brightness of the display. See “Multi-display light control” on page 105 for details.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The automatic air conditioning automatically maintains the set temperature.

In the automatic operation mode, the air conditioning selects the most suitable fan speed, air flow, air intake and on-off the air conditioning according to the temperature.

NOTICE

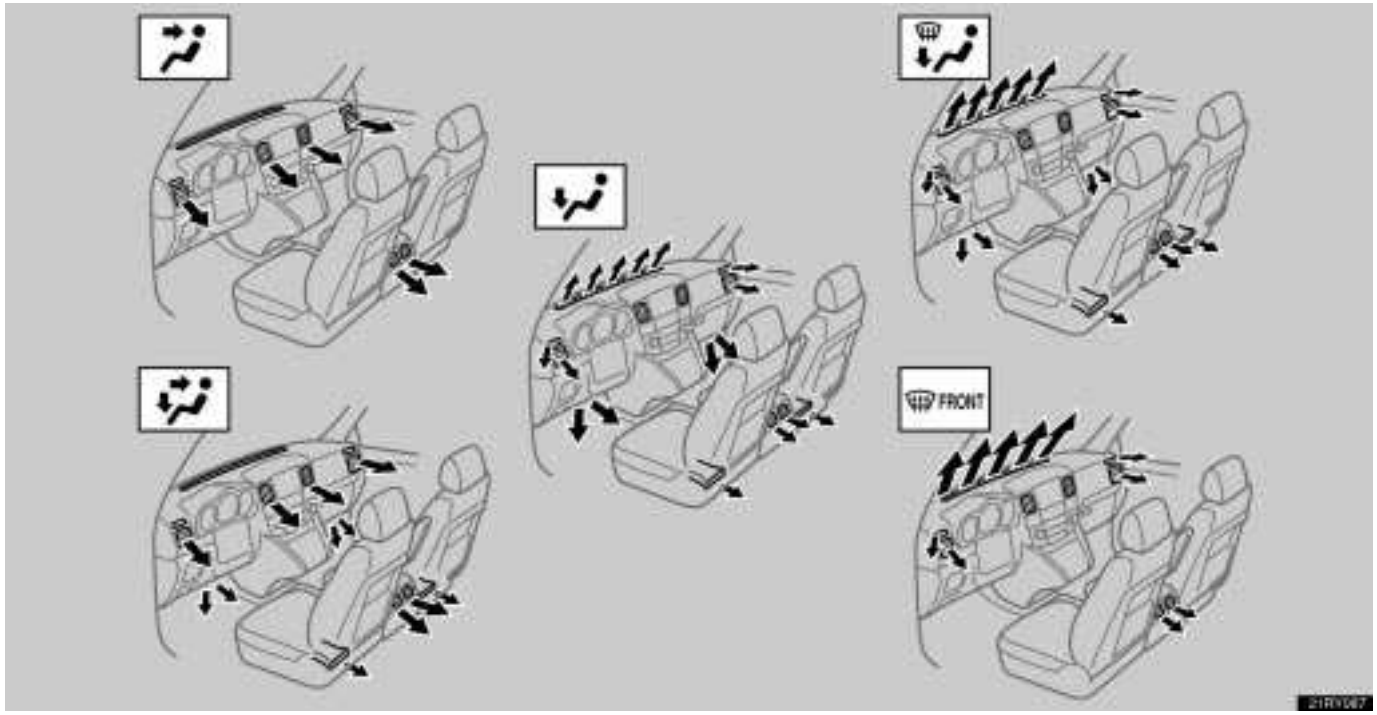
To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the air conditioning on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

The ignition key must be in the “ON” position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

1. *Driver side temperature display (in degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)*
2. *Air flow display*
3. *Fan speed display*
4. *Passenger side temperature display (in degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade)*
5. *"TEMP" (driver side temperature control) button*
   (At the independent mode that display shows "DUAL"; mainly for driver and secondarily for front passenger)
   (At the linked mode that display does not show "DUAL"; for driver)
6. *"AUTO" button*
7. *"OFF" button*
8. *Air intake control button*
9. *"A/C" button*
10. *Fan speed control button*
11. *"MODE"(air flow control) button*
12. *"DUAL" (temperature setting mode change) button*
13. *Windshield air flow button*
14. *"PASSENGER TEMP" (passenger side temperature control) button*
    (Only for the independent mode that display shows "DUAL"; mainly for front passenger and secondarily for driver)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ ***Air flow selection***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(a) Climate control

SETTING OPERATION — automatic control

1. Push the “AUTO” button.

An indicator light will illuminate to show that the automatic operation mode has been selected.

Air flow quantity, switching of the diffusers, on-off of the air conditioning and switching of the air intake between RECIRCULATED AIR and OUTSIDE AIR are automatically adjusted. When you press the “AUTO” button with the air intake mode at OUTSIDE AIR, internal circulation may be applied for maximum cooling. The operation status is shown by each indicator.

When one of the manual control buttons is depressed while operating in automatic mode, the operation corresponding to the depressed button is set. Other conditions continue to be adjusted automatically.

Push the “OFF” button to turn the air conditioning system off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

INFORMATION

- ***This automatic control has additional function as described below, when the "AUTO" button is pushed.***

  The fan speed is stopped for a little while until warm air preparation, when outside temperature is cold like a winter season in the "Floor", "Bi-level" or "Floor/Windshield" air flow mode. If quick removal for exterior frost, fog and inside fog on the windshield is desired, use the high fan speed setting after the "Windshield" air flow mode has been selected.

  The fan speed is stopped few seconds until cool air preparation, when outside temperature is hot like a summer season in the "Panel" or "Bi-level" air flow mode.

- ***The internal circulation may be applied for maximum cooling in the automatic operation mode, when outside temperature is hot like a summer season.***

  If fresh outside air is desired into the vehicle, push the air intake control button to select the OUTSIDE AIR mode.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- ***The "Floor/Windshield" air flow mode may be applied automatically, if the outside temperature is lowered down to below 0° C (32° F).***

  This is not malfunction. The "Floor/Windshield" air flow mode turns on the defogging and defrosting function with the purpose of cleaning your front view for safe driving.

  If the "Floor" air flow mode is desired with the main purpose of heating, "Floor" air flow mode can be selected manually by pushing the "MODE" (air flow control) button.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Use the “TEMP” or “PASSENGER TEMP” button to set the desired vehicle interior temperature.

The “TEMP” or “PASSENGER TEMP” selector button is used to set the desired interior temperature. The interior temperature will be controlled on the driver and passenger side room zones simultaneously or individually.

To increase the interior temperature, press the “∧” side, to decrease it, press the “∨” side.

If quick heating or cooling is desired —

“LO” appears when you hold it until maximum cooling (decrease), and “HI” appears when you hold it until maximum warning (increase).

“TEMP” button — Changes the temperature on the driver and passenger sides simultaneously or the driver side only.

“PASSENGER TEMP” button — Changes the temperature settings separate from the driver side.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

“DUAL” button —

This switch is used to set the temperatures independently for the driver’s seat and front passenger seat.

Pushing the button changes the mode from independent and linked.

- **Independent mode:** Temperatures can be set independently for the driver’s seat and front passenger’s seat. The indicator light will illuminate to show that the independent mode has been selected. The indicator light will come on to show that the independent mode has been selected.
- **Linked mode:** The same temperature is set for the driver’s seat and front passenger’s seat. The indicator light will turn off to show that the simultaneous temperature setting mode has been selected.

When the temperature for the front passenger’s seat is changed in linked mode, the mode is changed automatically to independent mode.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

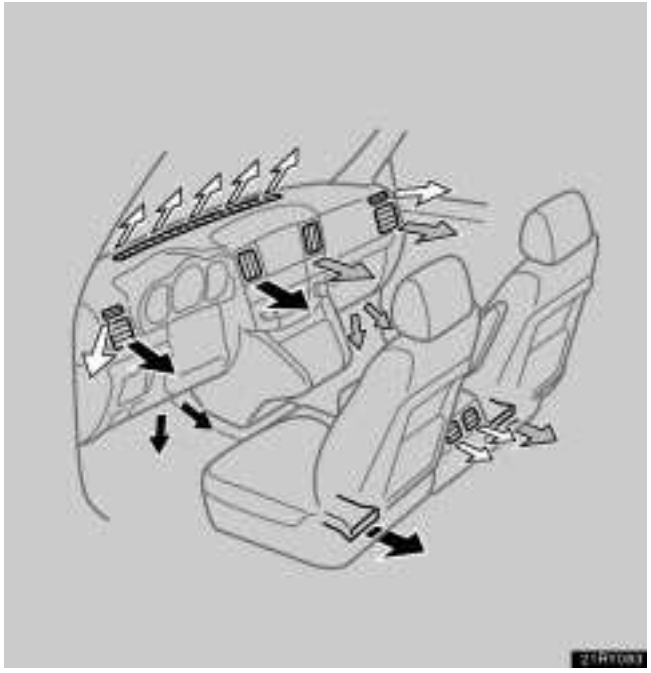
INFORMATION

Knowledge for the two-temperature selector operation

This air conditioning system has two independent temperature selectors: left and right (for the use of driver and front passenger respectively).

- ***There are cases where the temperature of the airflow may not accurately correlate on the driver and front passenger side according to circumstances, even if the left and right temperature selectors are set at the same temperature. If this situation occurs, use the fine tune operation to adjust the air temperature on one side.***
- ***There are cases where one or both of the airflow temperatures may not accurately correlate with the set temperature according to circumstances, when the airflow temperature settings on the left and right are substantially different. For example, if the left controller is set at central or neutral temperature while the right one is set at maximum heating or maximum cooling, or vice versa. If this situation occurs, use the fine tune operation to adjust the air temperature on each side.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



➡ Driver side setting air flow

➡ Passenger side setting air flow

⇨ Mixed air flow

SETTING OPERATION — manual control

When one of the manual control buttons is depressed while operating in automatic mode, the operation corresponding to the depressed button is set. Other conditions continue to be adjusted automatically.

If manual air flow selection is desired —

The outlets from which air is delivered can be selected manually by pushing the button. The function of each mode is as follows:

1 **Panel —** Air flows mainly from the instrument panel vents and rear vents.

2 **Bi-level —** Air flows from both the floor vents, instrument panel vents and rear vents.

When you set the temperature selector setting at about the middle in automatic operation, warm air flows out of the floor vents and relatively low-temperature air flows out of the instrument panel vents and rear vents.

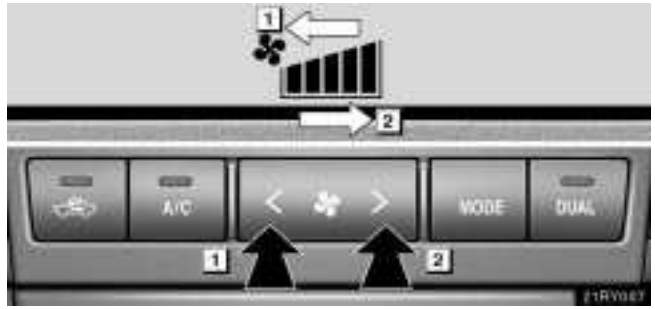
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3 **Floor —** Air flows mainly from the floor vents and rear vents.

4 **Floor/windshield —** Air flows mainly from the floor vents, windshield vents and rear vents.

Take in the fresh air with selecting the OUTSIDE AIR mode by the air intake control button.

If manual fan speed control is desired —



▶ 1 ***Fan speed at low*** 2 ***Fan speed at high***

The fan speed can be set to your desired speed by pushing the appropriate side of fan speed control button. The higher the fan speed is, the more air is delivered. Push the “>” (increase) or “<” (decrease) side of the button to adjust the fan speed. Pushing the “OFF” button turns off the fan.

To remove the exterior windshield frost and interior windshield fog, use the high speed setting.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If manual switching of air intake is desired —

The air intake control button is used to switch the air intake between the OUTSIDE AIR mode and RECIRCULATED AIR mode.

With the button in the OUTSIDE AIR mode, the indicator light will turn off and the system will take fresh outside air into the vehicle.

If quick circulation of cooled air is desired, push the air intake control button for RECIRCULATED AIR. The indicator light will come on.

For normal use, it is best to keep the air intake control button set to the OUTSIDE AIR mode. If recirculated air is used during heating, the windows will fog up more easily.

To prevent fogging up of the windshield, the air intake mode may change automatically to the OUTSIDE AIR mode depending on the condition of the air conditioning system.

For example, when the ambient temperature is low, the air intake mode may change automatically to the OUTSIDE AIR mode. This is not a malfunction.

When the air conditioning is ON, if the engine coolant temperature becomes extremely high, the RECIRCULATED AIR mode is automatically selected. This is not a malfunction. When the engine coolant temperature is lowered, the previous mode resumes.

If manual on-off of the air conditioning is desired —

Push the “A/C” button to turn the air conditioning on and push it again to turn the air conditioning off.

The air conditioning does not work if the outside temperature is lowered down to around 0°C (32°F).

If the system is used for ventilation, heating in dry weather or removing frost or exterior fog on the windshield, turn the air conditioning off once it is no longer required. This will improve fuel economy. The air conditioning can be used for year-round automatic temperature control including cooling and dehumidifying operation.

If the air conditioning compressor does not operate, the indicator of the “A/C” button will blink. If the indicator of the “A/C” button blinks even when the “A/C” button is pushed again, have the compressor checked by your nearest Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the engine coolant temperature becomes extremely high, the air conditioning may shut off automatically to resolve emergency situation for engine cooling. This is not a malfunction. When the engine coolant temperature is lowered, the air conditioning comes on automatically.

(b) Windshield defogging and defrosting

To remove interior fog on the windshield —

Push the windshield air flow button.

To remove frost or exterior fog on the windshield —

1. Push the “TEMP” button to set the maximum temperature.
2. Push the windshield air flow button.
3. Push the fan speed control button on the right side to obtain a maximum air flow.
4. Leave the “A/C” button off.

When the windshield air flow button is pushed, air flows mainly from the windshield vents and turns on the defogging function with the purpose of clearing the front view.

Pushing this button once again returns the air flow mode to the last one used.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

This button allows the air intake to select the OUTSIDE AIR mode automatically. This is to clean up the front view more quickly. If you want to return the setting to the RECIRCULATED AIR mode, push the air intake control button once again.

Push the “A/C” button for dehumidified heating or cooling. This setting clears the front view more quickly.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the windshield air flow button during cooled air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up blocking your vision.

(c) Operating tips

- To cool off your Lexus after it has been parked in the hot sun, drive with the windows open for a few minutes. After the excess heat has blown away, close the windows. This vents the hot air, allowing the air conditioning to cool the interior more quickly.
- Make sure the air intake grilles in front of the windshield are not blocked (by leaves or snow, for example).
- If air flow control is not satisfactory, check the side vents and rear vents. (See “(d) Side vents and rear vents”.)
- On humid days, do not blow cold air on the windshield. The windshield could fog up because of the difference in air temperature on the inside and outside of the windshield.
- Keep the area under the front seats clear to allow air to circulate throughout the vehicle.
- On cold days, set the fan speed to high for a minute to help clear the intake ducts of snow or moisture. This can reduce the amount of fogging on the windows.
- When driving on dusty roads, close all windows. If dust thrown up by the vehicle is still drawn into the vehicle after closing the windows, it is recommended that the air intake control button be set to the OUTSIDE AIR mode to take in the fresh air and the fan speed selector to any setting except OFF.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- If following another vehicle on a dusty road, or driving in windy and dusty conditions, it is recommended that the air intake be temporarily set to the RECIRCULATED AIR mode, which will close off the outside passage and prevent outside air and dust from entering the vehicle interior.

Push in the "AUTO" button.
Temperature — To the desired temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air conditioning — OFF

For manual operation —

Fan speed — To the desired fan speed
Temperature — Towards high temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air flow — FLOOR
Air conditioning — OFF

- For quick heating, select RECIRCULATED AIR for a few minutes. To keep the windows from fogging, select OUTSIDE AIR after the vehicle interior has been warmed.
- Push the "A/C" button on for dehumidified heating.
- Choose floor/windshield air flow to heat the vehicle interior while defrosting or defogging the windshield.

Push in the "AUTO" button.
Temperature — To the desired temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air conditioning — ON

For manual operation —

Heating

For best results, set controls to:

For automatic operation —

Air conditioning

For best results, set controls to:

For automatic operation —

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fan speed — To the desired fan speed
Temperature — Towards low temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air flow — PANEL
Air conditioning — ON

- For quick cooling, select RECIRCULATED AIR for a few minutes.

Ventilation

For best results, set controls to:

For automatic operation —

Push in the "AUTO" button.
Temperature — Towards low temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air conditioning — OFF

For manual operation —

Fan speed — To the desired fan speed
Temperature — Towards low temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air flow — PANEL
Air conditioning — OFF

Defogging and defrosting

For best results, set controls to:

— The inside of the windshield

For automatic operation —

Temperature — Towards high temperature to heat;
low temperature to cool
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air flow — WINDSHIELD

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

For manual operation —

Fan speed — To the desired fan speed
Temperature — Towards high temperature to heat;
low temperature to cool
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air flow — WINDSHIELD

When the windshield air flow button is pushed, air flows mainly from the windshield vents and turns on the defogging function with the purpose of clearing the front view.

Pushing this button once again returns the air flow mode to the last one used.

This button allows the air intake to select OUTSIDE AIR mode automatically. This is to clean up the front view more quickly. If you want to return the setting to RECIRCULATED AIR mode, push the air intake control button once again.

Push the “A/C” button for dehumidified heating or cooling. This setting clears the front view more quickly.

- On humid days, do not blow cold air on the windshield — the difference between the outside and inside temperatures could make the fogging worse.

Temperature — Towards high temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air flow — WINDSHIELD

For manual operation —

Fan speed — To the desired fan speed
Temperature — Towards high temperature
Air intake — OUTSIDE AIR
Air flow — WINDSHIELD

— The outside of the windshield

For best results, set controls to:

For automatic operation —

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When the windshield air flow button is pushed, air flows mainly from the windshield vents and turns on the defrosting function with the purpose of clearing the front view.

Pushing this button once again returns the air flow mode to the last one used.

This button allows the air intake to select OUTSIDE AIR mode automatically. This is to clean up the front view more quickly. If you want to return the setting to RECIRCULATED AIR mode, push the air intake control button once again.

Push the “A/C” button for dehumidified heating or cooling. This setting clears the front view more quickly.

- To heat the vehicle interior while defrosting the windshield, choose floor/windshield air flow.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(d) Side vents and rear vents

▶ ***Side vents***

▶ ***Rear vents***

If air flow control is not satisfactory, check the side vents and rear vents. The side vents and rear vents may be opened or closed as shown.

When outside temperature is cold like a winter season, air flow temperature from the side vents and rear vents may not be warmed up enough for a while until that the engine coolant temperature becomes high enough.

If air flow from the side vents and rear vents is not satisfactory, air flow direction can be changed manually by adjusting the vents fin direction or the vents may be closed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(e) Checking and replacing the air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter information label is placed in the glove box as shown and indicates that a filter has been installed.

The air conditioning filter prevents dust from entering the vehicle through the air conditioning vent.

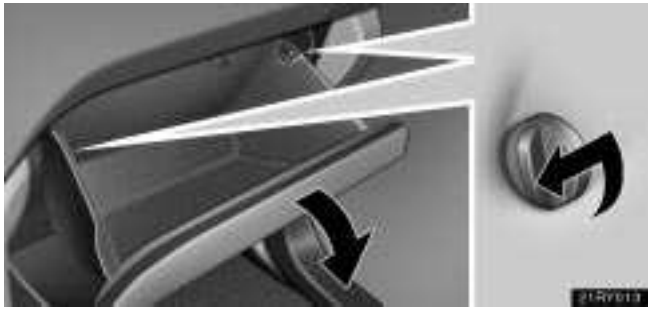
The air conditioning filter is behind the glove box.

The air conditioning filter may clog after long use. The filter may need to be replaced if the air flow of the air conditioner and heater experiences extreme reductions in operating efficiency, or if the windows become to fog up easily.

If the symptoms of air conditioning efficiency problems occur, contact your nearest Lexus dealer to have the filter checked and replaced.

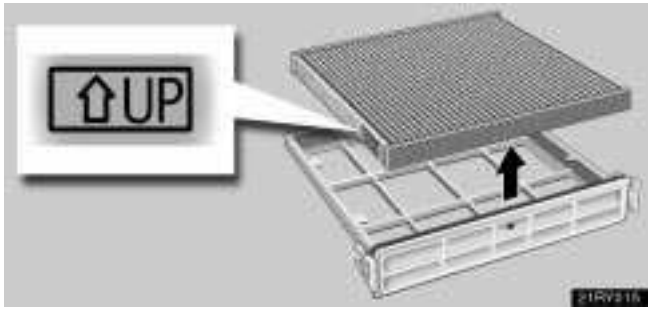
To maintain the air conditioning efficiency, inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow such as inner city or desert areas, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Owner’s Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance”.)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



1. Open the glove box. Remove the 2 pins installed on the upper part of the glove box and lower the glove box.

2. Remove the filter case from the filter outlet as shown in the illustration.



3. Remove the filter from the filter case.

4. Inspect the filter on the surface.

If it is the just moderately dusty, it may be cleaned by blowing compressed air from the reverse surface. Do not wash or oil the filter.

If it is dirty, it should be replaced.

When installing the filter in the filter case, keep the arrow pointing up.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

INFORMATION
The air conditioning filter should be installed properly in position. The use of air conditioning with the filter removed may cause deteriorated dustproof performance and then affect air conditioning performance.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 2 – 2

AIR CONDITIONING AND AUDIO

Audio

Audio system (type A) 295
Audio system (type B) 316
Audio remote controls (steering switches) 342
Rear seat entertainment system 343
Car audio/video system operating hints 418

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

AUDIO SYSTEM (type A)

Quick reference for your audio system

▶ ***You can adjust the brightness of the display. See “Instrument panel light control” on page 104 for details.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

1 **Radio mode:** Scan tuning
(See page 305 for details.)

CD mode: Scan selection
(See page 313 for details.)

2 **Ejecting a compact disc**
(See page 311 for details.)

3 **Compact disc slot**
(See page 311 for details.)

4 **Display of functions in TAPE or CD mode**

RAND: Random access
(See page 314 for details.)

RPT: Automatic repeat
(See page 310 or 314 for details.)

DOLBY NR: DOLBY NR
(See page 309 for details.)

◀I▶: Side change
(See page 309 for details.)

◀◀: Rewinding or reversing
(See page 309 or 313 for details.)

▶▶: Fast forwarding
(See page 309 or 313 for details.)

5 **Station selector and function buttons**
(See page 304 for details.)

6 **MUTE button**
(See page 298 for details.)

7 **Program type**
(See page 306 for details.)

8 **Traffic announcement**
(See page 307 for details.)

9 **Radio data system**
(See page 306 for details.)

10 **TUNE/AUDIO CONTROL knob**
(See page 301 for details.)

11 **Radio mode:** Radio text message
(See page 307 for details.)

CD mode: Compact disc text
(See page 315 for details.)

12 **Mode selectors**
(See page 299 for details.)

13 **Cassette tape slot**
(See page 308 for details.)

14 **Stopping and ejecting a cassette tape**
(See page 308 for details.)

15 **Turning the system on and adjusting the volume**
(See page 298 for details.)

16 **Radio mode:** Seek tuning
(See page 305 for details.)

TAPE mode: Direct access to a desired program
(See page 310 for details.)

CD mode: Direct access to a desired track
(See page 313 for details.)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using your audio system: some basics

This section describes some of the basic features of the Lexus audio system. Some information may not pertain to your system.

NOTICE
To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the car audio on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Your audio system works when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(a) Turning the system on and off

Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off. Turn this knob to adjust the volume.

The system turns on in the last mode used.

Push the "MUTE" button to decrease the volume momentarily.

To return to its original volume, push the same button again.

When the audio system is turned on, the mute is always off regardless of the previous mode.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Push the “AM”, “FM”, “TAPE” or “DISC” button to turn on that mode. The selected mode turns on directly.

Push these buttons if you want to switch from one mode to another.

If the tape or disc is not set, the cassette player or compact disc player does not turn on.

You can turn off each player by ejecting the cassette tape or compact disc. If the audio system was previously off, then the entire audio system will be turned off when you eject the cassette tape or compact disc. If the another function was previously playing, it will come on again.

With rear seat entertainment system —

You can play a DVD or CD by pushing the “DISC” button when a disc is loaded in the DVD player. Each time you push the “DISC” button, you change between “CD” mode on the front audio system and the DVD player. When you play the DVD player, “AUX” appears on the display.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

In the “TAPE” or “CD” mode, the applicable functions are shown in the lowest part of the display. Push the switch just below to turn on each function.

(b) Adjusting audio sounds

Your audio system can adjust tone and sound balance or select the listening seat position.

How good an audio program sounds to you is largely determined by the mix of the treble, mid-range, and bass levels. In fact, different kinds of music and vocal programs usually sound better with different mixes of treble, mid-range and bass.

Adjusting the sound balance and selecting the listening seat position is also important for good an audio sound.

Keep in mind that if you are listening to a stereo recording or broadcast, changing the sound balance or listening seat position will increase the volume of one group of sounds while decreasing the volume of another.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Each time you push the "AUDIO CONTROL" knob, the mode changes as in the following.

POS: Select one of the following listening seat positions.
1: Front seat priority mode
2: Rear seat priority mode
3: All seats mode
4: Driver seat priority mode

BAS: Adjusts low-pitched tones.

MID: Adjusts mid-pitched tones.

TRE: Adjusts high-pitched tones.

FAD: Adjusts the sound balance between the front and rear speakers.

BAL: Adjusts the sound balance between the right and left speakers.

ASL: Turns on or off the automatic sound levelizer.

Automatic sound levelizer: When the audio sound becomes difficult to be heard due to road noise, wind noise, etc. during driving, the system adjusts to the optimum volume and tone quality according to the noise level. While the automatic sound levelizer is on, "ASL" appears on the display.

Push the "AUDIO CONTROL" knob until the desired mode. Turn the knob to suit your preference.

(c) Your radio antennas

Detachable antenna: To remove an detachable antenna, carefully turn it counterclockwise.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the antenna, make sure it is removed before driving your vehicle through an automatic car wash.

Wire antenna: The wire antenna is mounted inside the back door window.

NOTICE

- ***When cleaning the inside of the back door window, be careful not to scratch or damage the wire antennas or connectors.***

- ***Putting a window tint (especially, conductive or metallic type) on the quarter windows may affect the reception of radio or mobile telephone. For the installation of the window tint, consult with your Lexus dealer.***

(d) Your cassette player

When you insert a cassette, the exposed tape should face to the right.

NOTICE

Do not oil any part of the cassette player, and do not insert anything except a cassette tape into the slot.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(e) Your compact disc player

When you insert a disc, gently push it in with the label face up. (The player will automatically eject a disc if the label face is down.) The compact disc player will play from track 1 through the end of the disc. Then it will play from track 1 again. On models with the compact disc auto changer, next disc will be played from track 1.

NOTICE
Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the compact disc player. Do not insert anything other than compact discs into the slot.

The player is intended for use with 12 cm (4.7 in.) discs only.

Radio operation

(a) Listening to the radio

Push these buttons to choose either an AM or FM station.

“AM”, “FM1”, “FM2” or “FM TYPE” appears on the display.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turn this knob to the right to step up the frequency or to the left to step down.

Your radio automatically changes to stereo reception when a stereo broadcast is received. “ST” appears on the display. If the signal becomes weak, the radio reduces the amount of channel separation to prevent the weak signal from creating noise. If the signal becomes extremely weak, the radio switches from stereo to mono reception. In this case, “ST” disappears from the display.

(b) Presetting a station

1. Tune in the desired station.

2. Push one of the station selector buttons (1 — 6) and hold it until a beep is heard. This sets the station to the button and the button number (1 — 6) appears on the display.

Each button can store one AM station and two FM stations. To change the preset station to a different one, follow the same procedure.

The preset station memory is cancelled when the power source is interrupted by battery disconnection or a blown fuse.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(c) Selecting a station

Tune in the desired station using one of the following methods.

Seek tuning: Push the “SEEK” button. The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station of the nearest frequency and will stop on reception. Each time you push the button, the stations will be searched automatically one after another.

Preset tuning: Push the button (1 — 6) for the station you want. The button number (1 — 6) and station frequency appear on the display.

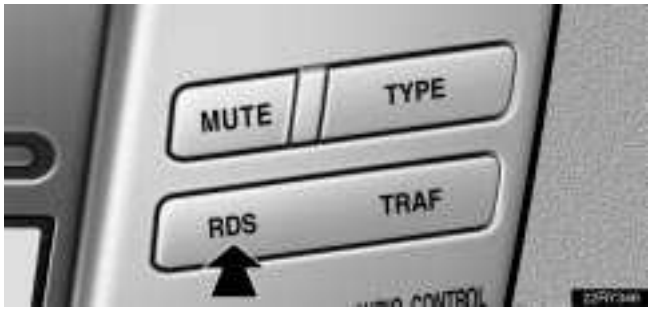
Manual tuning: Turn the “TUNE” knob. The radio will step up or down to another frequency.

To scan all the frequencies: Push the “SCAN” button briefly. “SCAN” appears on the display. The radio will find the next station up the band, stay there for a few seconds, and then scan again. To select a station, push the “SCAN” button a second time.

To scan the preset stations: Push the “SCAN” button until you hear a beep. “SCAN” appears on the display. The radio will tune in the next preset station up the band, stay there for a few seconds, and then move to the next preset station. To select a station, push the “SCAN” button a second time.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(d) RDS (Radio Data System)



When you push the “RDS” button briefly during FM reception, the RDS turns on. “RDS” and “RDS SEARCH” appear on the display and the radio starts to search RDS stations.

If no RDS stations can be found, “NO RDS ST” appears and the display returns to the previous mode.

If RDS stations are found, “FOUND” and the number of the RDS stations appear on the display in the FM TYPE mode and the RDS stations are preset by program type.

To turn off the RDS, push the “RDS” button until you hear a beep.

TYPE (Program type):

When you push the “TYPE” button while receiving an RDS station, the current program type appears on the display.

Each time you push the “TYPE” button, the program type changes as in the following:

- ROCK
- EASY LIS (Easy listening)
- CLS/JAZZ (Classical music and jazz)
- R&B (Rhythm and Blues)
- INFORM (Information)
- RELIGION
- MISC
- ALERT (Emergency message)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

TRAF (Traffic) function: A station that regularly broadcasts traffic information is automatically located.

When you push the “TRAF” button, “RDS” and “TRAF SEEK” appear on the display and the radio will start seeking any traffic program station.

If no traffic program station is found, “NO TRAF INFO” appears on the display for a few seconds and the display returns to the previous mode.

Radio text message:

If the radio receives a radio text message during FM reception, “MSG” and a text message appears on the display. After the text message goes off, “MSG” also goes off.

After the text message goes off from the display, pushing the “TEXT” button during message reception shows the text message again on the display.

The RDS audio system can store three messages consisting of 64 characters in memory. To store a message in memory, push the “TEXT” button until you hear a beep.

If three messages are already stored in memory, the oldest message will be overwritten by the new message.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To recall a radio text message, push the “TEXT” button. Each time you push the button, the available message will be displayed beginning with the newest one.

If there is no radio text message in memory and when no message is received, “NO MESSAGE” appears on the display. After this, the display returns to the previous mode.

Cassette tape player operation

(a) Playing a cassette tape

When you insert a cassette tape, the exposed tape should face to the right.

The player will automatically start when you insert a cassette tape. At this time, “TAPE” appears on the display.

To stop or eject the cassette tape, push the “⏏” (eject) button.

Auto-reverse feature: After the cassette player reaches the end of a tape, it automatically reverses and begins to play the other side, regardless of whether the cassette was playing or fast forwarding.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If a cassette is already in the slot, push the "TAPE" button.

Dolby® Noise Reduction* feature: If you are listening to a tape that was recorded with Dolby® Noise Reduction*, push the "DD" button. The display will indicate that the Dolby noise reduction system is on.

The Dolby NR mode reduces tape noise by about 10 dB. For best sound reproduction, play your tapes with the Dolby NR on or off according to the mode used for recording the tape.

To play a tape recorded without Dolby NR, push the button again to turn off the Dolby NR.

* Dolby noise reduction manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. "DOLBY" and the double-D symbol DD are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

(b) Manual program selection

"Program" button: Push the " ◀I▶ " button to select the other side of a cassette tape. The display indicates which side is currently selected ("▲" indicates top side, "▼" indicates bottom side).

"Rewind" button: Push the "◀◀" button to rewind a tape. "REW" appears on the display.

To stop rewinding, push the same button or "TAPE" button.

"Fast forward" button: Push the "▶▶" button to fast forward a cassette tape. "FF" appears on the display.

To stop fast forwarding, push the same button or "TAPE" button.

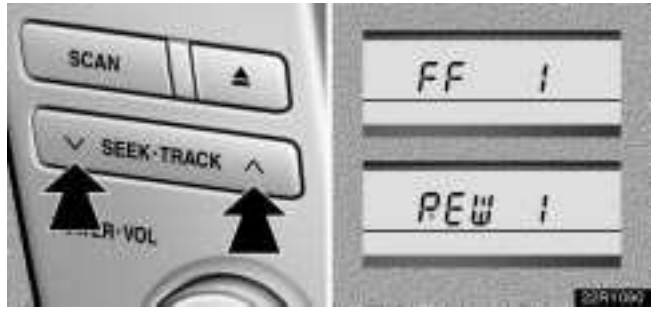
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(c) Automatic program selection

"RPT" button: The repeat feature automatically replays the current program.

Push the "RPT" button while the program is playing. When the program ends, it will automatically be rewound and replayed. Push the button again to turn off the repeat feature.

There must be at least 3 seconds of blank space between programs for the repeat feature to work correctly.



"Automatic program selection" button: The automatic program selection feature allows you to program your cassette player to skip forward or backward to locate the song you want to hear. You can skip up to 9 programs at a time.

Push this button on the "^" side to skip forward. "FF" and the number will appear on the display. Push the button until the number you want to skip appears on the display. After that, the player will automatically skip forward.

When the end of the tape is reached, the player automatically reverses sides and resumes normal play.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Push this button on the "∨" side to skip backward. Push the button until "REW" and the number you want to skip appear on the display.

- If you set "REW 1", the player will rewind to the beginning of the current program.
- When counting the number of programs you want to rewind, remember to count the current program as well. For example, if you want to rewind to a song that is two before the song you are listening to, push this button until "REW 3" appears on the display.

When the beginning of the tape is reached, the player automatically resumes normal play.

There must be at least 3 seconds of blank space between programs for this feature to work correctly.

"RPT" and "Automatic program selection" features: These features may not work well with some spoken word, live or classical recordings.

Compact disc player operation

(a) Inserting or ejecting compact discs

The ignition switch must be in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

- **Setting a compact disc:**

Gently push a disc in with the label faces up. (The player will automatically eject a disc if the label faces down.)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Ejecting a compact disc:**

Push the "⏏" (eject) button for the compact disc.

(b) Playing a compact disc

Push the "DISC" button if the disc is already loaded in the player.

"CD" appears on the display.

The discs set in the player are played continuously. The track number and the time from the beginning of the program appear on the display.

When play of disc ends, the first track starts.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(c) Searching for a desired track

Push the “SCAN” button briefly. “SCAN” will appear on the display. The compact disc player will play the next track for 10 seconds, then scan again. To select a track, push the “SCAN” button a second time. If the player reaches the end of the disc, it will continue scanning at track 1.

After all the tracks are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

(d) Selecting a desired track

“TRACK” button: Use for direct access to a desired track.

Push either side of the “TRACK” button several times until the desired track number appears on the display. As you release the button, the player will start playing the selected track from the beginning.

“Fast forward” button: Push the “▶▶” button and hold it to fast forward the disc. When you release the button, the compact disc player will resume playing from that position.

“Reverse” button: Push the “◀◀” button and hold it to reverse the disc. When you release the button, the compact disc player will resume playing.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(e) Repeating a track

“RPT” button: The repeat feature automatically replays the current program.

Push the “RPT” button briefly while the track is playing. “RPT” will appear on the display. When the track ends, it will automatically be replayed. This process will be continued until you push the button again to turn off the repeat feature.

(f) Random playing

“RAND” button: Use for listening to the tracks on a compact disc in random order.

Push the “RAND” button briefly. “RAND” will appear on the display and play the disc you are listening to in random order.

When a track is skipped or the system is inoperative, push the button to reset.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(g) Compact disc text

When you push the “TEXT” button while the compact disc with compact disc text display function (the logo “CD TEXT” marked on the CD) is being played, the track number, elapsed time, compact disc title and then track title appear on the display.

When you push this button if the compact disc does not have a text display function, “NO TITLE” appears on the display.

The display can show up to 12 letters at once. If the CD title or music title is longer than 12 letters, hold down the button until you hear a beep. The letters after the 12th one are shown. However, 24 letters at maximum can be shown on the display.

When you push this button until you hear a beep or play no operation for about 6 seconds with the letters after the 13th one on the display, the display returns and shows the first 12 letters.

Even if the CD title or music title is longer than 24 letters, the display can show up to 24 letters.

(h) If the player malfunctions

If the player or another unit equipped with the player malfunctions, your audio system will display one of the four following error messages.

If “WAIT” appears on the display: It indicates that the inside of the player unit may be too hot due to the very high ambient temperature. Remove the disc from the player and allow the player to cool down.

If “ERROR 1” appears on the display: It indicates that the disc is dirty, damaged, or it was inserted up-side down. Clean the disc or insert it correctly.

If “ERROR 3” or “ERROR 4” appears on the display: It indicates there is a trouble inside the system. Eject the disc.

If the malfunction is not rectified: Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AUDIO SYSTEM (type B)

Quick reference for your audio system

▶ ***You can adjust the brightness of the display. See “Instrument panel light control” on page 104 for details.***
If a Mark Levinson brand audio system is installed, the “Mark Levinson” logo is shown on the panel.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

1 **Radio mode:** Scan tuning
(See page 327 for details.)

CD mode: Scan selection
(See page 337 for details.)

2 **Ejecting a compact disc**
(See page 333 for details.)

3 **Compact disc slot**
(See page 333 for details.)

4 **Display of functions in TAPE or CD mode**

RAND: Random access
(See page 339 for details.)

RPT: Automatic repeat
(See page 332 or 339 for details.)

∨∧**:** Disc selection
(See page 337 for details.)

: DOLBY NR
(See page 331 for details.)

◀I▶**:** Side change
(See page 331 for details.)

◀◀**:** Rewinding or reversing
(See page 331 or 338 for details.)

▶▶**:** Fast forwarding
(See page 331 or 338 for details.)

5 **Station selector and function buttons**
(See page 326 for details.)

6 **Compact disc load button**
(See page 333 for details.)

7 **Program type**
(See page 328 for details.)

8 **Traffic announcement**
(See page 329 for details.)

9 **Radio data system**
(See page 328 for details.)

10 **TUNE/AUDIO CONTROL knob**
(See page 321 for details.)

11 **Radio mode:** Radio text message
(See page 329 for details.)

CD mode: Compact disc text
(See page 340 for details.)

12 **Mode selectors**
(See page 319 for details.)

13 **Cassette tape slot**
(See page 330 for details.)

14 **Stopping and ejecting a cassette tape**
(See page 330 for details.)

15 **Turning the system on and adjusting the volume**
(See page 319 for details.)

16 **Radio mode:** Seek tuning
(See page 327 for details.)

TAPE mode: Direct access to a desired program
(See page 332 for details.)

CD mode: Direct access to a desired track
(See page 338 for details.)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using your audio system: some basics

This section describes some of the basic features of the Lexus audio system. Some information may not pertain to your system.

NOTICE
To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the car audio on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Your audio system works when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(a) Turning the system on and off

Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off. Turn this knob to adjust the volume.

The system turns on in the last mode used.

Push the "AM", "FM", "TAPE" or "DISC" button to turn on that mode. The selected mode turns on directly.

Push these buttons if you want to switch from one mode to another.

If the tape or disc is not set, the cassette player or compact disc player does not turn on.

You can turn off each player by ejecting the cassette tape or compact disc. If the audio system was previously off, then the entire audio system will be turned off when you eject the cassette tape or compact disc. If the another function was previously playing, it will come on again.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

With rear seat entertainment system —

You can play a DVD or CD by pushing the “DISC” button when a disc is loaded in the DVD player. Each time you push the “DISC” button, you change between “CD” mode on the front audio system and the DVD player. When you play the DVD player, “AUX” appears on the display.

In the “TAPE” or “CD” mode, the applicable functions are shown in the lowest part of the display. Push the switch just below to turn on each function.

(b) Adjusting audio sounds

How good an audio program sounds to you is largely determined by the mix of the treble, mid-range, and bass levels. In fact, different kinds of music and vocal programs usually sound better with different mixes of treble, mid-range and bass.

Adjusting the sound balance and selecting the listening seat position is also important for good an audio sound.

Keep in mind that if you are listening to a stereo recording or broadcast, changing the sound balance or listening seat position will increase the volume of one group of sounds while decreasing the volume of another.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Each time you push the "AUDIO CONTROL" knob, the mode changes as in the following.

POS: Select one of the following listening seat positions.
1: Front seats priority mode
2: Rear seat priority mode
3: All seats mode
4: Driver seat priority mode

BAS: Adjusts low-pitched tones.

MID: Adjusts mid-pitched tones.

TRE: Adjusts high-pitched tones.

FAD: Adjusts the sound balance between the front and rear speakers.

BAL: Adjusts the sound balance between the right and left speakers.

ASL: Turns on or off the automatic sound levelizer.

Automatic sound levelizer: When the audio sound becomes difficult to be heard due to road noise, wind noise, etc. during driving, the system adjusts to the optimum volume and tone quality according to the noise level. While the automatic sound levelizer is on, "ASL" appears on the display.

Push the "AUDIO CONTROL" knob until the desired mode. Turn the knob to suit your preference.

(c) Your radio antennas

Detachable antenna: To remove an detachable antenna, carefully turn it counterclockwise.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE
To prevent damage to the antenna, make sure it is removed before driving your vehicle through an automatic car wash.

Wire antenna: The wire antenna is mounted inside the back door window.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- ***When cleaning the inside of the back door window, be careful not to scratch or damage the wire antennas or connectors.***
- ***Putting a window tint (especially, conductive or metallic type) on the quarter windows may affect the reception of radio or mobile telephone. For the installation of the window tint, consult with your Lexus dealer.***

(d) Your cassette player

When you insert a cassette, the exposed tape should face to the right.

NOTICE

Do not oil any part of the cassette player, and do not insert anything except a cassette tape into the slot.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(e) Your compact disc player with changer

Your compact disc player with changer can store up to 6 discs and play selected discs or continuously play all the discs set in the player.

When you set discs into the player, make sure their labels face up. If not, the player will display “ERROR 1” and the disc number.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- ***Do not stack up two discs for insertion, or it will cause damage to the compact disc changer. Insert only one compact disc into slot at a time.***
- ***Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the compact disc player. Do not insert anything other than compact discs into the slot.***

The player is intended for use with 12 cm (4.7 in.) discs only.

Radio operation

(a) Listening to the radio

Push these buttons to choose either an AM or FM station.

“AM”, “FM1”, “FM2” or “FM TYPE” appears on the display.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turn this knob to the right to step up the frequency or to the left to step down.

Your radio automatically changes to stereo reception when a stereo broadcast is received. “ST” appears on the display. If the signal becomes weak, the radio reduces the amount of channel separation to prevent the weak signal from creating noise. If the signal becomes extremely weak, the radio switches from stereo to mono reception. In this case, “ST” disappears from the display.

(b) Presetting a station

1. Tune in the desired station.

2. Push one of the station selector buttons (1 — 6) and hold it until a beep is heard. This sets the station to the button and the button number (1 — 6) appears on the display.

Each button can store one AM station and two FM stations. To change the preset station to a different one, follow the same procedure.

The preset station memory is cancelled when the power source is interrupted by battery disconnection or a blown fuse.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(c) Selecting a station

Tune in the desired station using one of the following methods.

Seek tuning: Push the “SEEK” button. The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station of the nearest frequency and will stop on reception. Each time you push the button, the stations will be searched automatically one after another.

Preset tuning: Push the button (1 — 6) for the station you want. The button number (1 — 6) and station frequency appear on the display.

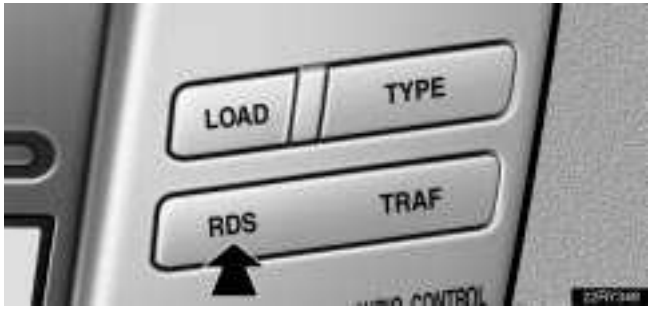
Manual tuning: Turn the “TUNE” knob. The radio will step up or down to another frequency.

To scan all the frequencies: Push the “SCAN” button briefly. “SCAN” appears on the display. The radio will find the next station up the band, stay there for a few seconds, and then scan again. To select a station, push the “SCAN” button a second time.

To scan the preset stations: Push the “SCAN” button until you hear a beep. “SCAN” appears on the display. The radio will tune in the next preset station up the band, stay there for a few seconds, and then move to the next preset station. To select a station, push the “SCAN” button a second time.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(d) RDS (Radio Data System)



When you push the “RDS” button briefly during FM reception, the RDS turns on. “RDS” and “RDS SEARCH” appear on the display and the radio starts to search RDS stations.

If no RDS stations can be found, “NO RDS ST” appears and the display returns to the previous mode.

If RDS stations are found, “FOUND” and the number of the RDS stations appear on the display in the FM TYPE mode and the RDS stations are preset by program type.

To turn off the RDS, push the “RDS” button until you hear a beep.

TYPE (Program type):

When you push the “TYPE” button while receiving an RDS station, the current program type appears on the display.

Each time you push the “TYPE” button, the program type changes as in the following:

- ROCK
- EASY LIS (Easy listening)
- CLS/JAZZ (Classical music and jazz)
- R&B (Rhythm and Blues)
- INFORM (Information)
- RELIGION
- MISC
- ALERT (Emergency message)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

TRAF (Traffic) function: A station that regularly broadcasts traffic information is automatically located.

When you push the “TRAF” button, “RDS” and “TRAF SEEK” appear on the display and the radio will start seeking any traffic program station.

If no traffic program station is found, “NO TRAF INFO” appears on the display for a few seconds and the display returns to the previous mode.

Radio text message:

If the radio receives a radio text message during FM reception, “MSG” and a text message appears on the display. After the text message goes off, “MSG” also goes off.

After the text message goes off from the display, pushing the “TEXT” button during message reception shows the text message again on the display.

The RDS audio system can store three messages consisting of 64 characters in memory. To store a message in memory, push the “TEXT” button until you hear a beep.

If three messages are already stored in memory, the oldest message will be overwritten by the new message.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To recall a radio text message, push the “TEXT” button. Each time you push the button, the available message will be displayed beginning with the newest one.

If there is no radio text message in memory and when no message is received, “NO MESSAGE” appears on the display. After this, the display returns to the previous mode.

Cassette tape player operation

(a) Playing a cassette tape

When you insert a cassette tape, the exposed tape should face to the right.

The player will automatically start when you insert a cassette tape. At this time, “TAPE” appears on the display.

To stop or eject the cassette tape, push the “⏏” (eject) button.

Auto-reverse feature: After the cassette player reaches the end of a tape, it automatically reverses and begins to play the other side, regardless of whether the cassette was playing or fast forwarding.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If a cassette is already in the slot, push the "TAPE" button.

Dolby® Noise Reduction* feature: If you are listening to a tape that was recorded with Dolby® Noise Reduction*, push the "DD" button. The display will indicate that the Dolby noise reduction system is on.

The Dolby NR mode reduces tape noise by about 10 dB. For best sound reproduction, play your tapes with the Dolby NR on or off according to the mode used for recording the tape.

To play a tape recorded without Dolby NR, push the button again to turn off the Dolby NR.

* Dolby noise reduction manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. "DOLBY" and the double-D symbol DD are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

(b) Manual program selection

"Program" button: Push the " ◀I▶ " button to select the other side of a cassette tape. The display indicates which side is currently selected ("▲" indicates top side, "▼" indicates bottom side).

"Rewind" button: Push the "◀◀" button to rewind a tape. "REW" appears on the display.

To stop rewinding, push the same button or "TAPE" button.

"Fast forward" button: Push the "▶▶" button to fast forward a cassette tape. "FF" appears on the display.

To stop fast forwarding, push the same button or "TAPE" button.

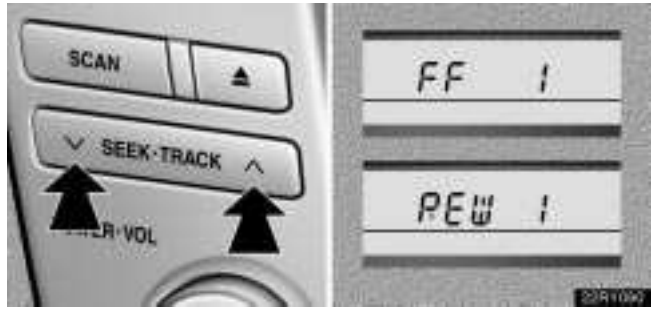
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(c) Automatic program selection

“RPT” button: The repeat feature automatically replays the current program.

Push the “RPT” button while the program is playing. When the program ends, it will automatically be rewound and replayed. Push the button again to turn off the repeat feature.

There must be at least 3 seconds of blank space between programs for the repeat feature to work correctly.



“Automatic program selection” button: The automatic program selection feature allows you to program your cassette player to skip forward or backward to locate the song you want to hear. You can skip up to 9 programs at a time.

Push this button on the “^” side to skip forward. “FF” and the number will appear on the display. Push the button until the number you want to skip appears on the display. After that, the player will automatically skip forward.

When the end of the tape is reached, the player automatically reverses sides and resumes normal play.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Push this button on the "∨" side to skip backward. Push the button until "REW" and the number you want to skip appear on the display.

- If you set "REW 1", the player will rewind to the beginning of the current program.
- When counting the number of programs you want to rewind, remember to count the current program as well. For example, if you want to rewind to a song that is two before the song you are listening to, push this button until "REW 3" appears on the display.

When the beginning of the tape is reached, the player automatically resumes normal play.

There must be at least 3 seconds of blank space between programs for this feature to work correctly.

"RPT" and "Automatic program selection" features: These features may not work well with some spoken word, live or classical recordings.

Compact disc player operation

(a) Inserting or ejecting compact discs

The ignition switch must be in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

Your compact disc player with changer can store up to 6 discs.

- **Setting a single compact disc:**

1. Push the "LOAD" button briefly.

The umber indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking and "WAIT" appears on the display. After the blinking indicators change to green and stay on, and "WAIT" changes to the "LOAD", the CD door opens.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Insert only one disc while the CD door is open.

You can set a disc at the lowest empty disc number.

After insertion, the set disc is automatically loaded.

If the label faces down, the disc cannot be played. In this case, “ERROR 1” and disc number appear on the display.

If you need to insert the next disc, repeat the same procedure to insert another disc.

- **Setting all the discs:**

1. Push the “LOAD” button until you hear a beep.

The umber indicators at both ends of the slot start blinking and “WAIT” appears on the display. After the blinking indicators change to green and stay on, and “WAIT” changes to the “LOAD”, the CD door opens.

2. Insert only one disc while the CD door is open.

The CD door closes and “WAIT” appears again.

3. Insert the next disc after the “WAIT” changes to the “LOAD” and the CD door opens.

4. Repeat this procedure until you insert all the discs.

To cancel the operation, push the “LOAD” or “DISC” button.

If you do not insert discs within 15 seconds after pushing the “LOAD” button and “LOAD” is displayed, the operation will be canceled automatically.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE
Do not insert one disc stacked on top of another one or feed them in continuously, to prevent discs from getting stuck in the player.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Ejecting a single disc alone:**

1. Push the "∨" or "∧" button to display the disc number you want to eject.

2. Push the "⏏" (eject) button for the compact disc briefly.

At this time, the display shows "EJECT" and the indicators at both ends of the slot as well as disc number light up.

- **Ejecting all the discs:**

Push the "⏏" (eject) button for the compact disc until you hear a beep.

(b) Playing a compact disc

Push the "DISC" button if the discs are already loaded in the player.

"CD" appears on the display.

The discs set in the player are played continuously, starting with the last disc you inserted. The disc number of the disc currently being played, the track number and the time from the beginning of the program appear on the display.

When play of one disc ends, the first track of the following disc starts. When play of the final disc ends, play of the first disc starts again.

The player will skip any empty disc trays.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

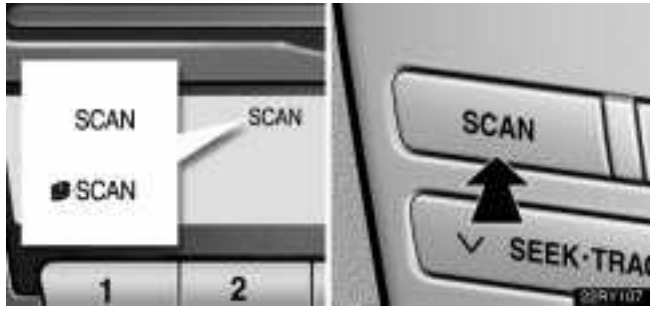
(c) Selecting a desired disc

Searching for a desired disc:

Push the "∨" or "∧" button to select the disc number.

Push the button several times until the desired disc number appears on the display.

(d) Searching for a desired track or disc



Searching for a desired track:

Push the "SCAN" button briefly. "SCAN" will appear on the display. The compact disc player will play the next track for 10 seconds, then scan again. To select a track, push the "SCAN" button a second time. If the player reaches the end of the disc, it will continue scanning at track 1.

After all the tracks are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Searching for a desired disc:

Push the “SCAN” button until you hear a beep. With “SCAN” on the display, the program at the beginning of each disc will be played for 10 seconds. To continue listening to the program of your choice, push the button a second time.

After all the discs in the automatic changer are scanned in one pass, the scan function is cancelled.

(e) Selecting a desired track

“TRACK” button: Use for direct access to a desired track.

Push either side of the “TRACK” button several times until the desired track number appears on the display. As you release the button, the player will start playing the selected track from the beginning.

“Fast forward” button: Push the “▶▶” button and hold it to fast forward the disc. When you release the button, the compact disc player will resume playing from that position.

“Reverse” button: Push the “◀◀” button and hold it to reverse the disc. When you release the button, the compact disc player will resume playing.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(f) Repeating a track or a disc

"RPT" button: There are 2 repeat features — you can either replay a disc track or a whole compact disc.

Repeating a track: Push the "RPT" button briefly while the track is playing. "RPT" will appear on the display. When the track ends, it will automatically be replayed. This process will be continued until you push the button again to turn off the repeat feature.

Repeating a disc: Push the "RPT" button and hold it until you hear a beep. "RPT" will appear on the display. The player will repeat all the tracks on the disc you are listening to. When the disc ends, the player will automatically go back to the top track of the disc and replay. This process will be continued until you push the button again to turn off the repeat feature.

(g) Random playing

"RAND" button: There are 2 random features — you can either listen to the tracks on all the compact discs in the player in random order, or only listen to the tracks on a specific compact disc in random order.

Random playing for the tracks on a disc: Push the "RAND" button briefly. "RAND" will appear on the display and play the disc you are listening to in random order.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Random playing for all the tracks in the automatic changer: Push the “RAND” button and hold it until you hear a beep. “ RAND ” will appear on the display and the player will perform all the tracks on all the discs in the automatic changer in random order. To turn off the random feature, push “RAND” a second time.

When a track is skipped or the system is inoperative, push the button to reset.

(h) Compact disc text

When you push the “TEXT” button while the compact disc with compact disc text display function (the logo “CD TEXT” marked on the CD) is being played, the track number, elapsed time, compact disc title and then track title appear on the display.

When you push this button if the compact disc does not have a text display function, “NO TITLE” appears on the display.

The display can show up to 12 letters at once. If the CD title or music title is longer than 12 letters, hold down the button until you hear a beep. The letters after the 12th one are shown. However, 24 letters at maximum can be shown on the display.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When you push this button until you hear a beep or play no operation for about 6 seconds with the letters after the 13th one on the display, the display returns and shows the first 12 letters.

Even if the CD title or music title is longer than 24 letters, the display can show up to 24 letters.

(i) If the player malfunctions

If the player or another unit equipped with the player malfunctions, your audio system will display one of the four following error messages.

If “WAIT” appears on the display: It indicates that the inside of the player unit may be too hot due to the very high ambient temperature. Remove the disc from the player and allow the player to cool down.

If “ERROR 1” appears on the display: It indicates that the disc is dirty, damaged, or it was inserted up-side down. Clean the disc or insert it correctly.

If “ERROR 3” or “ERROR 4” appears on the display: It indicates there is a trouble inside the system. Eject the disc.

If the malfunction is not rectified: Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AUDIO REMOTE CONTROLS (steering switches)

The switches are installed on the left side of the steering wheel.

"MODE" switch: Use this switch to turn on or off the audio system, or change the audio mode.

- To turn on the system, push the switch briefly. To turn off the system, push and hold the switch until you hear a beep.
- To change the audio mode, turn on the system and push the switch briefly. If a tape or compact disc is not inserted, the "TAPE" or "CD" mode is skipped.

" " switches: Use these switches to adjust the volume.

To increase the volume, push the "+". To decrease the volume, push the "–". The volume continues to increase or decrease while the switch is being pressed.

(a) When the radio mode is selected

"∨" or "∧" switch: Use these switches for seek tuning or to select a preset station.

- To select a preset station, push this switch briefly. The station you assigned to a switch on the audio system will be selected.
- To seek a station, push and hold this switch until you hear a beep. The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station, and will stop on reception.

(b) When the "TAPE" mode is selected

"∨" or "∧" switch: Use these switches to fast forward or rewind the tape or for automatic program selection.

- To skip forward or reward for automatic program selection, push this switch briefly. When automatically selecting a program, you can skip up to 9 programs at a time. For details, see page 310 or 332 for details.
- To fast forward or rewind the tape, push this switch until you hear a beep. To stop fast forwarding or rewinding, push and hold the same side on the switch until you hear a beep.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(c) When the "CD" mode is selected

"∨" or "∧" switch: Use this switch to select a desired track.

Push this switch briefly, to select a desired track.

With a compact disc changer only —

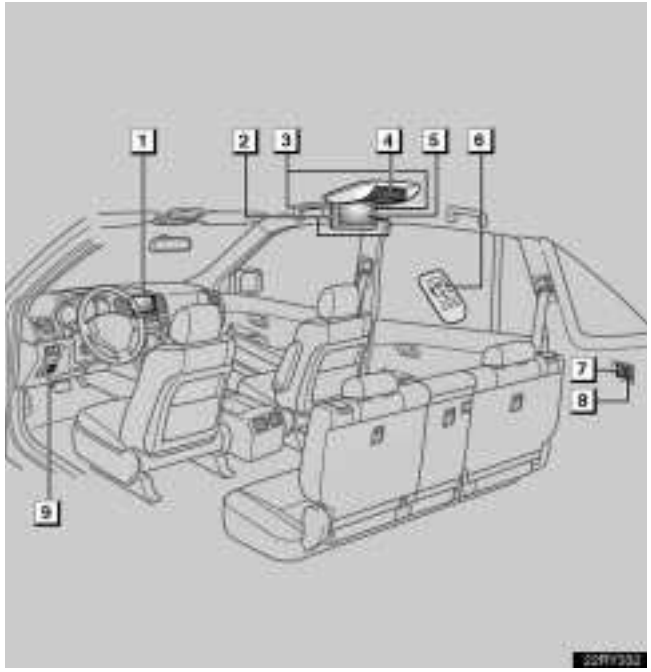
"∨" or "∧" switch: Use this switch to select a desired track or disc.

- To select a desired track, push this switch briefly.
- To select a desired disc, push and hold this switch until the desired number of the disc appears and you hear a beep.

⚠ CAUTION

Operate the switches with due care while you are driving to avoid accidents.

REAR SEAT ENTERTAINMENT SYSTEM



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ 1 *Front audio system*
2 *Headphone volume control dial*
3 *Headphone input jack*
4 *DVD player*
5 *Rear seat entertainment system display*
6 *Rear seat entertainment system controller*
7 *Input terminal adapter*
8 *Power outlet*
9 *Power outlet main switch*

(a) Display

To use the display, push the lock release button and lower the display until you hear a click.

You can adjust the display to your desired angle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To close, push up the display until you hear a click.

NOTICE

- ***The screen should be cleaned with a dry soft cloth. If the screen is pushed by hand or wiped with a hard cloth, the surface of the screen may be scratched.***
- ***Benzene or alkaline solutions may damage the coated surface of the screen.***
- ***To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not turn on the rear seat entertainment system longer than necessary when the engine is not running.***

The illumination of the screen is automatically turned off when the display is closed. However, the rear seat entertainment system is not turned off.

⚠ CAUTION

To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop while driving, close the display when it is not in use.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear seat entertainment system controller

The rear seat entertainment system can be operated with the rear seat entertainment system controller and the switches on the DVD player. The system cannot be operated by touching the switches on the screen directly.

NOTICE

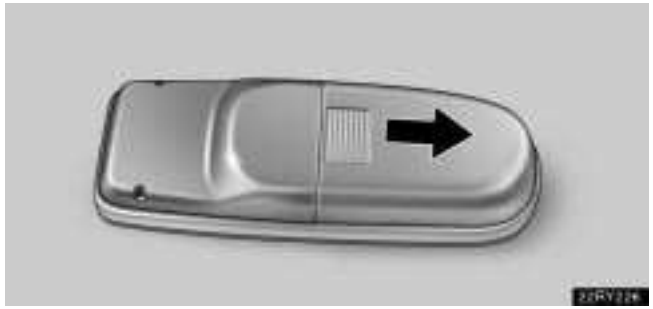
Keep the controller away from direct sunlight, high heat and high humidity. These conditions could cause the case to deform or the battery to explode or leak.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not disassemble or modify the controller. It may cause an accident, fire or electric shock.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

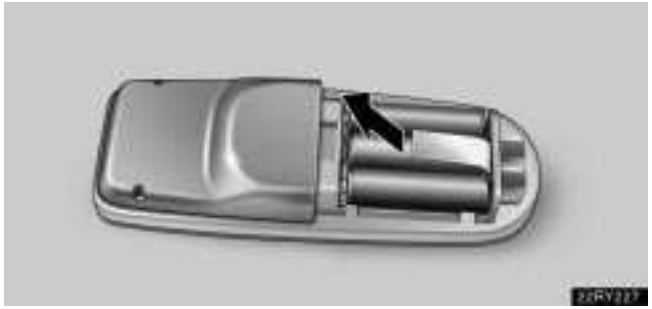
(a) Before using the controller (for new vehicle owners)



A battery is already set in the controller with an insulating sheet, which prevents the battery from being discharged. Before using the controller, remove the insulating sheet according to the following procedure.

To remove the insulating sheet:

1. Remove the cover of the controller as shown.



2. Remove the insulating sheet.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(b) Using the controller

To use the rear seat entertainment system controller, direct the signal output portion of the controller to the signal reception portion of the rear seat entertainment system display.

The controller does not operate properly when the signal reception portion of the display is exposed to direct sunlight. Block the display from direct sunlight.

⚠ CAUTION

To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop while driving, stow the controller in the console box or front seatback pocket when it is not in use.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

Observe the followings, otherwise the controller may be damaged.

- ***Do not drop or strongly knock the controller against hard objects.***
- ***Do not sit on or place heavy objects on the controller.***
- ***Do not leave the controller exposed to high temperatures (such as on the instrument panel) for a long time, otherwise the controller may be damaged.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(c) Locating the controller

If you lose sight of the controller, push and hold the “CURSOR (REMOTE)” button on the DVD player unit until you hear a beep. A buzzer sounds from the controller to let you know where it is.

To stop the buzzer, push any button of the controller.

FCC Information

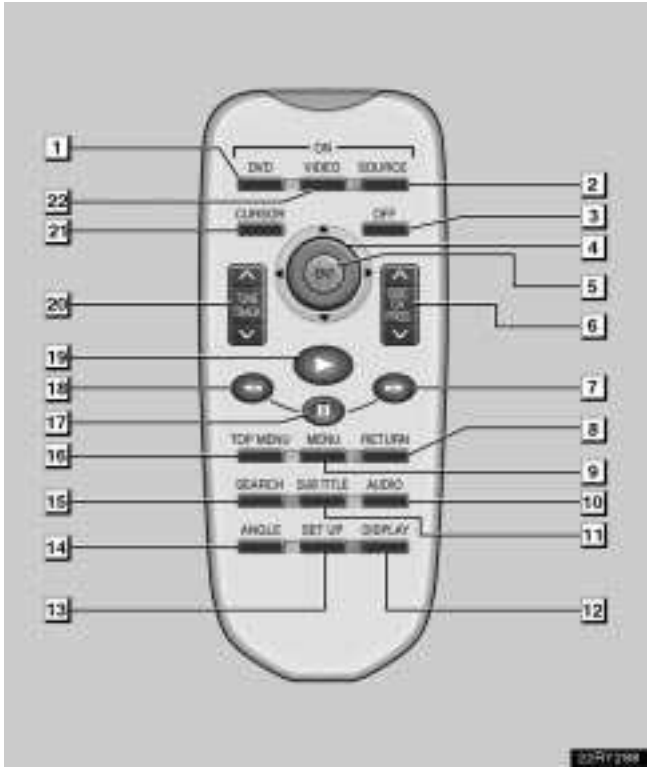
Caution: Any changes or modifications in construction of this device which are not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

FCC Label Information

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, Including interference that may cause undesired operation.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Quick reference for your remote controller



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

1. **“DVD” button:** Turn on the DVD mode.
2. **“SOURCE” button:** Turn on the rear seat entertainment system and selects the mode.
3. **“OFF” button:** Turn off the rear seat entertainment system.
4. **Joy stick:** Select a control switch, mode switch on the screen or the menu for the disc.
5. **“ENT” button:** Input the selected switch or the selected menu for the disc.
6. **“DISC/CH/PROG” button:** Skip directly to a desired preset station, disc, track or chapter.
7. **“▶▶” button:** Fast forwards a screen when the DVD player is operated.
8. **“RETURN” button:** Skip to the predetermined scene for the disc.
9. **“MENU” button:** Indicate the menu screen for DVD video when the DVD player is operated.
10. **“AUDIO” button:** Indicate the changing audio screen when the DVD player is operated.
11. **“SUB TITLE” button:** Indicate the changing subtitle screen when the DVD player is operated.
12. **“DISPLAY” button:** Adjust the color, tone, contrast and brightness of the screen.
13. **“SET UP” button:** Indicate the initial set up screen when the DVD player is operated.
14. **“ANGLE” button:** Select the angle of the screen when the DVD player is operated.
15. **“SEARCH” button:** Indicate the title search screen when the DVD player is operated.
16. **“TOP MENU” button:** Indicate the title selection screen for DVD video when the DVD player is operated.
17. **“❚❚” button:** Pause a screen when the DVD player is operated.
18. **“◀◀” button:** Reverse a screen when the DVD player is operated.
19. **“▶” button:** Play a screen when the DVD player is operated.
20. **“TUNE/TRACK” button:** Operate the front audio system or select the track/chapter when the DVD player is operated.
21. **“CURSOR” button:** Indicates the control switches on the screen when the DVD player is operated.
22. **“VIDEO” button:** Turn on the video mode when your personal audio device is connected.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Buttons on the DVD player unit

The rear seat entertainment system can be operate with the switches on the DVD player.

1 **"⏏" (eject) switch:** Use this switch to eject the disc from the DVD player.

2 **"SOURCE" switch:** Push this switch to turn on the rear seat entertainment system.

To change the audio mode, turn on the system and push the source switch until the mode you desire is displayed. If a tape or disc is not inserted, the "TAPE", "CD" and "DVD" modes are skipped.

3 **"TUNE/TRACK" switch:** Use this switch to tune or seek (radio mode), fast forward or rewind ("TAPE" mode), select a desired track ("CD" mode) or select a desired chapter/track ("DVD" mode).

Radio mode: Use this switch to tune or seek.

- To tune, repeatedly push this switch briefly until your desired station is found.
- To seek, push and hold this switch until you hear a beep. The radio will begin seeking up or down the band for a station, and will stop on reception.

TAPE mode: Use this switch to fast forward or rewind a tape, or for automatic program selection.

- To skip forward or rewind using automatic program selection, push this switch briefly. By using automatic program selection, you can skip up to 9 programs at a time. For details, see page 310 or 332.
- To fast forward or rewind the tape, push and hold this switch until you hear a beep. To stop fast forwarding or rewinding, push and hold the same side of the switch until you hear a beep.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CD or DVD mode: Use this switch to fast forward/rewind a disc or select a desired track (“CD” mode)/chapter·track (“DVD” mode).

- To select a desired track (“CD” mode) or chapter/track (“DVD” mode), push this switch briefly.
- To fast forward or rewind a disc, push and hold this switch until you hear a beep. To stop fast forwarding or rewinding, push and hold the same side of the switch until you hear a beep.

4 **“DISC/CH/PROG” switch:** Use this switch to select a preset station (radio mode), reverse side of a tape (“TAPE” mode) or a desired disc (“CD” mode).

Radio mode: Push this switch to select a preset station. The station you assigned to that particular switch on the audio system will be selected.

“TAPE” mode: Push this switch to select the reverse side of a cassette tape.

“CD” mode: Push this switch to select a desired disc (for a compact disc changer only). Push until the desired disc number appears.

5 **“CURSOR” switch:** Push this switch to display the DVD control switches.

6 **Joy stick and “ENT” switch:** Use this joy stick to select a control switch, mode switch on the screen or the menu for a disc. Push the “ENT” switch to input the selected switch or menu.

7 **“DISC” indicator light:** This light indicates that the disc is loaded.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using your audio system: some basics

The following instructions are for the rear passengers. Please let the rear passengers read and follow the instructions when the rear passengers use the rear seat entertainment system.

This section describes some of the basic features of the rear seat entertainment system. Some information may not pertain to your system.

Your audio system adjusts to the optimum volume and tone quality automatically. While the system is adjusting the audio sound, the audio sound fades out and then fades in.

The rear seat entertainment system is designed for the rear passengers to enjoy audio and DVD video separately from the front audio system.

The rear seat entertainment system can be operated when the ignition key is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

The rear passengers can enjoy all modes (AM and FM radio, cassette tape player, compact disc player with changer and DVD player) on the rear seat entertainment system only if a cassette tape and a compact disc are loaded in the front audio system.

The rear seat entertainment system can play DVD video, audio CD, video CD, CD text, dts-CD or DVD audio only when a disc is loaded in the DVD player.

You can enjoy videos and sound when your personal audio system is connected to the input terminal adapter. For details, refer to the manufacturer’s instructions.

You can enjoy the rear seat entertainment system with commercial headphone. See “Headphone input jacks” on page 416 in this Section for details.

You can also enjoy the rear seat entertainment system with a wireless headphone. The wireless headphone can be used within rear seat. If the signal becomes weak, the headphone will mute. For details, refer to the manufacturer’s instructions.

With some wireless headphone generally available in the market, it may be difficult to catch sound properly. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus genuine wireless headphone.

You can purchase a wireless headphone at a Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

- **Do not drive with using the headphone. Otherwise, you may be hard to hear the sound from the outside while using the headphone and may cause an accident.**
- **With DVD player:**

  Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. Be sure to adjust the volume with this in mind.

  Make sure the volume is not increased, before you turn on the headphone.

NOTICE

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the car audio on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turning the system on and off

▶ 1 ***Controller buttons*** 2 ***DVD player unit***

To turn on the system, push the “SOURCE” button.

The screen indicates which mode can be selected. Push the “DVD” or “VIDEO” button when the connected DVD player or your personal audio machine is on. The rear seat entertainment system will be turned on.

The rear seat entertainment system can select all the modes.

When a cassette tape, a compact disc, a DVD video disc, an audio CD, a video CD, a CD text, a dts-CD or a DVD audio disc is not loaded on the front audio system or the DVD player, only the radio mode can be selected on the rear seat entertainment system.

To turn off the system, push the “OFF” button.

When the front audio system is turned off, the rear audio system and the DVD player will be turned off simultaneously.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Front audio system operation

All the modes of the front audio system can be operated on the rear seat entertainment system.

When the same mode is selected on the front and rear audio systems simultaneously, the system can be operated on the front audio system.

If the radio mode is selected on the front and rear audio systems at the same time, AM and FM modes cannot be changed on the rear seat audio system.

Selecting the mode

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ 1 *Screen switch* 2 *Controller button*
3 *DVD player unit*

Use the joy stick to select the mode. Push the “ENT” button to enter the mode.

The mode display which is selected by the joy stick is colored blue. When the “ENT” button is pushed, the mode display changes to green. If the mode display is gray, it cannot be selected.

The “Speaker sound” on the mode display is selected on the front audio system.

When you select a mode, the screen indicates which is selected.

Radio operation

(a) Listening to the radio

▶ *AM mode*

▶ *FM mode*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using joy stick and the “ENT” button to select either AM or FM mode.

“AM”, “FM1” or “FM2” appears on the screen.

If the front audio system receives a traffic announcement (TA) while the rear seat audio system is in the radio mode, “TRAF” will flash on the screen and the rear seat audio system will turn off. When the front audio receives a traffic announcement (TA), the rear seat audio system cannot select the AM/FM mode.

(b) Selecting a station

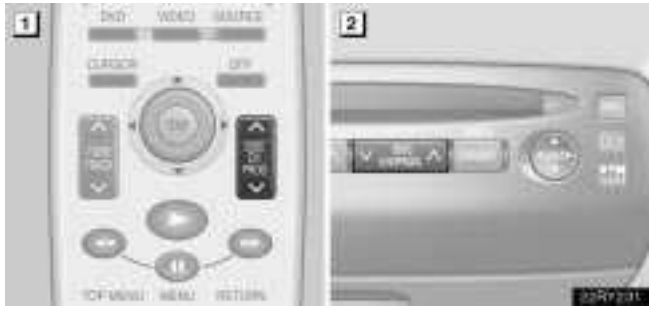
Tune in the desired station using one of the following methods.

▶ 1 ***Controller button*** 2 ***DVD player unit***

Seek tuning: Push and hold the “∨” or “∧” (TUNE/TRACK) button. The radio will seek up or down for a station of the nearest frequency and will stop on reception. Each time you push the button, the stations will be searched one after another.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Manual tuning: Quickly push and release the "∨" or "∧" (TUNE/TRACK) button. Each time you push the button, the radio will step up or down to another frequency. If you push and hold the button, and the radio will go into the seek mode.



▶ 1 ***Controller button*** 2 ***DVD player unit***

To scan the preset stations: You can scan only the preset stations for the band of the front audio system. Push the "∨" or "∧" (DISC/CH/PROG) button. The radio will tune in the next preset station up or down the band. The station frequency will appear on the screen.

Cassette tape player operation

(a) Playing a cassette tape

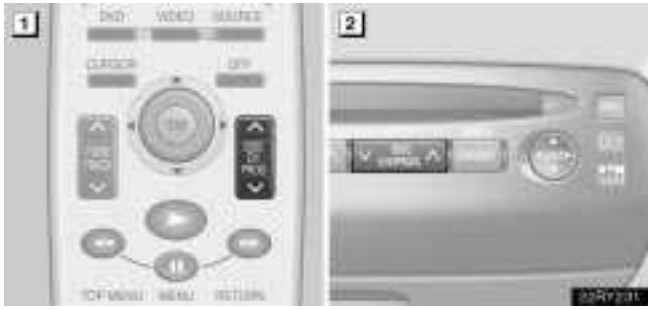
Using joy stick and the "ENT" button to select the cassette tape mode.

"TAPE" appears on the display.

Auto-reverse feature: After the cassette player reaches the end of a tape, it automatically reverses and begins to play the other side, regardless of whether the cassette was playing or fast forwarding.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(b) Manual program selection



▶ 1 *Controller button* 2 *DVD player unit*

"Program" button: Push the "∨" or "∧" (DISC/CH/PROG) button to select the other side of a cassette tape. The screen indicates which side is currently selected. ("∧" indicates the top side, "∨" indicates the bottom side.)

▶ 1 *Controller button* 2 *DVD player unit*

"Rewind" button: Push the "∨" (TUNE/TRACK) button to rewind a tape. "REW" appears on the display.

To stop rewinding, push the same button.

"Fast forward" button: Push the "∧" (TUNE/TRACK) button to fast forward a cassette tape. "FF" appears on the display.

To stop fast forwarding, push the same button.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(c) Automatic program selection

▶ 1 ***Controller button*** 2 ***DVD player unit***

"Automatic program selection" button: The automatic program selection feature allows you to program your cassette player to skip forward or backward to locate the song you want to hear. You can skip up to 9 programs at a time.

Push the "∧" (TUNE/TRACK) button to skip forward. "FF" and the number will appear on the display. Push the button until the number you want to skip appears on the display. After that, the player will automatically skip forward.

When the end of the tape is reached, the player automatically reverses sides and resumes normal play.

Push the "∨" (TUNE/TRACK) button to skip backward. Push the button until "REW" and the number you want to skip appear on the display.

- If you set "REW 1", the player will rewind to the beginning of the current program.
- When counting the number of programs you want to rewind, remember to count the current program as well. For example, if you want to rewind to a song that is two before the song you are listening to, push this button until "REW 3" appears on the display.

When the beginning of the tape is reached, the player automatically resumes normal play.

There must be at least 3 seconds of blank space between programs for this feature to work correctly.

This feature may not work well with some spoken word, live or classical recordings.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Compact disc player operation

(a) Playing a compact disc

Using joy stick and the "ENT" button to select the compact disc mode.

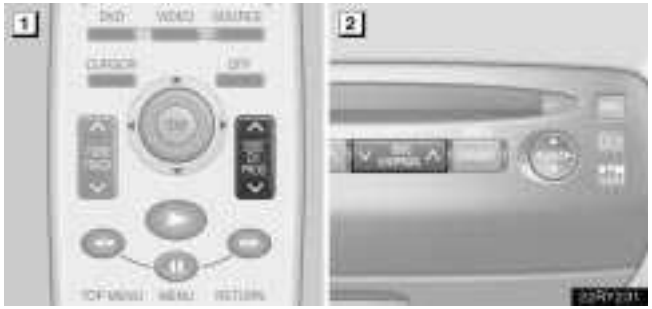
"CD" appears on the display.

The discs set in the player are played continuously, starting with the last disc you inserted. The disc number of the disc currently being played, the track number and the time from the beginning of the program appear on the display.

When play of one disc ends, the first track of the following disc starts. When play of the final disc ends, play of the first disc starts again.

The player will skip any empty disc trays.

(b) Selecting a desired disc



▶ 1 ***Controller button*** 2 ***DVD player unit***

Searching for a desired disc: Push the "∨" and "∧" (DISC/CH/PROG) button to select the disc number.

Push the button several times until the desired disc number appears on the display. When you release the button, the player will start playing the selected disc from the first track.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(c) Selecting a desired track

▶ 1 *Controller button* 2 *DVD player unit*

To select a desired track: Push the "∨" or "∧" (TUNE/TRACK) button until the number of the track you want to listen to appears on the screen. If you want to return to the beginning of the current track, quickly push the "∨" (TUNE/TRACK) button or switch one time.

"Fast forward" button: Push the "∧" (TUNE/TRACK) button and hold it to fast forward the disc. When you release the button, the compact disc player will resume playing from that position.

"Reverse" button: Push the "∨" (TUNE/TRACK) button and hold it to reverse the disc. When you release the button, the compact disc player will resume playing.

Replacing controller battery

For replacement, use 3 AAA batteries.

⚠ CAUTION

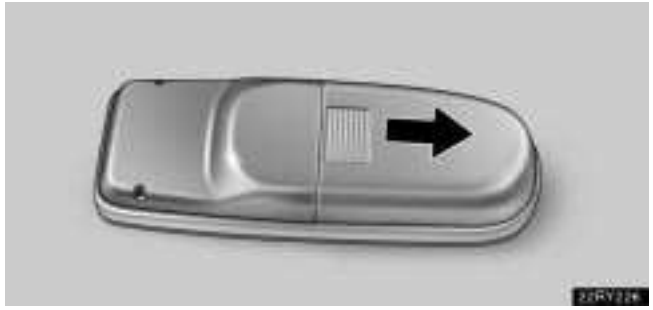
Special care should be taken that small children do not swallow the removed battery or components.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

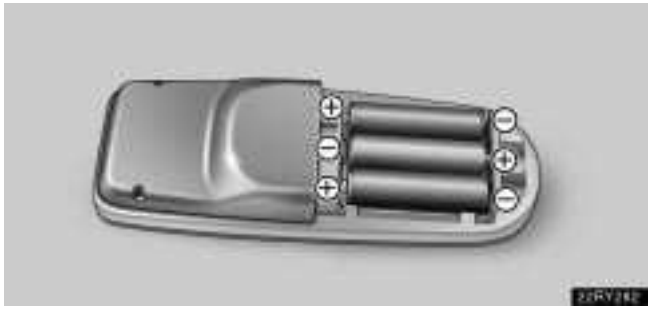
- *When replacing the battery, be careful not to lose the components.*
- *Replace only with the same or equivalent type of battery recommended by a Lexus dealer.*
- *Dispose of used batteries according to local regulations.*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



Replace the battery according to the following procedure:

1. Remove the cover of the controller as shown.



2. Remove the discharged batteries and put in new batteries as shown. Install the cover.

NOTICE

- ***Be sure that the positive side of the controller battery is facing correctly.***
- ***Do not replace the battery with wet hands. Water may cause rust.***
- ***Do not touch or move any components inside of the controller, or it may interfere with proper operation.***
- ***Be careful not to bend the electrode of the controller battery insertion and that dust or oil does not adhere to the transmitter case.***
- ***Close the battery case securely.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

After replacing the battery, check that the controller operates properly. If the controller still does not operate properly, contact your Lexus dealer.

DVD player operation

The DVD player can play audio CDs, DVD video discs, CD texts, dts-CDs, DVD audio discs and video CDs.

For appropriate discs for this player, see “Car audio/video system operating hints” on page 418.

The DVD player works when the ignition key is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

To turn on the DVD player, a disc must be loaded in the player.

To turn off the player, eject the disc.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(a) Inserting the disc

Insert the disc into the slot with the label side up.

If the label faces down, the disc cannot be played. In this case, “DISC CHECK” appears on the screen.

If a disc which is not playable is inserted, “DISC CHECK” will also appear on the screen. For appropriate discs for this player, see “Car audio/video system operating hints” on page 418.

NOTICE
Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the DVD player. Do not insert anything other than a disc into the slot.

The “DISC” indicator light turns on while the disc is loaded.

The player will play the track or chapter, and it will play from the beginning of the track or chapter again after it reaches the end.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

8 cm (3 in.) compact disc singles

Your compact disc player does not need an adaptor to play compact disc singles. Compact disc singles are about 8 cm (3 in.) in diameter-smaller than standard discs.

NOTICE

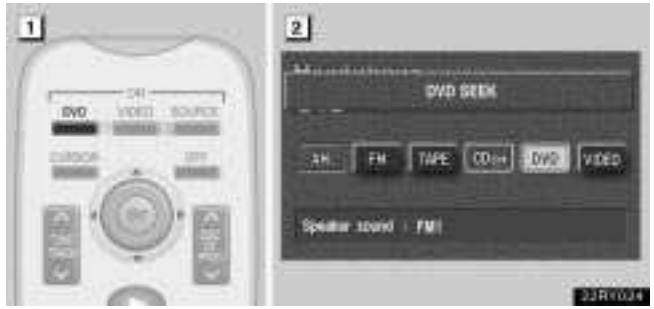
Do not use an adaptor for compact disc singles — it could cause tracking errors or interfere with the ejection of compact discs.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(b) Ejecting the disc

Push the “⏏” (eject) button.

(c) Selecting the DVD mode



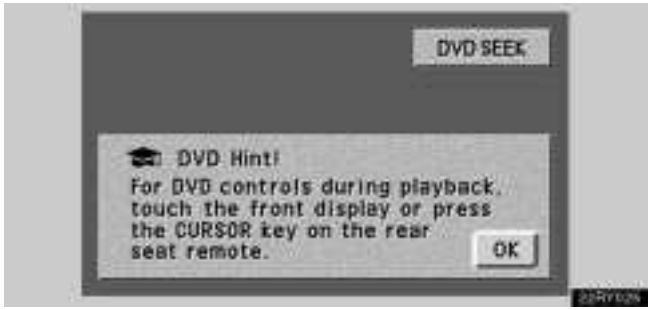
▶ 1 ***Controller button*** 2 ***Mode selection screen***

To select the DVD mode, push the “DVD” button on the controller.

You can also select the DVD mode on the mode selection screen mentioned above.

“DVD” appears on the screen.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



The “DVD Hint!” screen appears when the DVD mode is first selected after you turn the ignition key to the “ACC” or “ON” position.

Push the “OK” switch when you read the message.

(d) DVD player operation switches

The DVD player can be operated with the controller buttons directly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ 1 *Controller button* 2 *DVD player unit*

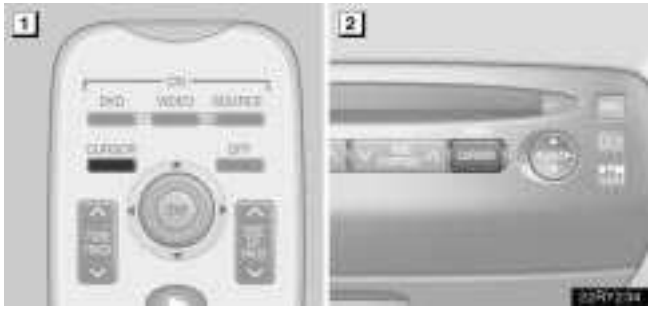
The player can also be operated with the switches on the screen.

To operate the switches on the screen, select the switch by the joy stick and push the “ENT” button. You cannot select the switches on the screen by touching them directly.

When the switch is selected by the joy stick, the outline of the switch changes to blue. Push the “ENT” button, and the switch will be highlighted in green.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

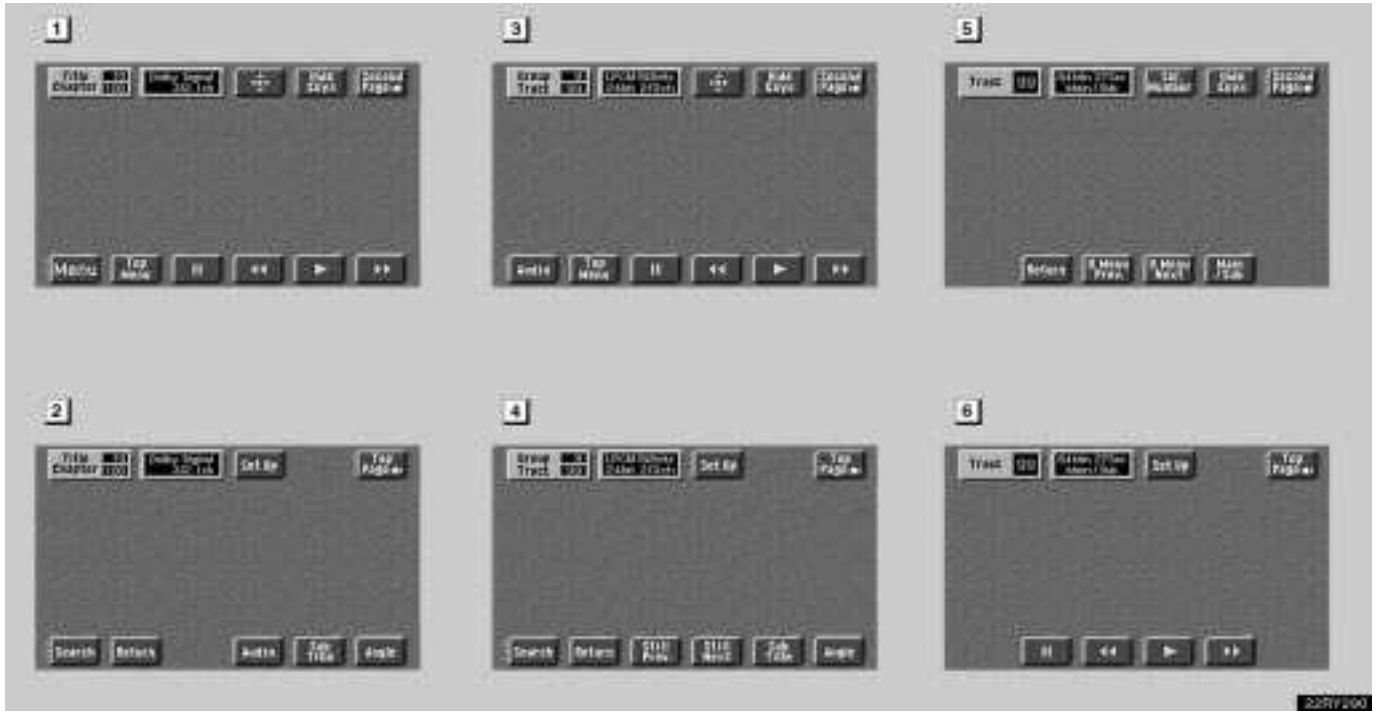
(e) Turning the operation switches on and off



▶ 1 *Controller button* 2 *DVD player unit*

To turn on the operation switches, push the “CURSOR” button on the controller.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

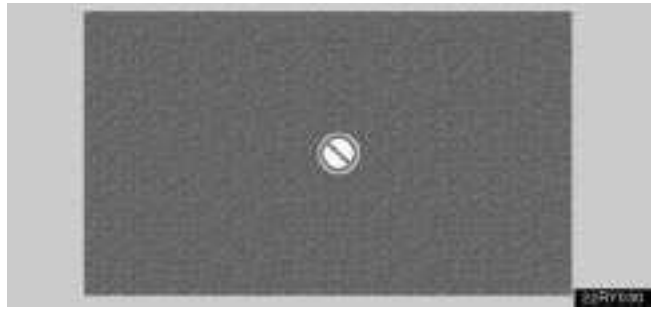


▶ 1 *Top page (DVD video operation switch)*
3 *Top page (DVD audio operation switch)*
5 *Top page (video CD)*
2 *Second page (DVD video operation switch)*
4 *Second page (DVD audio operation switch)*
6 *Second page (video CD)*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

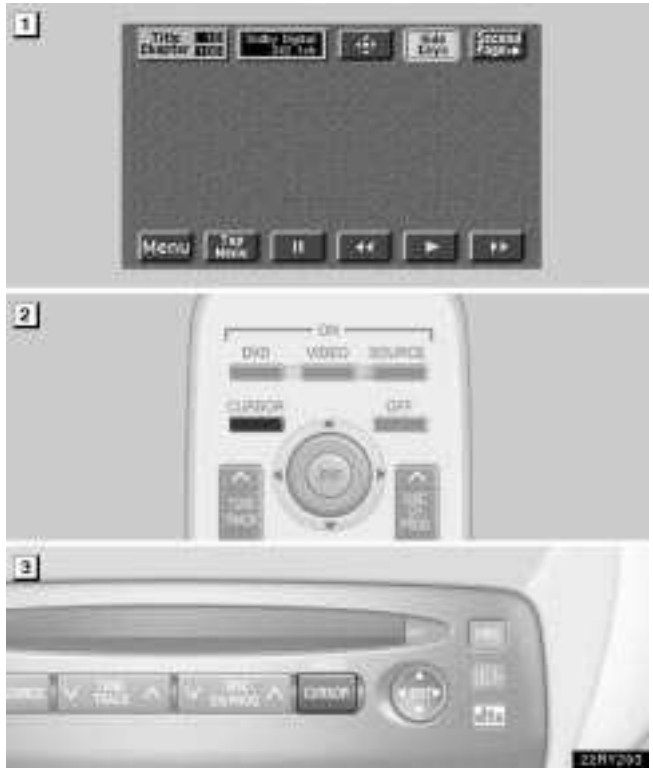
There are operation switches on the “Top Page” and “Second Page” screens.

To change the screen, push the “Top Page” or “Second Page” switch on the screen.



If “⃠” appears on the screen when you select a switch, it indicates that the switch cannot work.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ 1 *Screen switch* 2 *Controller button*
3 *DVD player unit*

To turn off the switches on the screen, push the "CURSOR" button once again or push the "Hide Keys" on the screen.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DVD video/DVD audio player operation

NOTE: The playback condition of some DVD discs may be determined by a DVD software producer. This DVD player plays a disc as the software producer intended. So, some functions may not work properly. Be sure to read the instruction manual for the DVD disc separately provided. For the detailed information about DVD video discs, see “DVD video disc information” on page 411.

Precautions for DVD video discs

When recording on a DVD video, DVD audio, video CD or audio tracks may not record in some cases while the menu is displayed. As audio will not play in this case, verify that the video tracks are playing and then activate playback.

When playback of a disc is completed:

- If an audio CD is playing, the first track starts.
- If a DVD video, DVD audio or video CD is playing, playback will stop or the menu screen will be displayed.

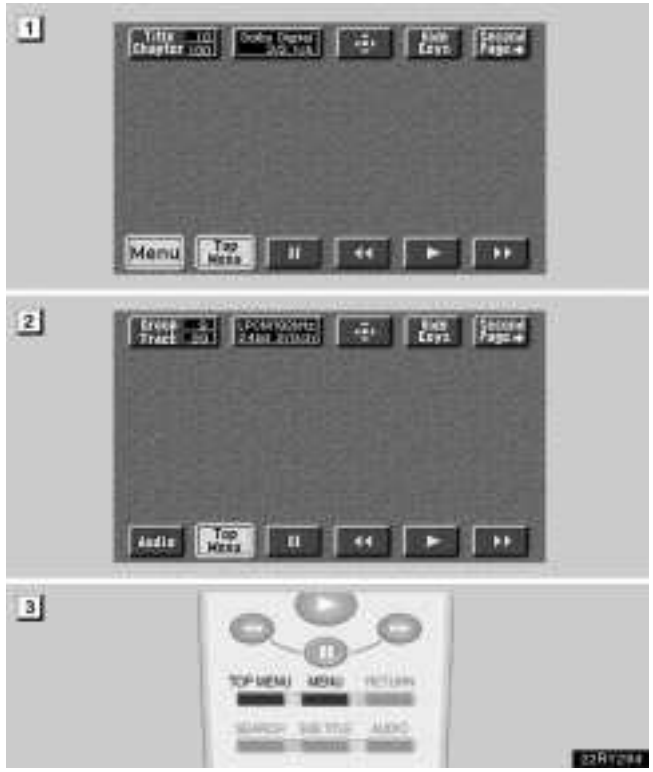
The title/chapter number and playback time display may not appear while playing back certain DVD video discs.

⚠ CAUTION

Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level available for the DVD, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(a) Turning the menu screen for the disc on or off



▶ 1 *For DVD video* 2 *For DVD audio*
3 *Controller button*

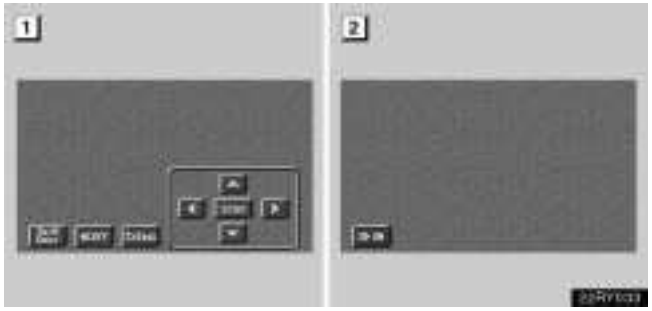
DVD video: To turn on the menu screen for the disc, push the “Top Menu” or “Menu” switch on the screen, or the “MENU” or “TOP MENU” button on the controller.

DVD audio: To turn on the menu screen for the disc, push the “Top Menu” switch on the screen or the “TOP MENU” button on the controller.

For the operation of the menu screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

To turn on the selecting switch, push the “ ” switch.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ 1 *Selecting switch on screen*
2 *Selecting switch off screen*

To select the menu for the disc, push the "◀", "▲", "▶" or "▼" switches on the screen. Push the "Enter" switch to select the menu for the disc.

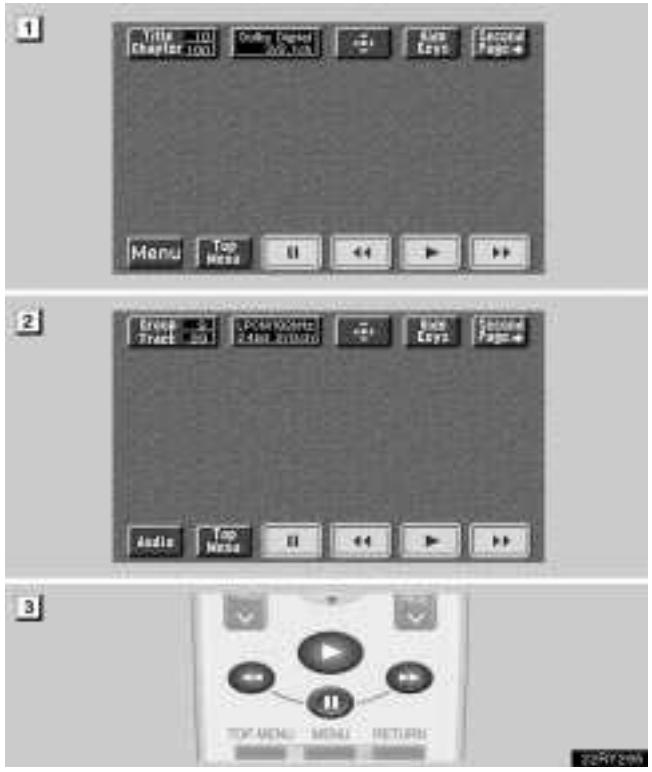
You can also select the menu for the disc by the joy stick and the "ENT" button on the controller when the control switches are not indicated on the screen.

Push the "Shift Keys" on the screen, and the switches ("◀", "▲", "▶", "▼", "Enter" and "Shift Keys" switches) will move up and down.

To turn off the switch, push the "OFF" switch on the screen. To turn on the switch again, push the "ON" switch on the screen.

To return to the previous screen, push the "Back" switch on the screen.

(b) Operating the "❚❚", "▶", "◀◀" and "▶▶" switches/buttons



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ 1 *For DVD video* 2 *For DVD audio*
3 *Controller button*

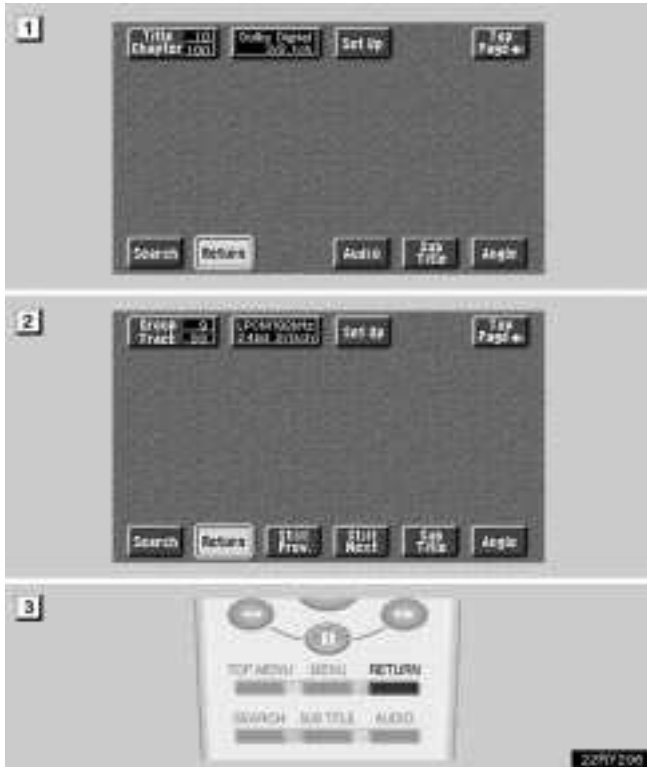
"❚❚" switch/button: Push this switch/button to pause the disc.

"▶" switch/button: Push this switch/button to cancel the pause and return to normal playing.

"◀◀" and "▶▶" switches/buttons: Push and hold the "◀◀" or "▶▶" switch/button to fast forward or reverse. If you want to return to the beginning of the current track, release the switch/button.

DVD video only: Push the "◀◀" or "▶▶" switch/button while pausing, the DVD video plays the slow-motion video replay or the slow-motion video replay in reverse.

(c) Skipping to the predetermined screen



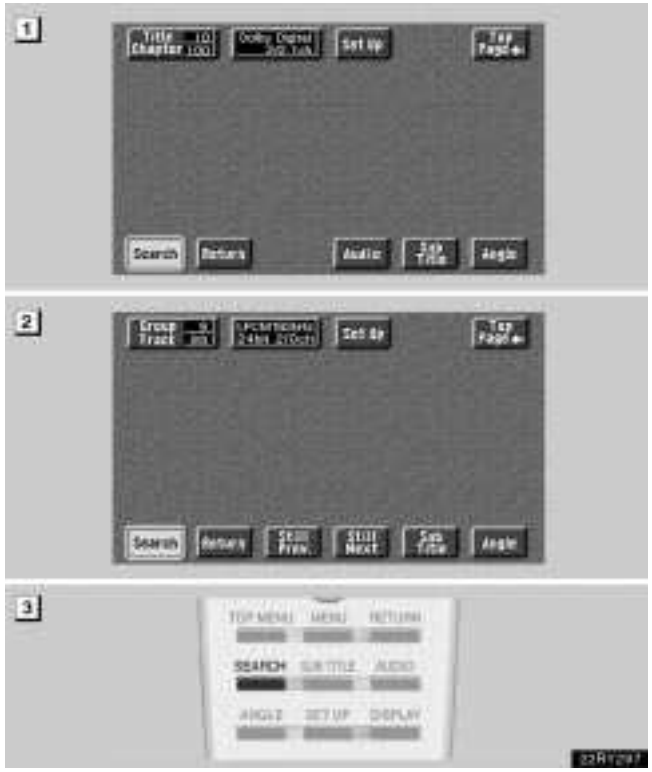
▶ 1 *For DVD video* 2 *For DVD audio*
3 *Controller button*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To skip to the predetermined screen, push the “Return” switch on the screen or the “RETURN” button on the controller. The DVD player starts playing from the beginning of the predetermined screen.

For further details of the predetermined screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

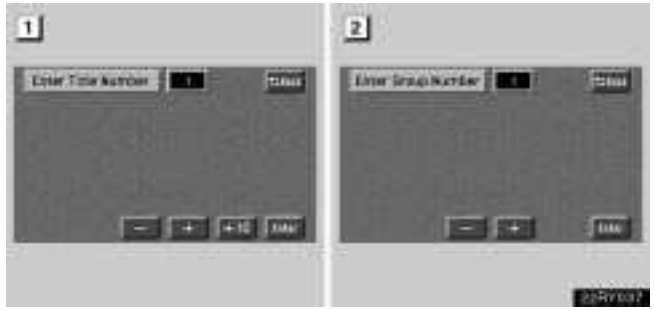
(d) Selecting the title/group



▶ 1 *For DVD video* 2 *For DVD audio*
3 *Controller button*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To display the searching title (DVD video) or group (DVD audio) screen, push the “Search” switch on the screen or the “SEARCH” button on the controller.



▶ 1 *For DVD video* 2 *For DVD audio*

DVD video: Select the title number by using the “-”, “+” and “+10” switches and push the “Enter” switch to enter the number. The player starts playing disc for that title number. The selected title number will appear on the screen.

Push the “Back” switch to return to the menu screen.

DVD audio: Enter the group number by using the “-” and “+” switches. The selected group number will appear on the screen. Push the “Enter” switch. The player starts playing the disc from the entered group number.

Push the “Back” switch to return to the previous screen.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(e) Selecting the bonus group (DVD audio only)

Enter the bonus group number on the searching group screen and push the “Enter” switch on the screen. The “Enter Key Code” screen will appear. To enter the number of the group you want to play, push the group number.

If you enter the wrong number, push the “Clear” switch on the screen to delete the number.

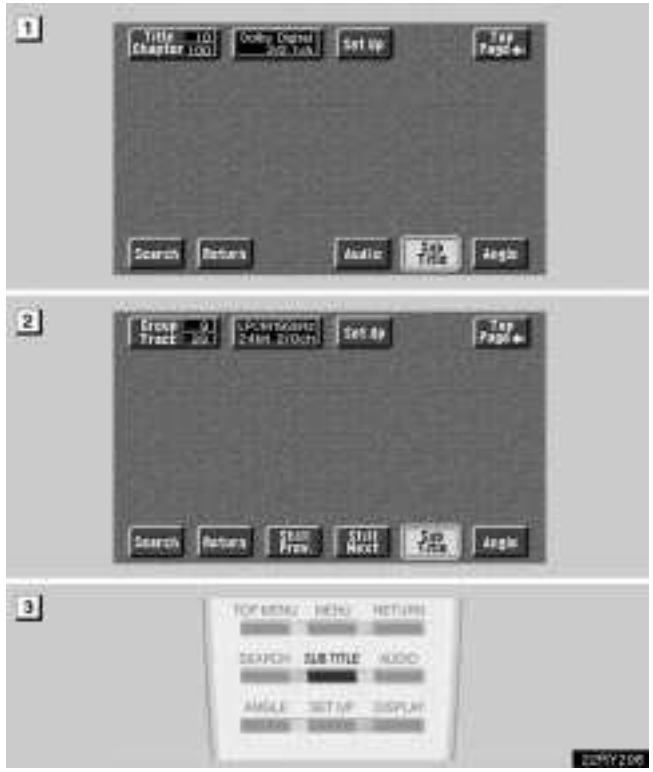
Push the “Enter” switch on the screen. The player starts playing the disc from the selected bonus group number.

(f) Changing the still picture (DVD audio only)

Push the “Still Prev.” or “Still Next” switch on the screen to forward or reverse the still pictures.

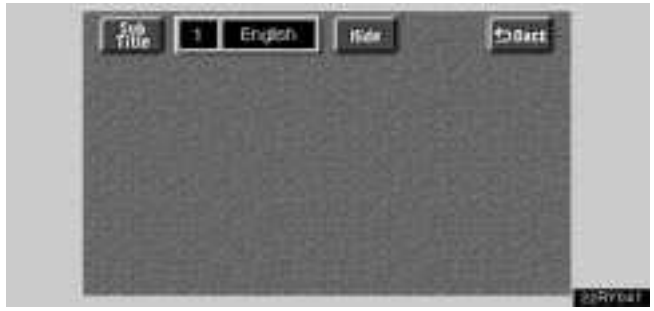
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(g) Changing the subtitle language



▶ 1 *For DVD video* 2 *For DVD audio*
3 *Controller button*

Push the “Sub Title” switch on the screen or the “SUB TITLE” button on the controller, and the changing subtitle language screen will appear.



Each time you push the “Sub Title” switch, another language stored on the disc is selected.

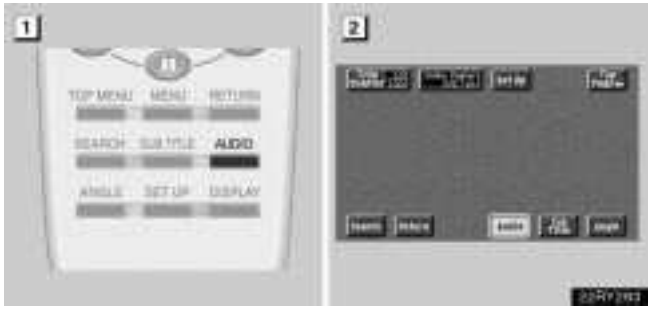
To turn off the subtitles, push the “Hide” switch.

Push the “Back” switch to return to the previous screen.

The selected subtitle language will appear on the screen.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(h) Changing audio language



▶ 1 *Controller button* 2 *Screen switch*

DVD video only —

Push the “Audio” switch on the screen or the “AUDIO” button on the controller, and the changing audio language screen will appear.

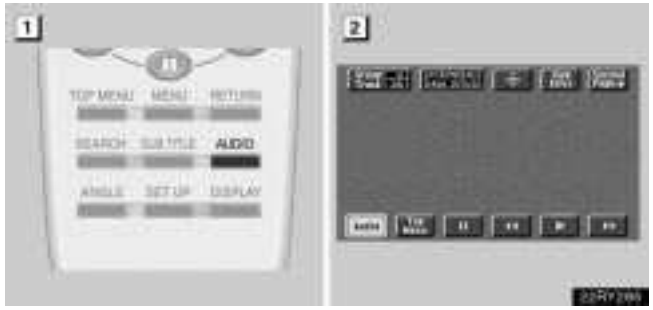
Each time you push the “Audio” switch, another language stored on the disc is selected.

The selected audio language will appear on the screen.

Push the “Back” switch to return to the previous screen.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(i) Changing audio format



▶ 1 *Controller button* 2 *Screen switch*

DVD audio only —

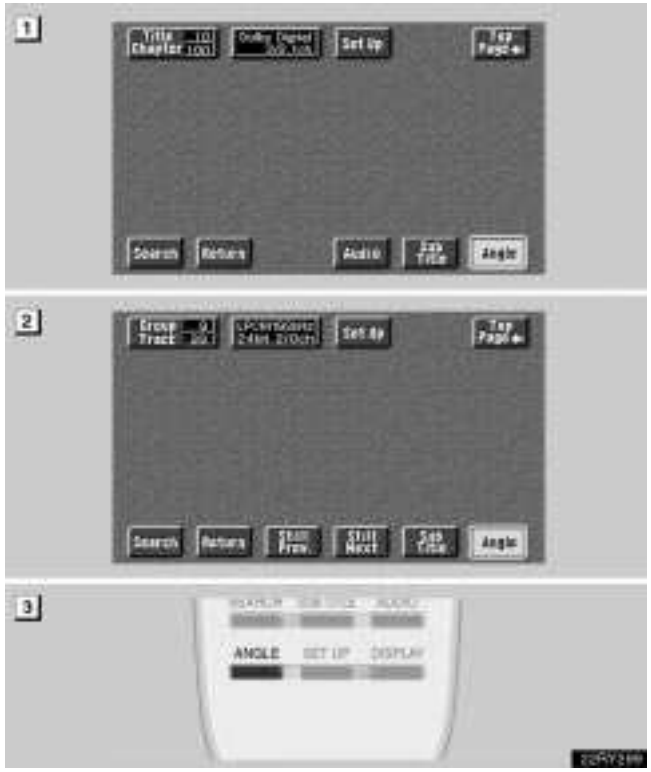
Push the “Audio” switch on the screen or the “AUDIO” button on the controller and the changing audio format screen will appear.

Each time you touch “Audio” switch, another audio format stored on the disc is selected.

Push the “Back” switch to return to the previous screen.

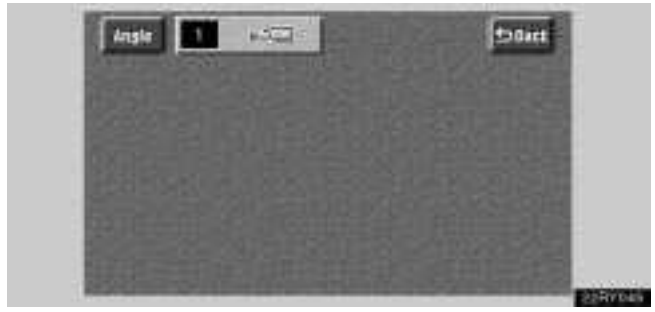
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(j) Changing angle screen



▶ 1 *For DVD video* 2 *For DVD audio*
3 *Controller button*

Push the “Angle” switch on the screen or the “ANGLE” button on the controller, and the changing angle screen will appear.



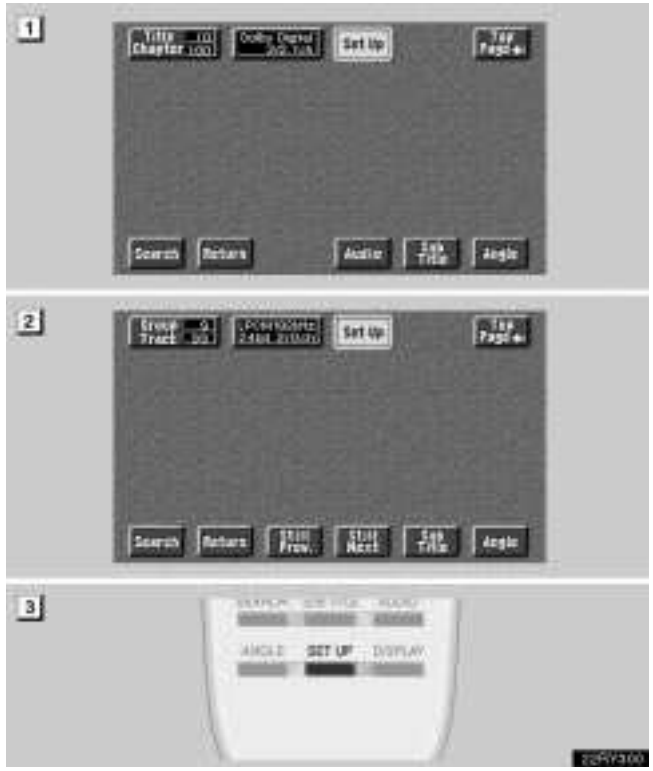
The angle can be selected for discs that are multi-angle compatible when the “ ” mark appears on the screen. Each time you push the “Angle” switch, the angle changes. The angle number which you can select will appear on the screen.

To turn off the screen, push the “Hide” switch.

Push the “Back” switch to return to the previous screen.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

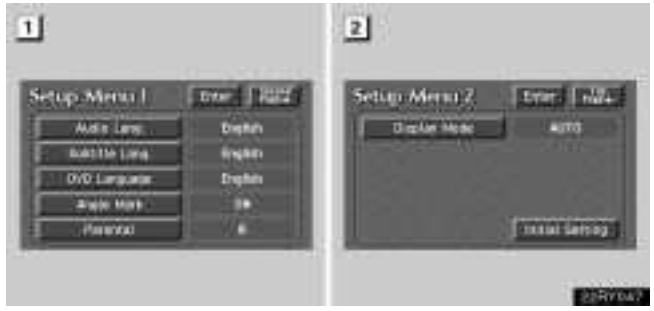
(k) Changing the initial setting



▶ 1 *For DVD video* 2 *For DVD audio*
3 *Controller button*

Push the “Set Up” switch on the screen or the “SET UP” button on the controller, and the initial setting screen will appear. You can change the initial setting.

After the setting is done, the player plays from the beginning of the chapter or the track.



There are initial setting switches on the “Setup Menu 1” screen 1 and “Setup Menu 2” screen 2.

To change the screen, push the “Top Page” or “Second Page” switch on the screen.

After you change the initial setting, push the “Enter” switch. The initial setting switch will be turned off and return to the picture previously.

When the “Initial Setting” switch on “Setup Menu 2” is pushed, all menus are initialized.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(I) Changing the audio language

Push the “Audio Lang.” switch on the “Setup Menu 1” screen [1] and the “Select Audio Language” screen [2] appear.

Select the language you want to hear on the screen.

To return to the “Setup Menu 1” screen, push the “Back” switch.

If you cannot find a language you want to hear, push the “Others” switch. The “Enter Audio Lang. Code” screen will appear.

To enter the code of the language you want to hear, push the number of the language code. For details about the language codes, see the language code list. If you enter a wrong number, push the “Clear” switch to delete the number.

If numbers which are not on the list are entered and the “Enter” switch is pushed, the “Incorrect Code” screen will appear. Push the language code you want to hear again.

To return to the “Select Audio Language” screen, push the “Back” switch.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(m) Changing the subtitle language

Push the “Subtitle Lang.” switch on the “Setup Menu 1” screen [1] and the “Select Subtitle Lang.” screen [2] appear.

Select the language you want to read on the screen.

To return to the “Setup Menu 1” screen, push the “Back” switch.

If you cannot find a language you want to read, push the “Others” switch. The “Enter Subtitle Lang. Code” screen will appear.

To enter the code of the language you want to read, push the number of the language code. For details about the language codes, see the language code list. If you enter a wrong number, push the “Clear” switch to delete the number.

Push the “Enter” switch on the screen. If numbers which are not on the list are entered and the “Enter” switch is pushed, the “Incorrect code” screen will appear. Push the language code you want to read again.

To return to the “Select Subtitle Lang.” screen, push the “Back” switch on the screen.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(n) Changing the DVD language

Push the “DVD Language” switch on the “Setup Menu 1” screen [1] and “Select DVD Language” screen [2] appear.

Select the language you want to read on the screen.

If you cannot find a language you want to read, push the “Others” switch. The “Enter DVD Language Code” screen will appear.

To return to the “Setup Menu 1” screen, push the “Back” switch.

If you cannot find a language you want to read, push the “Others” switch. The “Enter DVD Language Code” screen will appear.

To enter the code of the language you want to read, push the number of the language code. For details about the language codes, see the language code list. If you enter a wrong number, push the “Clear” switch to delete the number.

Push the “Enter” switch on the screen. If numbers which are not on the list are entered and the “Enter” switch is pushed, the “Incorrect code” screen will appear. Push the language code you want to read again.

To return to the “Select DVD Language” screen, push the “Back” switch on the screen.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(o) Turning the angle mark on or off

The angle mark can be turned on for discs that are multi-angle compatible.

Each time you push the “Angle Mark” switch on the screen, the angle mark turns on or off alternately.

(p) Setting level of viewer restrictions

You can restrict the play back screen by setting the viewer restrictions. You can prevent the restriction with a password. Some discs do not supply a restriction.

To set the level of viewer restriction, push the “Parental” switch on the “Setup Menu 1” screen. The “Enter Personal Code” screen will appear.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Push the number for the password and the “Enter” switch. The “Select Restriction Level” screen will appear.

If you enter a wrong number, push the “Clear” switch to delete the number.

You cannot change the setting without inputting the password. When you forget or change the password, push the “Clear” switch ten times to initialize the password.

To return to the “Setup Menu 1” screen, push the “Back” switch.

Push a parental level (1 — 8). The smaller the level number, the stricter the age limit. Push the “Back” switch to return to the “Setup Menu 1” screen.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(q) Setting the display mode

Each time you push the “Display Mode” switch on the “Setup Menu 2” screen, the display mode is changed from wide mode to auto mode.

(r) Language code list

Code	Language
1001	Japanese
0514	English
0618	French
0405	German
0920	Italian
0519	Spanish
2608	Chinese
1412	Dutch
1620	Portuguese
1922	Swedish

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

1821	Russian
1115	Korean
0512	Greek
0101	Afar
0102	Abkhazian
0106	Afrikaans
0113	Amharic
0118	Arabic
0119	Assamese
0125	Aymara

0126	Azerbaijani
0201	Bashkir
0205	Byelorussian
0207	Bulgarian
0208	Bihari
0209	Bislama
0214	Bengali
0215	Tibetan
0218	Breton
0301	Catalan
0315	Corsican

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

0319	Czech
0325	Welsh
0401	Danish
0426	Bhutani
0515	Esperanto
0520	Estonian
0521	Basque
0601	Persian
0609	Finnish
0610	Fiji
0615	Faroese

0625	Frisian
0701	Irish
0704	Scots-Gaelic
0712	Galician
0714	Guarani
0721	Gujarati
0801	Hausa
0809	Hindi
0818	Croatian
0821	Hungarian

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

0825	Armenian
0901	Interlingua
0905	Interlingue
0911	Inupiak
0914	Indonesian
0919	Icelandic
0923	Hebrew
1009	Yiddish
1023	Javanese
1101	Georgian
1111	Kazakh
1112	Greenlandic

1113	Cambodian
1114	Kannada
1119	Kashmiri
1121	Kurdish
1125	Kirghiz
1201	Latin
1214	Lingala
1215	Laothian
1220	Lithuanian

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

1222	Latvian
1307	Malagasy
1309	Maori
1311	Macedonian
1312	Malayalam
1314	Mongolian
1315	Moldavian
1318	Marathi
1319	Malay
1320	Maltese
1325	Burmese
1401	Nauru
1405	Nepali
1415	Norwegian
1503	Occitan
1513	(Afan) Oromo
1518	Oriya
1601	Punjabi
1612	Polish
1619	Pashto, Pushto
1721	Quechua

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

1813	Rhaeto-Romance
1814	Kirundi
1815	Romanian
1823	Kinyarwanda
1901	Sanskrit
1904	Sindhi
1907	Sangho
1908	Serbo-Croatian
1909	Sinhalese
1911	Slovak
1912	Slovenian
1913	Samoan
1914	Shona
1915	Somali

1917	Albanian
1918	Serbian
1919	Siswati
1920	Sesotho
1921	Sundanese
1923	Swahili
2001	Tamil

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2005	Telugu
2007	Tajik
2008	Thai
2009	Tigrinya
2011	Turkmen
2012	Tagalog
2014	Setswana
2015	Tonga
2018	Turkish
2019	Tsonga
2020	Tatar
2023	Twi
2111	Ukrainian
2118	Urdu
2126	Uzbek

2209	Vietnamese
2215	Volapük
2315	Wolof
2408	Xhosa
2515	Yoruba
2621	Zulu

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(s) Selecting the chapter/track

▶ 1 *Controller button* 2 *DVD player unit*

To select the chapter/track, push the "∨" or "∧" (TUNE/TRACK) button on the controller until the number of the chapter/track you want to select appears on the screen.

(t) Using the control screen

▶ 1 *For DVD video* 2 *For DVD audio*

When playing a disc, push the "DVD" button on the controller. The control screen will appear on the screen.

Details of the specific switches, controls and features are described below.

"PICTURE" switch Push the "PICTURE" switch to turn off the control screen and return to the picture previously displayed.

"RPT" switch (DVD audio only): Push the "RPT" switch while the track is playing. When the track ends, it will automatically replay. To turn off the repeat feature, push this switch again.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

“RAND” switch (DVD audio only): Push the “RAND” switch. The player will play the tracks on the disc in random order. To turn off the random feature, push this switch again.

“SCAN” switch (DVD audio only): Push the “SCAN” switch. The player will scan all the tracks on the disc you are listening to. To stop scanning, push this switch again. If the player scanned all the tracks on the disc, it will stop scanning.

“ ⏫ ” and “ ⏬ ” switches: Push and hold the “ ⏫ ” or “ ⏬ ” switch to fast forward or reverse a disc. When you release the switch, the DVD player will resume playing.

(u) Error messages

If the player malfunctions, your audio system will display one of the three following error messages.

If “DISC CHECK” appears on the screen: It indicates that the disc is dirty, damaged or it was inserted upside down. Clean the disc or insert it correctly.

If “NO DISC” appears on the screen: It indicates that there is no disc in the DVD player.

If “REGION CODE ERROR” appears on the screen: It indicates that the DVD region code is not set properly.

If “DVD ERROR” appears on the screen: There is a problem inside the player. Eject the disc. Set the disc again.

If the malfunction still exists, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Video CD/audio CD/CD text player operation

(a) Selecting the disc menu number (video CD only)

▶ 1 *Controller button* 2 *Screen switch*

Push the “SEARCH” button on the controller or the “Sel. Number” switch on the screen, and the disc menu number search screen will appear.

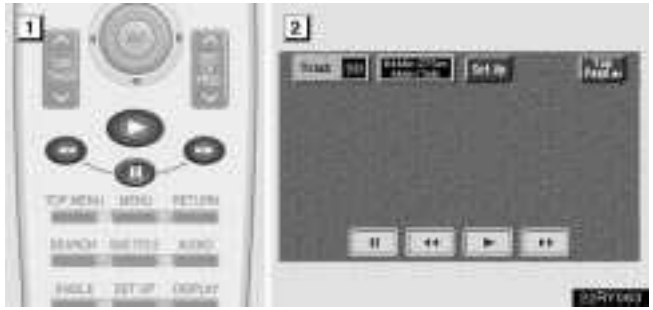
Enter the disc menu number by using the “-”, “+” and “+10” switches and push the “Enter” switch. The player starts playing the disc from the entered disc menu number. The entered disc menu number will appear on the screen.

Push the “Back” switch to return to the menu screen.

Move up and down the switches by pushing the “Shift keys” on the screen.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(b) Operating the "❚❚", "▶", "◀◀" and "▶▶" switches



▶ 1 ***Controller button*** 2 ***Screen switch***

"❚❚" switch: Push this switch to pause the disc.

"▶" switch: Push this switch to cancel the pause and return to normal playing.

"◀◀" and "▶▶" switches: Push this switch to fast forward or reverse. If you want to return to the beginning of the current track, release the switch.

Video CD only: Push the "▶▶" switch/button while pausing, the DVD video plays the slow-motion video replay.

(c) Turning on the disc menu (video CD only)

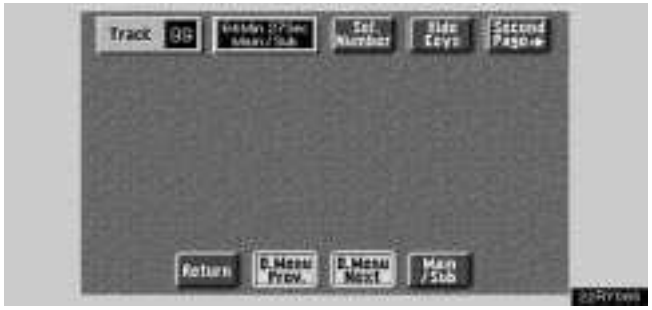
▶ 1 ***Controller button*** 2 ***Screen switch***

Push the "RETURN" button on the controller or the "Return" switch on the screen to turn on the menu screen for the disc.

For the operation of the menu screen, see the manual for the video CD.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

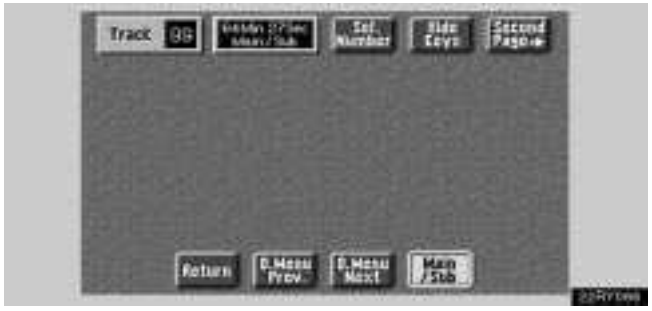
(d) Changing menu page or track (video CD only)



Push the “D. Menu Next” or “D. Menu Prev.” switch while the disc menu is displayed. The next or previous page will appear on the screen.

Push the “D. Menu Next” or “D. Menu Prev.” switch while the player is playing video. The next or previous track will be searched and played.

(e) Changing a multiplex transmission (video CD only)



Push the “Main/Sub” switch to change a multiplex transmission. The mode changes from Main/Sub to Main to Sub and back to Main/Sub by pushing the “Main/Sub” switch.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

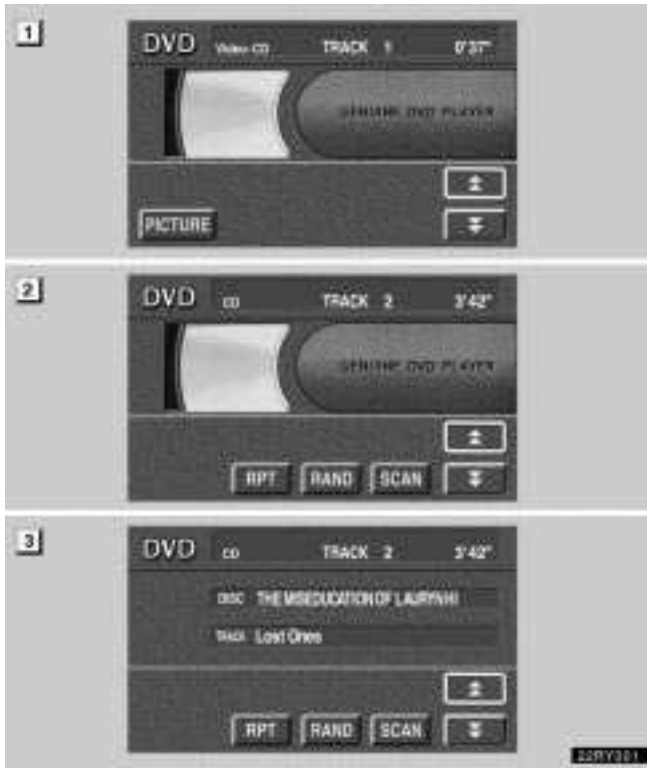
(f) Changing the initial setting (video CD only)

▶ 1 *Controller button* 2 *Screen switch*

Push the “SET UP” button on the controller or the “Set Up” switch on the screen, and the initial setting screen will appear. You can change the initial setting. (See “(k) Changing the initial setting” on page 389 for details.)

After the setting is done, the player plays from the beginning of the chapter or the track.

(g) Using the control screen



▶ 1 *For video CD* 2 *For audio CD* 3 *For CD text*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When playing a disc, push the “DVD” button on the controller. The control screen will appear on the screen.

CD text only — The disc title and track title will appear on the screen when pushing the “DVD” button.

Details of the specific switches, controls and features are described below.

“PICTURE” switch (video CD only): Push the “PICTURE” switch to turn off the control screen and return to the picture previously displayed.

“RPT” switch (audio CD and CD text): Push the “RPT” switch while the track is playing. When the track ends, it will automatically replay. To turn off the repeat feature, push this switch again.

“RAND” switch (audio CD and CD text): Push the “RAND” switch. The player will play the tracks on the disc in random order. To turn off the random feature, push this switch again.

“SCAN” switch (audio CD and CD text): Push the “SCAN” switch. The player will scan all the tracks on the disc. To stop scanning, push this switch again. When the player has scanned all the tracks on the disc, it will stop scanning.

“ ⏫ ” and “ ⏬ ” switches: Push the “ ⏫ ” or “ ⏬ ” switch to fast forward or reverse the disc. When you push the switch again, the DVD player will resume playing.

(h) Error messages

If the player malfunctions, your audio system will display one of the three following error messages.

If “DISC CHECK” appears on the screen: It indicates that the disc is dirty, damaged or it was inserted upside down. Clean the disc or insert it correctly.

If “REGION CODE ERROR” appears on the screen: It indicates that the DVD region code is not set properly.

If “DVD ERROR” appears on the screen: There is a problem inside the player. Eject the disc. Set the disc again.

If the malfunction still exists, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Screen adjustment

You can adjust the color, contrast, tone and brightness of the screen.

Push the “DISPLAY” button on the controller 1 and then the “Display” screen 2 will appear.

The screen may turn purple to deflect the sunlight. This is not a malfunction.

	“+” or “RED”	“- ” or “GREEN”
COLOR	Strengthens the red color	Strengthens the green color
CONTRAST	Strengthens the contrast	Weakens the contrast
TONE	Strengthens the tone	Weakens the tone
BRIGHTNESS	Brightens	Darkens

Each time you push the “+” or “-” switch, you can adjust the color, contrast, tone and brightness of the screen.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

After adjusting the screen, push the “OK” switch to return to the previous screen.

Selecting the video mode

The audio machine connected to the input terminal adapter can be played in the video mode.

To select the video mode, push the “VIDEO” button on the controller 1. You can also select the video mode on the mode selection screen 2 mentioned above.

DEALER E-PROCESS

DVD video disc information

(a) DVD player and DVD video discs

This DVD player conforms to NTSC color TV formats. DVD video discs conforming to other formats such as PAL or SECAM cannot be used.

Region codes: Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating where you can use. If the DVD video disc is not labeled “ALL” or “1”, you cannot use it in this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc in this player, “REGION CODE ERROR” appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, in some cases you cannot use it.

Marks shown on DVD video discs:

NTSC	Indicates NTSC format of color TV.
	Indicates the number of audio tracks.
	Indicates the number of language subtitles.
	Indicates the number of angles.
	Indicates the screen to be selected. Wide screen: 16:9 Standard: 4:3
	Indicates regions in which this video disc can be played. ALL: all countries Number: region code

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(b) DVD video disc glossary

DVD video discs: Digital Versatile Disc that holds video. DVD video discs have adopted “MPEG2”, one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoded technology in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format has also been adopted. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby digital, which enables higher quality of sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.

Viewer restrictions: This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with the level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.

Level 2 — 7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movies can be played.

Level 8: All types of DVD video discs can be played.

Multi-angle feature: You can enjoy the same scene at different angles.

Multi-language feature: You can select the language of the subtitles and audio.

Region codes: Region codes are provided on DVD players and DVD discs. If the DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on the DVD player. For region codes, see page 411.

Audio: This DVD player can play liner PCM, Dolby digital, dts and MPEG audio format DVD. Other decoded type cannot be played.

Title and chapter: Video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs are divided in parts by title and chapter.

Title: The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one piece of a movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

Chapter: A unit smaller than a title. A title comprises plural chapters.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

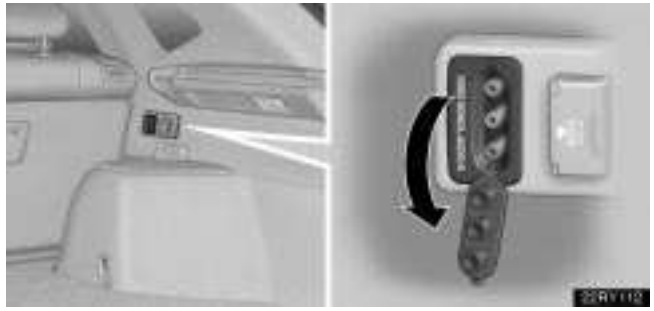
Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby", "Pro Logic", and "DD" are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories. Confidential unpublished works.
©1992-1997 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

"dts" is a trademark of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

Input terminal adapter

The rear entertainment system plays videos and sound when your audio system is connected to the input terminal adapter. For details, refer to the manufacturer's instructions.



To use the input terminal adapter, open the cover.

The input terminal adapter is composed of 3 input terminal adapters.

"VIDEO": Image input adapter
"MONO/L": Audio input adapter
"AUDIO-R": Audio input adapter

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

Close the input terminal adapter lid when the input terminal adapter is not in use. Inserting a foreign object other than the appropriate plug that fits the adapter may cause electrical failure or short circuit.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power outlet (115 VAC)

This power outlet is designed for use as a power supply for the audio device connected to the input terminal adapter.

The key must be in the “ON” position for the power outlet to be used.

The maximum capacity for this power outlet is 115 VAC/100W. If you attempt to use an appliance that requires more than 115 VAC or 100W, the protection circuit will activate and cut the power supply. The power supply will restart automatically when you use an appliance that operates within the 115 VAC/100W limits.

NOTICE

- ***To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.***

▶ ***Main switch***

To use the power outlet, push the main switch on the instrument panel.

An indicator light will illuminate to indicate that the power outlet is ready for use.

Push the main switch once again to turn the power outlet off. When the power outlet is not in use, make sure that the main switch is turned off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- ***Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use. Inserting a foreign object other than the appropriate plug that fits the outlet may cause electrical failure or short circuit.***

The power outlet is not designed for the following electric appliances even though their power consumption is under 115 VAC/100W. These appliances may not operate properly.

- **Appliances with high initial peak wattage:** Cathode-ray tube type televisions, compressor-driven refrigerators, electric pumps, electric tools, etc.
- **Measuring devices which process precise data:** Medical equipment, measuring instruments, etc.
- **Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply:** Microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc.

Certain electrical appliances may cause radio noise.

Headphone input jacks

You can enjoy the rear seat entertainment system with commercial headphones.

To use the headphones, connect them to the jack.

The key must be in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To adjust the volume of the headphones, turn the dial.

Left side dial: Turn it upward to increase the volume, turn it downward to decrease the volume.

Right side dial: Turn it downward to increase the volume, turn it upward to decrease the volume.

The maximum volume depends on the type of headphones.

With some headphone generally available in the market, it may be difficult to catch sound properly. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus genuine wireless headphone.

Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

⚠ CAUTION

Adjust the volume when you connect the headphones to the jack. Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

CAR AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM OPERATING HINTS

NOTICE

To ensure correct audio/video system operation:

- ***Be careful not to spill beverages over the system.***
- ***Do not put anything other than a cassette tape or Compact Disc into the slot.***
- ***Do not put anything other than a DVD video, DVD audio, video CD, dts-CD and audio CD into the DVD player.***
- ***The use of a cellular phone inside or near the vehicle may cause a noise from the speakers of the system which you are listening to. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Radio reception

Usually, a problem with radio reception does not mean there is a problem with your radio — it is just the normal result of conditions outside the vehicle.

For example, nearby buildings and terrain can interfere with FM reception. Power lines or telephone wires can interfere with AM signals. And of course, radio signals have a limited range. The farther you are from a station, the weaker its signal will be. In addition, reception conditions change constantly as your vehicle moves.

Here are some common reception problems that probably do not indicate a problem with your radio:

FM

Fading and drifting stations — Generally, the effective range of FM is about 40 km (25 miles). Once outside this range, you may notice fading and drifting, which increase with the distance from the radio transmitter. They are often accompanied by distortion.

Multi-path — FM signals are reflective, making it possible for two signals to reach your antenna at the same time. If this happens, the signals will cancel each other out, causing a momentary flutter or loss of reception.

Static and fluttering — These occur when signals are blocked by buildings, trees, or other large objects. Increasing the bass level may reduce static and fluttering.

Station swapping — If the FM signal you are listening to is interrupted or weakened, and there is another strong station nearby on the FM band, your radio may tune in the second station until the original signal can be picked up again.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AM

Fading — AM broadcasts are reflected by the upper atmosphere - especially at night. These reflected signals can interfere with those received directly from the radio station, causing the radio station to sound alternately strong and weak.

Station interference — When a reflected signal and a signal received directly from a radio station are very nearly the same frequency, they can interfere with each other, making it difficult to hear the broadcast.

Static — AM is easily affected by external sources of electrical noise, such as high tension power lines, lightening, or electrical motors. This results in static.

Caring for your cassette player and tapes

For the best performance for your cassette player and tapes:

Clean the tape head and other parts regularly.

- A dirty tape head or tape path can decrease sound quality and tangle your cassette tapes. The easiest way to clean them is by using a cleaning tape. (A wet type is recommended.)

Use high-quality cassettes.

- Low-quality cassette tapes can cause many problems, including poor sound, inconsistent playing speed, and constant auto-reversing. They can also get stuck or tangled in the cassette player.
- Do not use a cassette if it has been damaged or tangled or if its label is peeling off.
- Do not leave a cassette in the player if you are not listening to it, especially if it is hot outside.
- Store cassettes in their cases and out of direct sunlight.
- Avoid using cassettes with a total playing time longer than 100 minutes (50 minutes per side). The tape used in these cassettes is thin and could get stuck or tangled in the cassette player.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Caring for your compact disc player, DVD player and discs

- Extremely high temperatures can keep your compact disc player and DVD player from working. On hot days, use the air conditioning to cool the vehicle interior before you use the players.
- Bumpy roads or other vibrations may make your compact disc player and DVD player skip.
- If moisture gets into your compact disc player and DVD player, the players may not play even though they appear to be working. Remove the disc from the player and wait until it dries.

⚠ CAUTION

Compact disc players and DVD players use an invisible laser beam which could cause hazardous radiation exposure if directed outside the unit. Be sure to operate the players correctly.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Compact disc player

- Use only compact discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your compact disc player.

  Copy-protected CD
  CD-R (CD-Recordable)
  CD-R W (CD-Re-writable)
  CD-ROM
  SACD
  dts-CD

DVD player

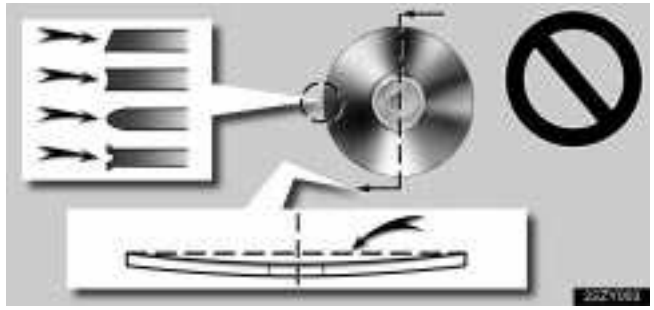
Audio CDs	COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO · COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO TEXT · dts
DVD video discs	DVD VIDEO · DVD VIDEO
DVD audio discs	DVD AUDIO
Video CDs	VIDEO CD · COMPACT disc DIGITAL VIDEO

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Use only discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your DVD player.

  SACD
  Copy-protected CD
  CD-R (CD-Recordable)
  CD-R W (CD-Re-writable)
  CD-ROM
  DVD-R
  DVD+R
  DVD-R W
  DVD+RW
  DVD-ROM
  DVD-RAM

▶ ***Special shaped discs***



▶ ***Low quality discs***

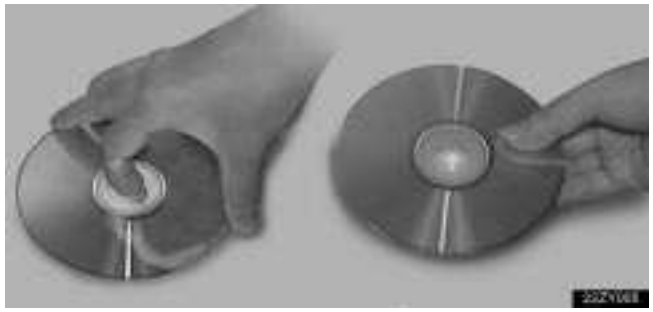
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ *Labeled discs*

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the player or changer, do not use special shaped, low quality or labeled discs such as those shown in the illustrations.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ ***Correct*** ▶ ***Wrong***

- Handle compact discs carefully, especially when you are inserting them. Hold them on the edge and do not bend them. Avoid getting fingerprints on them, particularly on the shiny side.
- Dirt, scrapes, warping, pin holes, or other disc damage could cause the player to skip or to repeat a section of a track. (To see a pin hole, hold the disc up to the light.)
- Remove discs from the compact disc player when you are not listening to them. Store them in their plastic cases away from moisture, heat, and direct sunlight.

To clean a compact disc: Wipe it with a soft, lint-free cloth that has been dampened with water. Wipe in a straight line from the center to the edge of the disc (not in circles). Dry it with another soft, lint-free cloth. Do not use a conventional record cleaner or anti-static device.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 3 – 1

STARTING AND DRIVING

Starting and driving

Three-way catalytic converter 427
Engine exhaust caution 430
Before starting the engine 432
Ignition switch with steering lock 432
Parking brake 434
How to start the engine 435
Automatic transmission (standard type) 437
Automatic transmission (multi-mode type) 446
Rear view monitor system 457
Cruise control 461
Dynamic laser cruise control 464
Electronically modulated air suspension 485
Traction control system (two-wheel drive models) 499
Traction control system (four-wheel drive models) 503
Vehicle stability control system 505
Brake system 508
Tire pressure warning system 512
Brake pad wear limit indicators 515

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

THREE-W AY CATALYTIC CONVERTER

Three-way catalytic converters are emission control devices installed in the exhaust system.

It looks somewhat like a muffler, but its purpose is to reduce pollutants in the exhaust gas.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Keep people and combustible materials away from the exhaust pipe while the engine is running. The exhaust gas is very hot.**
- **Do not drive, idle or park your vehicle over anything that might burn easily such as grass, leaves, paper or rags.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

A large amount of unburned gases flowing into the three-way catalytic converter may cause it to overheat and create a fire hazard. To prevent this and other damage, observe the following precautions:

- ***Use only unleaded gasoline.***
- ***Do not drive with an extremely low fuel level; running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, creating an excessive load on the three-way catalytic converter.***
- ***Do not allow the engine to run at idle speed for more than 20 minutes.***
- ***Avoid racing the engine.***
- ***Do not push-start or pull-start your vehicle.***
- ***Do not turn off the ignition while the vehicle is moving.***
- ***Keep your engine in good running order. Malfunctions in the engine electrical system, electronic ignition system or fuel system could cause an extremely high three-way catalytic converter temperature.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- ***If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, take your vehicle in for a check-up as soon as possible. Remember, your Lexus dealer knows your vehicle and its three-way catalytic converter system best.***
- ***To ensure that the three-way catalytic converter and the entire emission control system operate properly, your vehicle must receive the periodic inspections required by the Lexus Maintenance Schedule. For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance".***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

ENGINE EXHAUST CAUTION

⚠ CAUTION

- **Avoid inhaling the engine exhaust. It contains carbon monoxide, which is a colorless and odorless gas. It can cause unconsciousness or even death.**
- **Make sure the exhaust system has no holes or loose connections. The system should be checked from time to time. If you hit something, or notice a change in the sound of the exhaust, have the system checked immediately.**
- **Do not run the engine in a garage or enclosed area except for the time needed to drive the vehicle in or out. The exhaust gases cannot escape, making this a particularly dangerous situation.**
- **Do not remain for a long time in a parked vehicle with the engine running. If it is unavoidable, however, do so only in an unconfined area and adjust the heating or cooling system to force outside air into the vehicle.**
- **Keep the back door closed while driving. An open or unsealed back door may cause exhaust gases to be drawn into the vehicle.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **To allow proper operation of your vehicle's ventilation system, keep the inlet grilles in front of the windshield clear of snow, leaves, or other obstructions.**
- **If you smell exhaust fumes in the vehicle, drive with the windows open and the back door closed. Have the cause immediately located and corrected.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

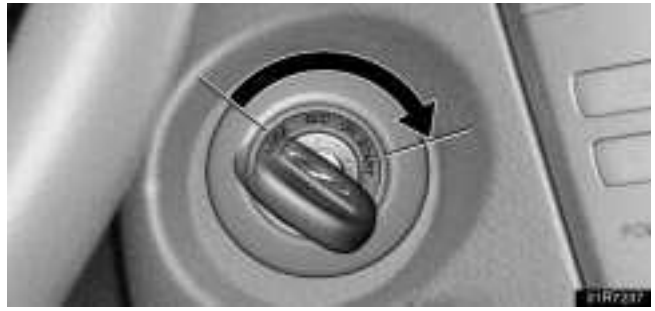
BEFORE STARTING THE ENGINE

1. Check the area around the vehicle before entering it.
2. Adjust seat position, seatback angle, seat cushion height, seat cushion angle, head restraint height and steering wheel angle.
3. Adjust the inside and outside rear view mirrors.
4. Lock all doors.
5. Fasten seat belts.
6. Remember to check that the service reminder indicators function when turning the key to “ON”, and check the fuel gauge to see that you have sufficient fuel.

NOTICE

Do not leave the key in the “ON” position if the engine is not running. The battery will discharge and the electronic ignition system could be damaged.

IGNITION SWITCH WITH STEERING LOCK



“START” — Starter motor on. The key will return to the “ON” position when released.

For starting tips, see page 435.

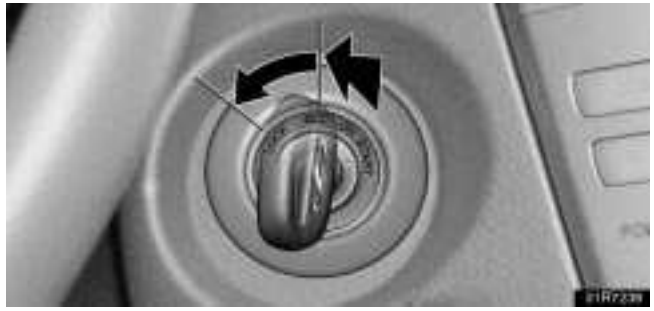
“ON” — Engine on and all accessories on.

This is the normal driving position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

“ACC” — Accessories such as the radio operate, but the engine is off.

If you leave the key in the “ACC” or “LOCK” position and open the driver’s door, a buzzer will remind you to remove the key.



“LOCK” — Engine is off and the steering wheel is locked. The ignition key can be removed only at this position.

You must push in the key to turn it from “ACC” to the “LOCK” position. The selector lever must be put in the “P” position before turning the key to the “LOCK” position.

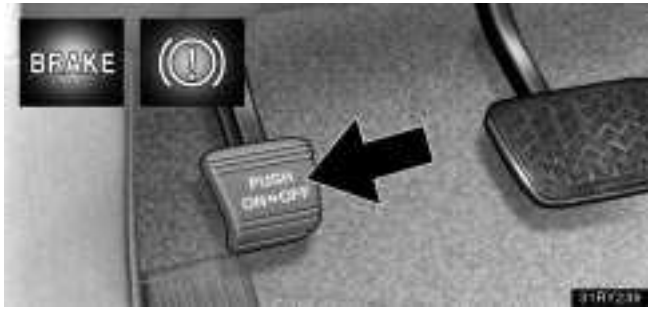
Once you remove the key, the engine immobilizer system is automatically set. See “Engine immobilizer system” on page 18.

When starting the engine, the key may seem stuck at the “LOCK” position. To free it, first be sure the key is pushed all the way in, and then rock the steering wheel slightly while turning the key gently.

If, in an emergency, you must turn the engine off while the vehicle is moving, turn the key only to “ACC”.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

PARKING BRAKE



To set: Hold the regular brake pedal down with your right foot. Push down the parking brake pedal with your left foot.

To release: Hold the regular brake pedal down with your right foot and push the parking brake pedal with your left foot. When you lift your left foot, the parking brake pedal will follow it to the released position.

Before leaving your vehicle, firmly apply the parking brake.

To remind you that the parking brake is set, the parking brake reminder light in the instrument panel remains on until you release the parking brake.

The buzzer will remind you to release the parking brake when the vehicle speed rises above 5 km/h (3 mph) with the parking brake is applied.

⚠ CAUTION

Before driving, make sure the parking brake is fully released and that the parking brake reminder light is off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

HOW TO START THE ENGINE

Before cranking

1. Apply the parking brake firmly.

2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.

3. Put the selector lever in “P”. If you need to restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, put the selector lever in “N”. A starter safety device will prevent the starter from operating if the selector lever is in any drive position.

4. Depress the brake pedal and hold it to the floor until driving off.

Starting the engine

Before starting the engine, be sure to follow the instructions in “Before cranking”.

Normal starting procedure

The multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system in your engine automatically controls the proper air-fuel mixture for starting. You can start a cold or hot engine as follows:

With your foot off the accelerator pedal, crank the engine by turning the key to “START”. Release it when the engine starts.

Engine should be warmed up by driving, not in idle. For warming up, drive with the engine turning smoothly until engine coolant temperature is within normal range.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the engine stalls...

Simply restart it, using the correct procedure given in normal starting.

NOTICE

- ***Do not crank for more than 30 seconds at a time. This may overheat the starter and wiring systems.***
- ***Do not race a cold engine.***
- ***If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately.***

If the engine will not start...

See “If your vehicle will not start” on page 550.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (standard type)

Your automatic transmission has a shift lock system to minimize the possibility of incorrect operation. This means you can only shift out of "P" position when the brake pedal is depressed with the ignition switch in "ON" position. (★)

▶ ***The shift position is displayed on the instrument cluster.***

P: Parking, engine starting and key removal position

R: Reverse position

N: Neutral position

D: Normal driving position (Shifting into overdrive possible)

4: Position for engine braking (Shifting into overdrive not possible)

Vehicle with the cruise control —
When the cruise control is being used, even if you downshift from "D" to "4", engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. For vehicle speed reduction, see page 463.

Vehicle with the dynamic laser cruise control —
When the cruise control is being used in the conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode or in the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, even if you downshift from "D" to "4", engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. For vehicle speed reduction, see pages 474 and 484.

3, 2: Position for more powerful engine braking

L: Position for maximum engine braking

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Correct use of the automatic transmission is explained in the following parts.

(a) Normal driving

(b) Using engine braking

(c) Using the “3”, “2” and “L” positions

(d) Backing up

(e) Parking

(f) Good driving practice

(g) If you cannot shift the selector lever

(h) Driving in snow mode

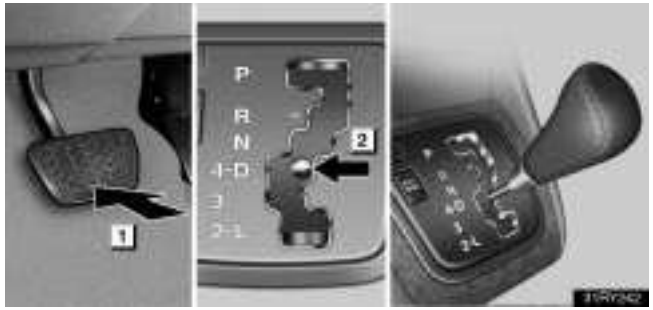
(a) Normal driving

▶ 1 *“P” (Park) position* 2 *“N” (Neutral) position*

1. Start the engine as instructed in “How to start the engine” on page 435.

The transmission must be in “P” or “N”. The engine will not start in any drive position even if the ignition key is turned to “START”.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ 1 *Brake pedal* 2 *"D" (Drive) position*

2. With your foot holding down the brake pedal, shift the selector lever to "D".

Always use the "D" position to improve fuel economy and quiet driving. Only in this position, shifting into the overdrive gear is possible. However, while the engine coolant temperature is low, the transmission will not shift into the overdrive gear even in the "D" position. (See "(b) Using engine braking" and "(f) Good driving practice" for exceptions.)

⚠ CAUTION

Never put your foot on the accelerator pedal while shifting.

3. Release the parking brake and brake pedal. Depress the accelerator pedal slowly for smooth starting.

In normal cruising, the vehicle will start in first gear and automatically shift up to the most suitable gear. On inclines, declines or winding roads, etc., the vehicle shifts up and down automatically according to the running conditions to obtain the suitable driving power and engine braking.

When the lever is in the "4" position, the automatic transmission system will select the most suitable gear for the running conditions such as hill climbing, hard towing, etc.

If you need to accelerate rapidly while driving, depress the accelerator pedal to the full throttle position. This provides more acceleration by automatically downshifting the transmission to the next lower gear or beyond, depending on the vehicle speed.

If engine braking is needed, such as in descending a long hill, see "(b) Using engine braking".

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(b) Using engine braking

To use the braking power of the engine, downshift the transmission in the way described below:

1 Shift into the “4” position. The transmission will downshift to fourth gear and engine braking will be enabled.

Vehicle with the cruise control —
When the cruise control is being used, even if you downshift from “D” to “4”, engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. For vehicle speed reduction, see page 463.

Vehicle with the dynamic laser cruise control —
When the cruise control is being used in the conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode or in the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, even if you downshift from “D” to “4”, engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. For vehicle speed reduction, see pages 474 and 484.

2 Shift into the “3” position. The transmission will downshift to third gear when the vehicle speed is or becomes lower than 129 km/h (81 mph) and stronger engine braking will be enabled.

3 Shift into the “2” position. The transmission will downshift to second gear when the vehicle speed is or becomes lower than 83 km/h (52 mph) and more powerful engine braking than that of “3” position will be enabled.

4 Shift into the “L” position. The transmission will downshift to first gear when the vehicle speed is or becomes lower than 39 km/h (24 mph) and maximum engine braking will be enabled.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful when downshifting on a slippery surface. The abrupt change in engine speed could cause the vehicle to spin or skid.

NOTICE

- ***Be careful not to over-rev the engine. Watch the tachometer to keep engine rpm from going into the red zone. The approximate maximum allowable speed for each position is given below for your reference.***

  "3" . . . . . 144 km/h (90 mph)
  "2" . . . . . 92 km/h (58 mph)
  "L" . . . . . 51 km/h (32 mph)

- ***Do not continue hill climbing or hard towing for a long time in the "3", "2" or "L" position. This may cause severe automatic transmission damage from overheating. To prevent such damage, "4" position should be used in hill climbing or hard towing.***

(c) Using the "3", "2" and "L" positions

The "3", "2" and "L" positions are used for strong engine braking as described previously.

With the selector lever in "3", "2" or "L", you can start the vehicle in motion as with the lever in "D".

With the selector lever in "3" or "2", the vehicle will start in first gear and automatically shift to second gear or third gear.

With the selector lever in "L", the transmission is engaged in first gear.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(d) Backing up

▶ 1 *Brake pedal* 2 *“R” (Reverse) position*

NOTICE

Never shift into reverse while the vehicle is moving.

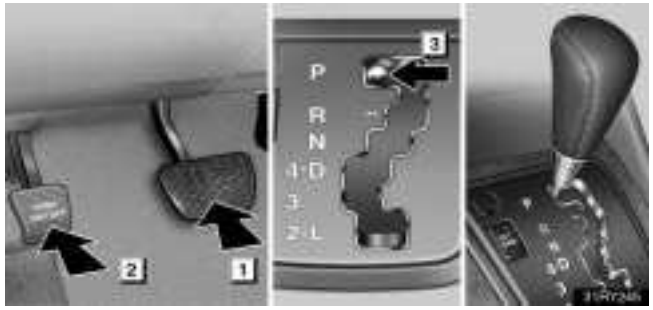
Vehicles with driving position memory system —
When the shift lever is shifted into “R” position, the outside rear view mirrors automatically down to help backing up. For details, see page 259.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. With the brake pedal held down with your foot, shift the selector lever to the “R” position.

Vehicles with rear view monitor system —
When the selector lever is shifted into “R” position with the ignition switch in the “ON” position, rear view monitor system will activate. For instructions, see “Rear view monitor system” on page 457.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(e) Parking



▶ 1 *Brake pedal*
2 *Parking brake pedal*
3 *“P” (Park) position*

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

2. Depress the parking brake fully to securely apply the parking brake.

3. With the brake pedal held down with your foot, shift the selector lever to the “P” position.

⚠ CAUTION

Never attempt to move the selector lever into “P” under any circumstances while the vehicle is moving. Serious mechanical damage and loss of vehicle control may result.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(f) Good driving practice

- If the transmission repeatedly shifts up and down between fourth and overdrive gears when climbing a gentle slope, shift the selector lever to the “4” position. Be sure to shift the selector lever to the “D” position after climbing the slope.

NOTICE

Always use the brake pedal or parking brake to hold the vehicle on an upgrade. Do not attempt to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal, as this can cause the transmission to overheat.

- When towing a trailer, in order to maintain efficient engine braking and electrical charging performance, do not use overdrive.

⚠ CAUTION

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(g) If you cannot shift the selector lever

If you cannot shift the selector lever even though the brake pedal is depressed, use the shift lock override button. For instructions, see “If you cannot shift automatic transmission selector lever” on page 583.

(h) Driving in snow mode

Use this mode when starting your vehicle in ice or snow.

To set the snow mode, push the switch. In the “ECT SNOW” indicator on the instrument cluster is on. To cancel the snow mode, push the switch again. The “ECT SNOW” indicator light will go off when the snow mode is cancelled.

If the engine is turned off with the snow mode is on, the snow mode is cancelled when the engine is restarted.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (multi-mode type)

Your automatic transmission has a shift lock system to minimize the possibility of incorrect operation. This means you can only shift out of "P" position when the brake pedal is depressed with the ignition switch in "ON" position. (★)

▶ ***The shift position or shift range position is displayed on the instrument cluster.***

P: Parking, engine starting and key removal position

R: Reverse position

N: Neutral position

D: Normal driving position (shifting into overdrive possible)

S: "S" mode driving

+: Upshifting

-: Downshifting

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Correct use of the automatic transmission is explained in the following parts.

(a) Normal driving

(b) Driving in “S” mode

(c) Using engine braking

(d) Backing up

(e) Parking

(f) Good driving practice

(g) If you cannot shift the selector lever

(h) Driving in snow mode

(a) Normal driving

▶ 1 *“P” (Park) position* 2 *“N” (Neutral) position*

1. Start the engine as instructed in “How to start the engine” on page 435.

The transmission must be in “P” or “N” position. The engine will not start in any drive position even if the ignition key is turned to “START”.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ 1 *Brake pedal* 2 *"D" (Drive) position*

2. With your foot holding down the brake pedal, shift the selector lever to "D" position.

Always use the "D" position to improve fuel economy and quiet driving. In this position, shifting into the overdrive gear is possible. However, while the engine coolant temperature is low, the transmission will not shift into the overdrive gear even in the "D" position. (See "(c) Using engine braking" and "(f) Good driving practice" for exceptions.)

⚠ CAUTION

Never put your foot on the accelerator pedal while shifting.

3. Release the parking brake and brake pedal. Depress the accelerator pedal slowly for smooth starting.

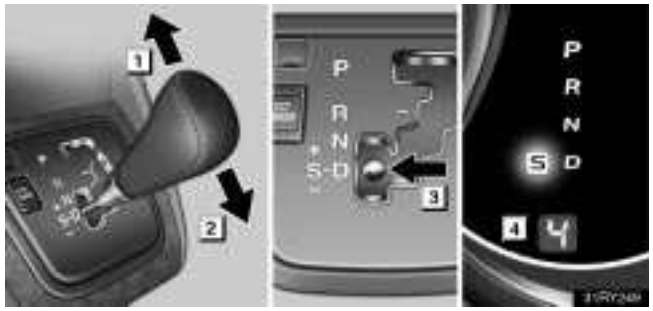
In normal cruising, the vehicle will start in first gear and automatically shift up to the most suitable gear. On inclines, declines or winding roads, etc., the vehicle shifts up and down automatically according to the running conditions to obtain the suitable driving power and engine braking.

If you need to accelerate rapidly while driving, depress the accelerator pedal to the full throttle position. This provides more acceleration by automatically downshifting the transmission to the next lower gear or beyond, depending on the vehicle speed.

If engine braking is needed, such as in descending a long hill, see "(c) Using engine braking".

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(b) Driving in “S” mode



▶ 1 *Upshifting* 2 *Downshifting*
3 *“S” mode position*
4 *Shift range position indicator*

You can change the shift range position in the “S” mode. The shift range position can be switched between “5” (fifth range) and “1” (first range) by moving the selector lever up to the “+” side or down to the “-” side. The first shift range position is “4” (fourth range) when the selector lever is shifted to the “S” position.

▶ *Shift range position indicator*

The shift range position is displayed on the instrument cluster.

- **Shift range positions**

  “5” (fifth range): The most suitable gear is automatically selected between first and overdrive (fifth) gears according to vehicle speed and driving conditions. Always use the “5” (fifth range) position to improve fuel economy and for quiet driving.

  “4” (fourth range): The most suitable gear is automatically selected between first and fourth gears according to vehicle speed and driving conditions. In the “4” (fourth range) position, the automatic transmission system will select the most suitable gear to handle current running conditions such as hill climbing, hard towing, etc.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

“3” (third range): The most suitable gear is automatically selected between first and third gears according to vehicle speed and driving conditions. This range is best used when stronger engine braking is necessary.

“2” (second range): First or second gear will automatically be selected according to vehicle speed and driving conditions. This range is to be used when engine braking stronger than that of the “3” (third range) position is necessary.

“1” (first range): This gear is fixed in first regardless of vehicle speed or driving conditions. This range is to be used when maximum engine braking is necessary.

If you attempt to downshift the transmission when it is not possible to downshift due to high vehicle speed, a warning tone sounds twice.

NOTICE

Do not downshift if you are going faster than the maximum allowable speed for the next lower range.

- **“S” mode indicator light**

  “S” mode allows you to use the shift range positions.

- **Maximum allowable speeds**

  To get on a highway or to pass slower traffic, maximum acceleration may be necessary. Make sure you observe the following maximum allowable speeds in each range:

range	km/h (mph)
1	51 (32)
2	92 (58)
3	144 (90)

The “S” mode indicator light comes on when the selector lever is shifted into the “S” position. When the “S” mode indicator light does not come on even with the selector lever moved to the “S” position, there may be a problem somewhere in the system. Have your vehicle checked/repaired by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. In this case, you can drive in the same condition as in the “D” position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(c) Using engine braking

▶ ***"S" mode position***

To use the braking power of the engine, downshift the range in the "S" mode position as follows:

- Shift into the "4" (fourth range) position. The transmission will downshift to fourth gear and engine braking will be engaged.

  If you drive in the "D" position: Shift the selector lever to the "S" position and "4" (fourth range) will automatically be selected.

  If you drive in the "S" position: Shift the selector lever down to the "-" position by selecting the "4" (fourth range).

  Vehicles with the cruise control —
  When the cruise control is being used, even if you downshift from "D" or "5" (fifth range) to "4" (fourth range), engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. For vehicle speed reduction, see page 463.

  Vehicles with the dynamic laser cruise control —
  When the cruise control is being used in the conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode or in the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, even if you downshift from "D" or "5" (fifth range) to "4" (fourth range), engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. For vehicle speed reduction, see page 484, 474.

- Shift into the "3" (third range) position. The transmission will downshift to third gear when the vehicle speed is or becomes lower than 129 km/h (81 mph) and more powerful engine braking will be enabled.

  If you drive in the "D" position: Shift the selector lever to the "S" position then shift the lever down to the "-" position once to select the "3" (third range).

  If you drive in the "S" position: Shift the selector lever down to the "-" position to select "3" (third range).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Shift into the “2” (second range) position. The transmission will downshift to second gear when the vehicle speed is or becomes lower than 83 km/h (52 mph) and more powerful engine braking than that of the “3” (third range) position will be enabled.

  If you drive in the “D” position: Shift the selector lever to the “S” position and shift the lever down to the “-” position twice to select “2” (second range).

  If you drive in the “S” position: Shift the selector lever down to the “-” position to select “2” (second range).

- Shift into the “1” (first range) position. The transmission will downshift to first gear when the vehicle speed is or becomes lower than 39 km/h (24 mph) and maximum engine braking will be enabled.

  If you drive in the “D” position: Shift the selector lever to the “S” position and shift the lever down to the “-” position three times to select “1” (first range).

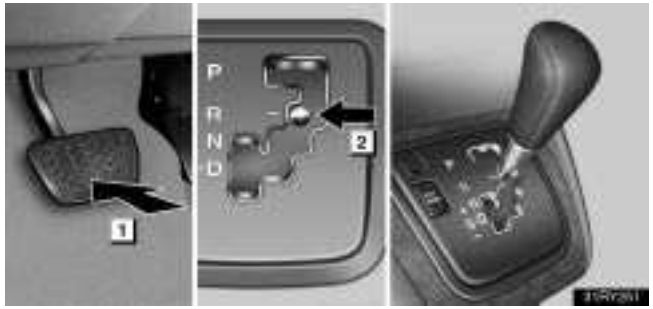
  If you drive in the “S” position: Shift the selector lever down to the “-” position to select “1” (first range).

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful when downshifting on a slippery surface. The abrupt change in engine speed could cause the vehicle to spin or skid.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(d) Backing up



▶ 1 *Brake pedal* 2 *"R" (Reverse) position*

NOTICE

Never shift into reverse while the vehicle is moving.

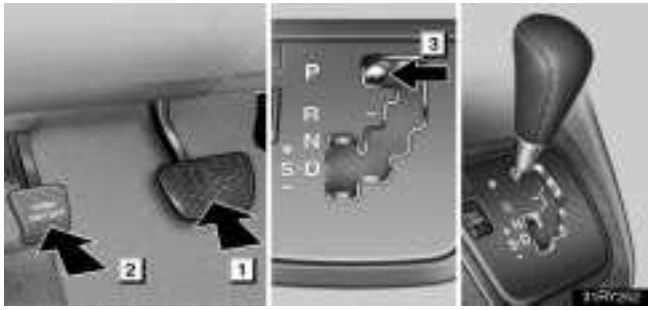
Vehicles with driving position memory system —
When the shift lever is shifted into "R" position, the outside rear view mirrors automatically down to help backing up. For details, see page 259.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. With the brake pedal held down with your foot, shift the selector lever to the "R" position.

Vehicles with rear view monitor system —
When the selector lever is shifted into "R" position with the ignition switch in the "ON" position, rear view monitor system will activate. For instructions, see "Rear view monitor system" on page 457.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(e) Parking



▶ 1 *Brake pedal* 2 *Parking brake pedal*
3 *"P" (Park) position*

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

2. Depress the parking brake fully to securely apply the parking brake.

3. With the brake pedal held down with your foot, shift the selector lever to the "P" position.

⚠ CAUTION

Never attempt to move the selector lever into "P" under any circumstances while the vehicle is moving. Serious mechanical damage and loss of vehicle control may result.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(f) Good driving practice

- If the transmission repeatedly shifts up and down between fourth and overdrive gears when climbing a gentle slope, shift the selector lever into the “S” position. Be sure to shift the selector lever to the “D” position after climbing the slope.
- When towing a trailer, in order to maintain efficient engine braking and electrical charging performance, do not use overdrive (fifth) gear.

⚠ CAUTION

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

NOTICE

Always use the brake pedal or the parking brake to hold the vehicle on an upgrade. Do not attempt to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal, as this can cause the transmission to overheat.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(g) If you cannot shift the selector lever

If you cannot shift the selector lever even though the brake pedal is depressed, use the shift lock override button. For instructions, see “If you cannot shift automatic transmission selector lever” on page 583.

(h) Driving in snow mode

Use this mode when starting your vehicle in ice or snow.

To set the snow mode, push the switch. In the “ECT SNOW” indicator on the instrument cluster is on. To cancel the snow mode, push the switch again. The “ECT SNOW” indicator light will go off when the snow mode is cancelled.

If the engine is turned off with the snow mode is on, the snow mode is cancelled when the engine is restarted.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

REAR VIEW MONITOR SYSTEM

The rear view monitor system assists the driver by displaying an image of the rear of the vehicle while backing up. The displayed image on the screen is a horizontally reversed mirror image of the inside rear view mirror.

To display the rear view image on the screen, place the selector lever in the "R" position when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

If you move the selector lever out of the "R" position, the screen returns to the previous screen. Operating another function of the navigation system will display another screen.

The rear view monitor system is a supplemental device intended to assist back up. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Never depend on the rear view monitor system entirely when backing up. Always make sure your intended path is clear.**

  Use caution just as you would when backing up any vehicle.
- **Never back up while looking only at the screen. The image on the screen is different from actual conditions. Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces will differ from actual distances. If you back up while looking only at the screen, you may hit a vehicle, a person or an object. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually and with mirrors before proceeding.**
- **Do not use the system when the back door is not completely closed.**
- **If the back of the vehicle is hit, the position and mounting angle of the camera may change. Be sure to have the camera's position and mounting angle checked at your Lexus dealer.**
- **If the temperature changes rapidly, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, the system may not operate normally.**

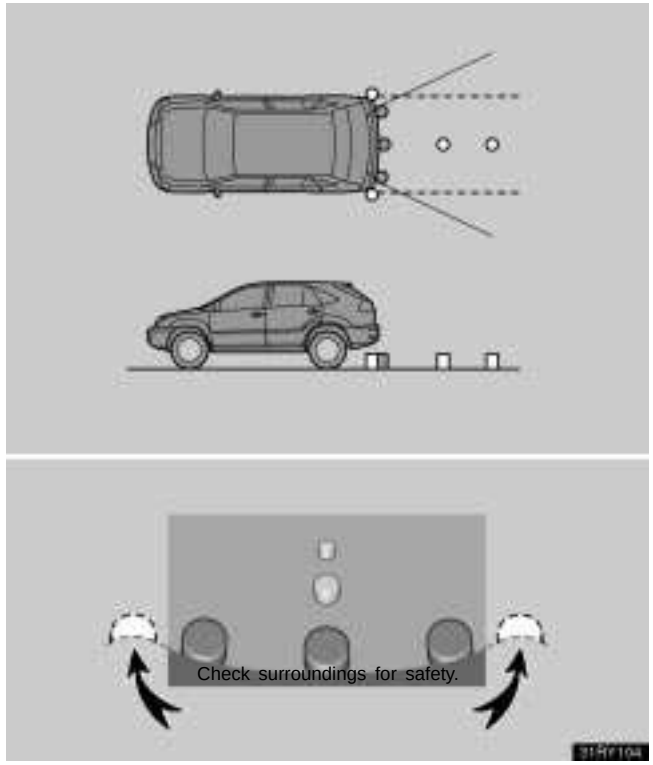
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **If the camera lens becomes dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. If water droplets, snow, or mud adhere to the lens, rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If the lens is extremely dirty, wash it with a mild cleanser and rinse.**
- **The displayed image may become darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually and with mirror before proceeding.**

AREA DISPLAYED ON SCREEN

Image is displayed approximately level on screen.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ *Corners of bumper*

- **The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.**
- **The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

THE REAR VIEW MONITOR SYSTEM CAMERA

The rear view monitor system camera is located on the back door as shown in the illustration. The camera uses a special lens. The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance.

In the following cases, it may become difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning.

- In the dark (for example, at night)
- When the temperature near the lens is extremely high or low
- When water droplets are adhering to the camera, or when humidity is high (for example, when it rains)
- When foreign matter (for example, snow or mud) adheres to the camera lens
- When the sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lens

If a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera, the smear effect* peculiar to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect — A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CRUISE CONTROL

The cruise control allows you to cruise the vehicle at a desired speed over 40 km/h (25 mph) with your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Your cruising speed can be maintained although a slight speed change may occur when driving up or down a gradient, within the limits of engine performance. On steeper hills, a great speed change will occur so it is better to drive without the cruise control.

⚠ CAUTION

- **To help maintain maximum control of your vehicle, do not use the cruise control when driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads.**
- **Avoid vehicle speed increases when driving downhill. If the vehicle speed is too fast in relation to the cruise control set speed, cancel the cruise control then downshift the transmission to use engine braking to slow down.**

(a) Turning the system on

To operate the cruise control, push the main switch. This turns the system on. The indicator light in the instrument cluster shows that you can now set your desired cruising speed. Another push on the switch will turn the system completely off.

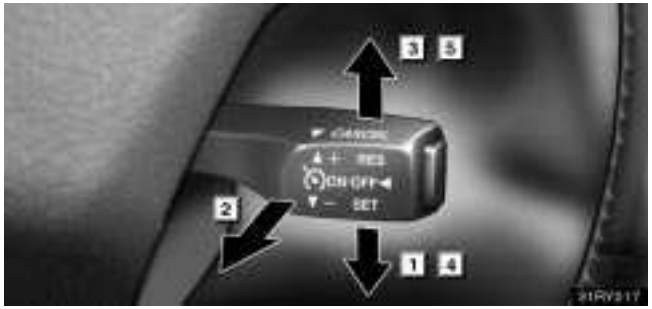
When the ignition key is turned off, the main switch is also automatically turned off. To use the cruise control again, push the main switch again to turn it on.

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid accidental cruise control engagement, keep the main switch off when not using the cruise control.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(b) Setting operation



▶ ***Each function is described below.***

1 Setting at a desired speed.

The transmission must be in the “D” position or the shift range position must be “4” (fourth range) or “5” (fifth range) in “S” mode (with multi-mode type) before you set the cruise control speed.

Bring the vehicle to the desired speed, press the control lever downward in the “- SET” direction and release it. This sets the vehicle at that speed. Now you may take your foot off the accelerator pedal. If you need acceleration — for example, when passing — depress the accelerator pedal enough for the vehicle to exceed the set speed. When you release the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will return to the speed set prior to the acceleration.

2 Cancelling the preset speed

You can cancel the preset speed by either of the following:

a. Pulling the control lever in the “CANCEL” direction.

b. Depressing the brake pedal.

If the vehicle speed falls below about 40 km/h (25 mph), the preset speed will be automatically cancelled.

If the vehicle speed drops 16 km/h (10 mph) below the preset speed, the preset speed will also automatically be cancelled.

If the preset speed automatically cancels for reasons other than the above, there is no problem to continue driving. However, please contact your Lexus dealer.

3 Resetting to a faster speed

Press the control lever upward in the “+ RES” direction and hold it. Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. While the lever is held upward, the vehicle will gradually gain speed.

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be increased 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time by pressing the control lever upward in the “+ RES” direction quickly.

However, a quicker way to reset is to accelerate the vehicle and then press the control lever downward in the “- SET” direction.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

4 Resetting to a slower speed

Press the control lever downward in the “- SET” direction and hold it. Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. While the lever is held downward, the vehicle speed will gradually decrease.

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be lowered 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time by pressing the control lever downward in the “- SET” direction quickly.

However, a quicker way to reset is to depress the brake pedal and then press the control lever downward in the “- SET” direction.

Vehicle with automatic transmission (standard type) —

Even if you downshift the transmission from the “D” position to “4” with the cruise control on, engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. To decrease the vehicle speed, reset to a slower speed with the cruise control lever or depress the brake pedal. If you use the brake pedal, cruise control is cancelled.

Vehicle with automatic transmission (multi-mode type) —

Even if you downshift the transmission from the “D” or “5” (fifth range) to the “4” (fourth range) with the cruise control on, engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. To decrease the vehicle speed, reset to a slower speed with the cruise control lever or depress the brake pedal. If you use the brake pedal, cruise control is cancelled.

5 Resuming the preset speed

If the preset speed is cancelled by pulling the control lever or by depressing the brake pedal, pushing the lever up in the “+ RES” direction will restore the speed set prior to cancellation. However, once the vehicle speed falls below about 40 km/h (25 mph), the preset speed will not be resumed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cruise control failure warning

If the “CRUISE” indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes when using the cruise control, push the main switch to turn the system off and then push it again to turn it on.

If any of the following conditions then occurs, there is some trouble in the cruise control system.

- The indicator light does not come on.
- The indicator light flashes again.
- The indicator light goes out after it comes on.

If this is the case, contact your Lexus dealer and have your Lexus inspected.

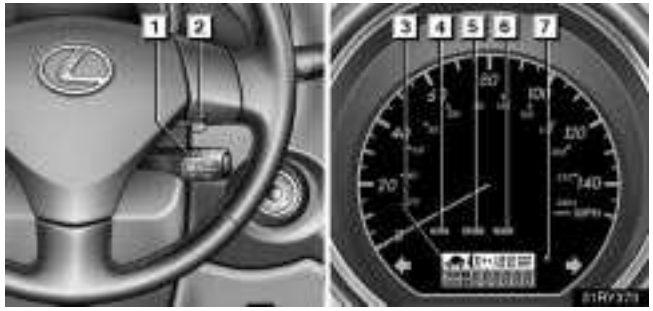
DYNAMIC LASER CRUISE CONTROL

Dynamic laser cruise control allows you to drive at a selected cruising speed over about 45 km/h (28 mph) with your foot off the accelerator pedal, maintaining an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

⚠ CAUTION

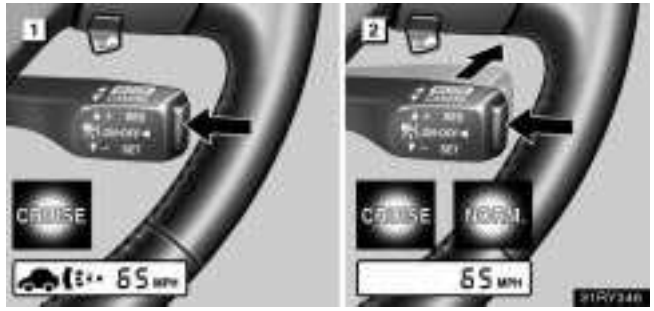
Do not rely excessively on dynamic laser cruise control in order to avoid serious injury or death, or to prevent accidents or to control the vehicle’s speed in emergency situations. Do not use cruise control except in appropriate road and traffic conditions. Always drive carefully and attentively. Before using dynamic laser cruise control, read and understand the following instructions.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ 1 *Cruise control switch*
2 *Distance switch*
3 *Display*
4 *"NORM." indicator light (conventional cruise control mode indicator light)*
5 *"CRUISE" indicator light*
6 *"READY" indicator light (ready mode indicator light)*
7 *Master warning light*

Dynamic laser cruise control mode



▶ 1 *Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode*
2 *Conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode*

The dynamic laser cruise control function has two cruise control modes.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode for maintaining an appropriate distance between vehicles
- Conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode for cruising at preset speeds

You can change the mode by using the control lever.

The two cruise control modes function differently. If you use dynamic laser cruise control, always confirm which mode is selected.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

For the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, see “Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode” on page 466. For the conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode, see “Conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode” on page 481.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

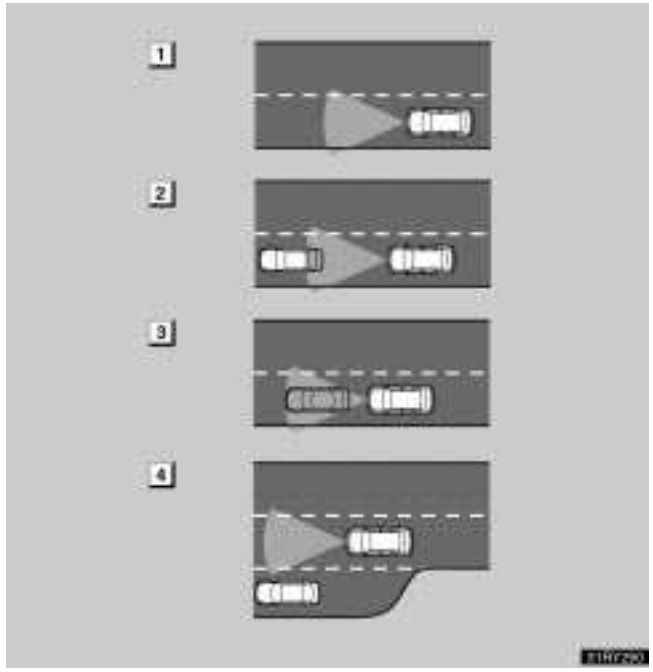
The laser radar sensor in this system primarily detects the reflectors of the vehicle ahead of you to determine the presence of the vehicle ahead as well as measuring the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. The detection range of the sensor is about 120 m (400 ft.) ahead.

⚠ CAUTION

Dynamic laser cruise control is not a collision-avoidance system and will not prevent accidents. Dynamic laser cruise control is a vehicle speed control device that is intended for use only on freeways or roads where the traffic is light or moderate. To avoid serious injury, you must use caution and be attentive to road and traffic conditions while using dynamic laser cruise control.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(a) Dynamic laser cruise control operations



The dynamic laser cruise control function operates automatically and depending on whether a vehicle is detected ahead may change the speed of your vehicle as follows.

If no vehicle is running ahead of you —

1 **Cruising at a fixed speed:** If there is no vehicle detected ahead, your cruising speed is maintained at the preset speed from about 45 km/h (28 mph) to about 135 km/h (85 mph). The preset speed is displayed in the display. For the vehicle speed setting, see “(c) Setting the desired speed” on page 472.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If a vehicle is detected ahead of you —

2 **Deceleration cruising function:** If a slower moving vehicle is detected ahead of you, your vehicle cruising speed decreases within the range of about 40 km/h (25 mph) to about 135 km/h (85 mph). The display shows the preset speed, the detected vehicle ahead and selected vehicle-to-vehicle distance. If your vehicle gets closer to the vehicle ahead because of insufficient automatic deceleration, then the alarm warns you to also manually apply brakes.

3 **Follow-up cruising function:** After deceleration, your vehicle cruising speed changes in proportion to the speed of the vehicle ahead to maintain an appropriate distance from your vehicle to the vehicle ahead. The vehicle-to-vehicle distance can be changed. For details, see “(h) Changing vehicle-to-vehicle distance” on page 475.

4 **Acceleration cruising function:** If the vehicle ahead changes lanes, your vehicle cruising speed will be gradually increased up to the preset speed, and your vehicle resumes fixed-speed cruising.

This system operates by detecting primarily the reflectors of the vehicle ahead. The distance may not be accurately or absolutely detected in the following cases:

- **The vehicle ahead has higher ground clearance, which means that the placement of the reflectors is in a higher position.**
- **The rear section of the vehicle ahead is extremely dirty.**
- **The vehicle ahead or other vehicles around you are flinging up water or snow.**
- **Excessive exhaust gas (black smoke) is coming from the vehicle ahead or other vehicles around you, obscuring your front view.**
- **There is an obstruction (protective film, sticker, etc.) on the reflectors on the vehicle ahead, or reflectors are not installed on the vehicle ahead or are damaged.**
- **Heavy luggage in the luggage compartment or rear seats is causing the nose of your vehicle to tilt up.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid accidents, always keep the laser radar sensor glass clean and never allow it to be covered with icicle or any substance, so it can detect the vehicle in front. (See “(k) Laser radar sensor” on page 478.)

⚠ CAUTION

Do not rely excessively on dynamic laser cruise control. Observe the following precautions in order to avoid serious injury or death:

- **Under certain conditions where the vehicle in front slows drastically, or is stopped, the dynamic laser cruise control will neither warn you nor decelerate. You must depress the brake pedal to slow down, ensuring collision avoidance or that sufficient vehicle-to-vehicle distance is maintained.**
- **Do not use dynamic laser cruise control in the following conditions:**

  In bad weather (such as rain, fog, snow, sandstorms or direct sunlight, or when raindrops or snowflakes get on the laser radar sensor glass), the vehicle-to-vehicle distance will not be measured accurately.

  When using the windshield wipers at high or low speeds the dynamic laser cruise control turns off.

  On roads with heavy traffic or sharp bends, an appropriate speed cannot be maintained and an accident may occur.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

On slippery road surfaces (icy or snow-covered road surfaces), the tires will race and you will be unable to control the vehicle.

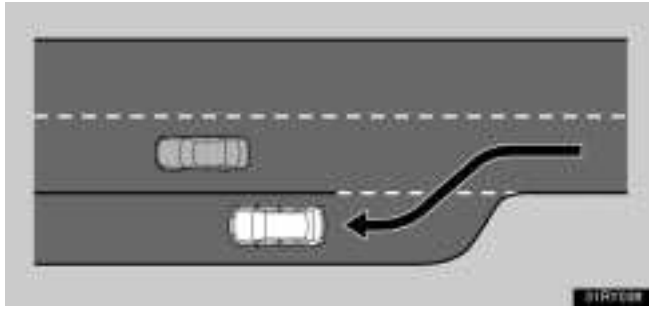
When there is no vehicle detected ahead on steep downhill slopes, the preset speed will be easily exceeded because of inefficient engine braking. (In this case, automatic braking will not work.) If there is a vehicle detected ahead, the delay in deceleration timing could cause serious injury or death.

When the alarm sounds frequently (because acceleration or deceleration was repeated or sufficient vehicle-to-vehicle distance was not maintained), an appropriate vehicle speed cannot be attained and an accident may occur.

On roads with steep and short inclines and declines, failure to detect the vehicle ahead will shorten the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead and an accident may occur.

- **Deceleration cruising function and approach warning do not operate when the vehicle ahead is at a stop or driving very slowly.**
- **If the vehicle ahead of you decelerates abruptly or if another vehicle cuts in ahead of you, your vehicle may collide with the vehicle ahead unless you manually depress the brake pedal to slow down your vehicle.**
- **Depending on the road configuration (curved, left and right continuous curved, the start or end of a curve, or narrow driving lanes due to road construction) or your vehicle condition (steering wheel maneuvering, position in the lane, or unstable driving because of an accident or breakdown), vehicles in other lanes or surrounding objects may be detected, resulting in a control failure or the approach warning activation. This may also result in a very close distance between vehicles due to a failure to detect the vehicle ahead.**

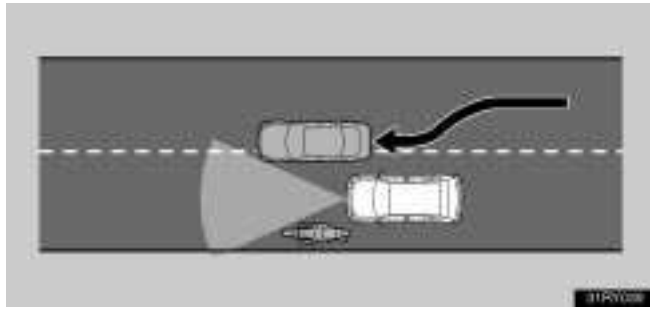
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



Dynamic laser cruise control should not be used in circumstances which are inappropriate for any cruise control, such as entering free way on-ramps or off-ramps.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not use dynamic laser cruise control when exiting from or when entering or merging onto a freeway. When you are following a slower moving vehicle and exiting, the sensor does not detect the vehicle and will accelerate to the preset speed.**



- **If other vehicles are driving outside of the laser radar detection range, a delay in the detection of the vehicle cutting in at short range or failure to detect a motorcycle running on the side of the same lane will occur. In this case, the dynamic laser cruise control system will not function properly.**
- **When a slower vehicle in front of you leaves the lane, the dynamic laser cruise control will no longer detect a vehicle ahead and will attempt to accelerate the vehicle to the faster preset speed.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(b) Turning the system on

To operate dynamic laser cruise control, press the “ON-OFF” button. This turns the system on. When the “CRUISE” and “READY” indicator lights in the instrument cluster come on, you can now set your desired cruising speed and vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Pressing the “ON-OFF” button again will turn the system completely off.

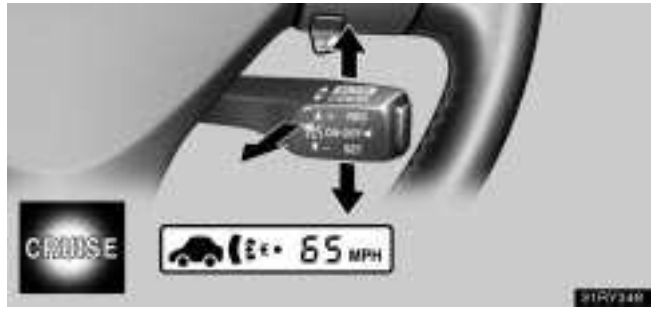
When the ignition is turned off, the system is also automatically turned off. To use dynamic laser cruise control again, press the “ON-OFF” button again to turn it on.

When the ignition is turned off, all the preset data is cleared. When you use the dynamic laser cruise control again, you need to reset the data.

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid accidentally engaging the cruise control, keep the “ON-OFF” button off when not using the dynamic laser cruise control.

(c) Setting the desired speed



The transmission must be in “D” before you set the cruise control speed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Bring your vehicle to the desired speed, push the lever down in the “- SET” direction and release it. This sets the vehicle at that speed. At this time, the display indicates settings such as the preset vehicle speed, whether a vehicle is present ahead and selected vehicle-to-vehicle distance. If there is no vehicle detected ahead, the display does not indicate the vehicle ahead. You can now take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If you need to accelerate — for example, when passing — depress the accelerator pedal enough for the vehicle to exceed the preset speed. When you release the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will return to the control prior to acceleration.

You cannot set a desired speed if the master warning light comes on, the alarm sounds and the display indicates one of the warning codes “E1”, “E2” or “E3”. If any of the above codes appears on the display, see “(l) Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode failure warning” on page 479.

(d) Cancelling the preset speed

You can cancel the preset speed by doing any of the following:

a. Pulling the lever in the “CANCEL” direction.

b. Depressing the brake pedal.

c. Pressing the “ON-OFF” button.

If cancelled by a. or b., the “READY” indicator comes on and the dynamic laser cruise control enters the ready mode.

If cancelled by c., the “CRUISE” indicator light goes off in the instrument panel. In this case, the preset speed data is cleared, and you must set the speed from the beginning.

In the following cases, the preset speed automatically cancels out:

a. The vehicle speed falls below about 40 km/h (25 mph). (40 km/h (25 mph) is designated as a cancel speed.)

b. The slip indicator light blinks and an alarm sounds. (This occurs when the vehicle is about to skid.)

If cancelled by a. or b., the “READY” indicator comes on and the dynamic laser cruise control enters the ready mode.

If one of the warning codes “E1”, “E2” or “E3” appears on the display, the preset speed automatically cancels out. See “(l) Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode failure warning” on page 479.

If the preset speed automatically cancels out for other than the above reasons, do not operate the dynamic laser cruise control. Although there is no problem to continue driving, please contact your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(e) Resetting to a faster speed

Push the lever up in the “+ RES” direction and hold it. The displayed speed will increase in increments of 5 mph (for the U.S.A.) or 5 km/h (for Canada). Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. The vehicle speed will gradually increase to the displayed speed.

However, a faster way to reset is to accelerate the vehicle and then push the lever down in the “- SET” direction.

⚠ CAUTION

When the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control is on, your cruising speed is regulated in proportion to the speed of the vehicle ahead, so increasing the preset speed using the control lever does not accelerate the vehicle. However, if the vehicle ahead leaves the lane, your cruising speed will increase to the preset speed because the preset speed has been set higher using the control lever. Confirm the setting on the display.

(f) Resetting to a slower speed

Push the lever down in the “- SET” direction and hold it. The displayed speed will decrease in increments of 5 mph (for U.S.A.) or 5 km/h (for Canada). Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. The vehicle speed will gradually decrease to the displayed speed.

However, a faster way to reset is to depress the brake pedal and then push the lever down in the “- SET” direction.

If the control lever is released when the vehicle speed exceeds the upper limit of the preset speed traveling downhill while you are pushing the lever down, the system will memorize the upper limit of the preset speed as a preset speed.

With automatic transmission (standard type) —
Even if you downshift the transmission from “D” to “4” in the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, engine braking will not be enabled because this mode is not cancelled. To decrease the vehicle speed, reset to a slower speed with the cruise control lever or depress the brake pedal. If you use the brake pedal, cruise control is cancelled.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

With automatic transmission (multi-mode type) —
Even if you downshift the transmission from “D” or “5” (fifth range) to the “4” (fourth range) in the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, engine braking will not be enabled because this mode is not cancelled. To decrease the vehicle speed, reset to a slower speed with the cruise control lever or depress the brake pedal. If you use the brake pedal, cruise control is cancelled.

(g) Resuming the preset speed

If the preset speed has been cancelled, when you push the lever up in the “+ RES” direction while the “READY” indicator in the instrument cluster comes on at a vehicle speed of more than 40 km/h (25 mph), the speed set prior to cancellation will be restored.

During follow-up cruising, if there are no vehicles ahead because they have changed lanes, your vehicle will accelerate gradually up to the preset speed. At this time, pushing the lever up in the “+ RES” direction will quickly speed up your vehicle in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

(h) Changing vehicle-to-vehicle distance

▶ 1 ***LONG*** 2 ***MIDDLE*** 3 ***SHORT***

You can select one of the following vehicle-to-vehicle distances.

1. LONG
2. MIDDLE
3. SHORT

Each time you pull the distance switch briefly toward you, the setting changes from LONG to MIDDLE to SHORT and then back to LONG. You can confirm the setting on the display.

Your vehicle speed changes in proportion to the speed of the vehicle ahead, maintaining the selected distance. However, if the vehicle ahead is slower, the selected distance will be shorter than the designated distance.

When the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is activated or the “READY” indicator comes on, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance setting can be changed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is always set to LONG when the ignition switch is turned on.

Select the vehicle-to-vehicle distance considering traffic conditions. The approximate vehicle-to-vehicle distance based on time interval when driving at 88 km/h (55 mph) is shown below:

LONG . . . . . about 75 m (245 ft.)
MIDDLE . . . . . about 50 m (165 ft.)
SHORT . . . . . about 30 m (100 ft.)

If the vehicle speed is slower than 88 km/h (55 mph), the distance will be shorter than the above.

During long downhill driving, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance will be shorter than the selected distance.

(i) Braking control

Dynamic laser cruise control is not a collision avoidance system. If the approach warning is activated, depress the brake pedal to decelerate to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

If you are getting closer to the vehicle ahead at a relatively higher speed than that of the vehicle ahead or if engine braking cannot be applied properly, braking control is automatically activated. At this time, the display flashes.

Braking control is operating only when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is selected and your vehicle speed exceeds about 40 km/h (25 mph). If the speed decreases below about 40 km/h (25 mph), braking control will cease, requiring the manual application of brakes.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Braking control will not ensure that your vehicle will reduce speed appropriately. You must depress the brake pedal to slow down, ensuring collision avoidance or that sufficient vehicle-to-vehicle distance is maintained.

(j) Approach warning

While you are cruising in the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, if the vehicle ahead decelerates abruptly or if another vehicle cuts in ahead of you, inadequate braking will make your vehicle become closer to the vehicle ahead of you and the display will flash and beep.

⚠ CAUTION

- **If the display flashes and beeps, you must depress the brake pedal to slow down to avoid a collision or maintain sufficient vehicle-to-vehicle distance.**
- **In the following conditions, the approach warning may not turn on even if the vehicle drives closer to the vehicle ahead, and an accident may occur:**

  Your vehicle and the vehicle ahead are cruising at almost the same speed.

  The vehicle ahead is cruising at a faster speed than yours. (The distance between the vehicles will become longer.)

  The vehicle ahead is at a stop or driving very slowly. Pay special attention to a very slow vehicle at the end of the line in heavy traffic or at a tollgate.

  The speed has just been set.

  The accelerator pedal is depressed or has just been released.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(k) Laser radar sensor

The laser radar sensor is used for vehicle-to-vehicle distance control cruising.

If dirt is on the sensor glass, the dynamic laser cruise control function is automatically cancelled and a warning code appears on the display. (See "(l) Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode failure warning" on page 479.)

However, if the glass sensor is covered with icicle or any substance, dirt may not be detected.

Before using the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, make sure the laser radar sensor glass is clean.

This product is a class I laser product complied with 21 C.F.R part 1040.10. and 1040. 11.

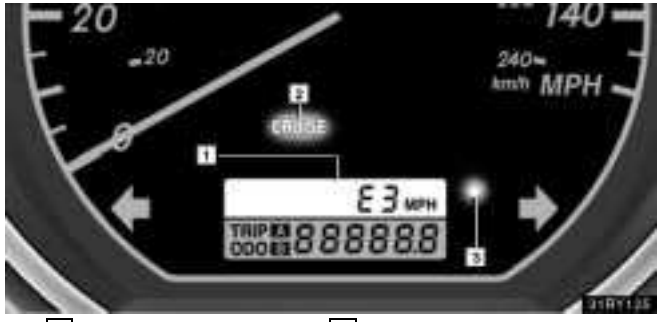
⚠ CAUTION

To ensure that dynamic laser cruise control will function properly while driving, observe the following:

- **Always keep the laser radar sensor glass clean. When cleaning, use a soft cloth and be careful not to damage the sensor.**
- **Avoid strong impacts around the laser radar sensor. An incorrect laser radar sensor alignment will result in system malfunction. A special device is required to adjust the laser radar sensor alignment. Be sure to have the sensor adjusted by your Lexus dealer.**
- **Do not affix a sticker (including a transparent sticker) or attach an accessory around the laser radar sensor.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(l) Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode failure warning



▶ 1 *Warning code* 2 *"CRUISE" indicator light*
3 *Master warning light*

If there is trouble somewhere in the dynamic laser cruise control while the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is on, the master warning light comes on and the alarm sounds, and one of the warning codes "E1", "E2" or "E3" will appear on the display. Dynamic laser cruise control is automatically cancelled.

If "E3" appears on the display, the "CRUISE" indicator light in the instrument cluster also flashes.

If "E1" appears on the display, the system cannot easily measure the vehicle-to-vehicle distance because of a dirty laser radar sensor glass while the dynamic laser cruise control is on.

If this code appears, clean the sensor glass with a soft cloth and try setting the preset speed again. If the dirt is removed without cleaning, the system will automatically enter the ready mode.

If the system does not enter the ready mode even after cleaning or the code remains on the display, the system might be malfunctioning. Although there is no problem to continue driving, please contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

Always keep the sensor glass and never allow it to be covered with icicle or any substance, so it can detect the vehicle in front.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If “E2” appears on the display, the system cannot easily measure the vehicle-to-vehicle distance because of the following conditions:

- The wipers are operating at high or low speeds
- Direct sunlight from the front
- It is difficult to make a measurement because of bad weather (such as rainy, foggy, or snowy weather)
- Driving in “SNOW” mode

In the following cases, dynamic laser cruise control switches to the ready mode:

- The wipers are stopped or are switched to intermittent operation.
- No direct sunlight from the front

In the above conditions, push the lever up in the “+ RES” direction and release it. Dynamic laser cruise control will be restored. If the setting operation cannot be performed or if the warning code still appears even after the weather clears, the system might have malfunctioned. Although there is no problem to continue driving, please contact your Lexus dealer.

If “E3” appears on the display, a system malfunction has been detected.

If this code appears, stop your vehicle in a safe place, turn the ignition off, and then restart it to reset the system. If the setting still cannot be made or the same code appears again, the system might have malfunctioned. Although there is no problem to continue driving, please contact your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode

This mode allows you to cruise at a desired speed over about 45 km/h (28 mph) with your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Your cruising speed can be maintained up or down grades within the limits of engine performance, although a slight speed change may occur when driving up or down the grades. On steeper hills, a greater speed change will occur so it is better to drive without the cruise control.

⚠ CAUTION

- **In the conventional (fixed speed) cruise control mode, the approach warning does not activate and no alarm will sound even if you are too close to the vehicle ahead, as neither the presence of the vehicle ahead nor the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is detected. Pay special attention to the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. Always confirm the setting in the display.**
- **Do not use the conventional (fixed speed) mode in the following conditions, or serious injury or death could result:**

  To help maintain maximum control of your vehicle, do not use conventional cruise control mode when using dynamic laser cruise control while driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads.

  Avoid vehicle speed increasing when driving downhill. If the vehicle speed is too fast in relation to the preset speed in the conventional cruise control mode, cancel the conventional cruise control mode and then downshift the transmission to use engine braking to slow down.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(a) Turning the system on

To operate conventional cruise control mode, press the “ON-OFF” button. This turns the system on. The “CRUISE” and “READY” indicator lights in the instrument cluster comes on. Push the lever in the “MODE” direction for longer than 1 second to change to conventional cruise control mode. The indicator in the instrument cluster is as shown. You can now set your desired cruising speed. Pressing the “ON-OFF” button again will turn the system completely off.

However, once the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode activates and is used, it cannot be changed to the conventional cruise control mode using the above operation. To change the mode, press the “ON-OFF” button to turn the system off and then press it again to turn it on. Next push the lever in the “MODE” direction for longer than about 1 second.

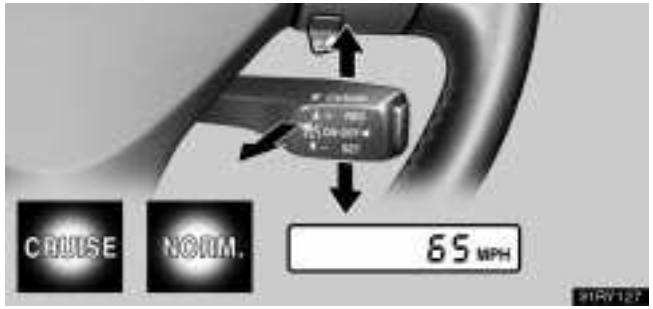
To change to the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode from the conventional cruise control mode, push the lever in the “MODE” direction for longer than about 1 second.

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid accidentally engaging cruise control, keep the “ON-OFF” button off when not using dynamic laser cruise control.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(b) Setting the desired speed



With automatic transmission (standard type) —
The transmission must be in “D” before you set the cruise control speed in the conventional cruise control mode.

With automatic transmission (multi-mode type) —
The transmission must be in “D”, “5” (fifth range) or “4” (fourth range) before you set the cruise control speed in the conventional cruise control mode.

Bring your vehicle to the desired speed, push the lever down in the “- SET” direction and release it. This sets the vehicle at that speed and the display shows the preset speed. You can now take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If you need to accelerate — for example, when passing — depress the accelerator pedal enough for the vehicle to exceed the preset speed. When you release the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will return to the speed set prior to acceleration.

You cannot set a desired speed if the master warning light comes on, the alarm sounds and the display indicates the warning code “E3”. If this code appears on the display, see “(g) Conventional cruise control mode failure warning” on page 485.

(c) Cancelling the preset speed

You can cancel the preset speed by doing any of the following:

a. Pulling the lever in the “CANCEL” direction.

b. Depressing the brake pedal.

c. Pressing the “ON-OFF” button.

In the following cases, the preset speed automatically cancels out:

a. The vehicle speed falls below about 40km/h (25 mph).

b. If the vehicle speed drops 16 km/h (10 mph) below the preset speed, the preset speed will also automatically be cancelled.

c. The slip indicator light blinks and an alarm sounds. (This occurs when the vehicle is about to skid.)

If cancelled by a. or b., the preset speed data is cleared and you must set the speed from the beginning.

If the preset speed automatically cancels out for other than the above reasons, do not operate the cruise control. Although it is no problem to continue driving, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer at the earliest opportunity.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(d) Resetting to a faster speed

Push the lever up in the “+ RES” direction and hold it. Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. While the lever is held up, the vehicle will gradually gain speed.

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be increased 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time by pushing the lever up in the “+ RES” direction quickly within 0.6 seconds.

However, a faster way to reset is to accelerate the vehicle and then push the lever down in the “- SET” direction.

(e) Resetting to a slower speed

Push the lever down in the “- SET” direction and hold it. Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. While the lever is held down, the vehicle speed will gradually decrease.

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be lowered 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time by pushing the lever down in the “- SET” direction quickly within 0.6 seconds.

However, a faster way to reset is to accelerate the vehicle and then push the lever down in the “- SET” direction.

With automatic transmission (standard type) —
Even if you downshift from “D” to “4” in the conventional cruise control mode, engine braking will not be enabled because this mode is not cancelled. To decrease the vehicle’s speed, reset to a slower speed with the cruise control lever or depress the brake pedal. If you use the brake pedal, cruise control is cancelled.

With automatic transmission (multi-mode type) —
Even if you downshift from “D” or “5” (fifth range) to “4” (fourth range) in the conventional cruise control mode, engine braking will not be enabled because this mode is not cancelled. To decrease the vehicle’s speed, reset to a slower speed with the cruise control lever or depress the brake pedal. If you use the brake pedal, cruise control is cancelled.

(f) Resuming the preset speed

If the preset speed is cancelled by pulling the lever, by depressing the brake pedal or vehicle stability control activation, pushing the lever up in the “+ RES” direction will restore the speed set prior to cancellation.

However, once the vehicle speed falls below about 40 km/h (25 mph), the preset speed will not be resumed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(g) Conventional cruise control mode failure warning

If there is trouble in the conventional cruise control mode, the “CRUISE” indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes, the master warning light comes on and the alarm sounds, the warning code “E3” will appear on the display.

If a system malfunction is detected when the conventional cruise control mode is in the ready mode or operating, the master warning light comes on, an alarm sounds and the above code appears.

If this code appears, press the “ON-OFF” button to turn the system off and then push it again to turn it on. If the setting still cannot be made or the same code appears again, the system might have malfunctioned. Although there is no problem to continue driving, please contact your Lexus dealer.

ELECTRONICALLY MODULATED AIR SUSPENSION

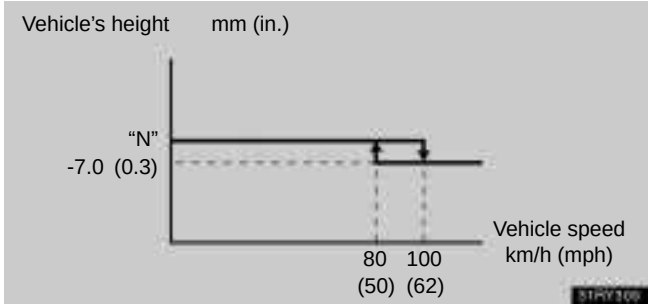
▶ 1 ***Easy access mode switch***
2 ***Height control switch***
3 ***Height select switch***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

This electronically modulated air suspension allows the driver to control the vehicle's height in order to adjust for driving conditions. Select your desired height among the "HI" (high), "N" (normal) and "LO" (low) modes with the height select switch.

You can turn on or off the easy access mode with the easy access mode switch. If the engine is stopped when the easy access mode is on, the vehicle height is lowered automatically.

(a) Vehicle height modes



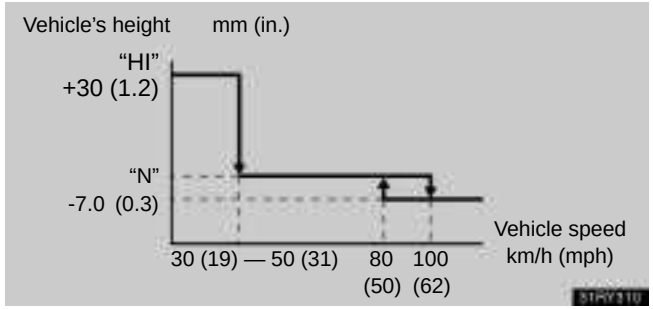
▶ ***"N" (normal) mode***

"N" (normal) mode: The vehicle's height in this mode is standard.

This mode is suitable for ordinary driving.

When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 100 km/h (62 mph), the vehicle's height automatically lowers about 7 mm (0.3 in.) from normal height to provide better stability. When the vehicle speed reduces to under approximately 80 km/h (50 mph), the vehicle's height automatically returns to the normal height.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ ***"HI" (high) mode***

"HI" (high) mode: The vehicle's height is about 30 mm (1.2 in.) higher than the normal height.

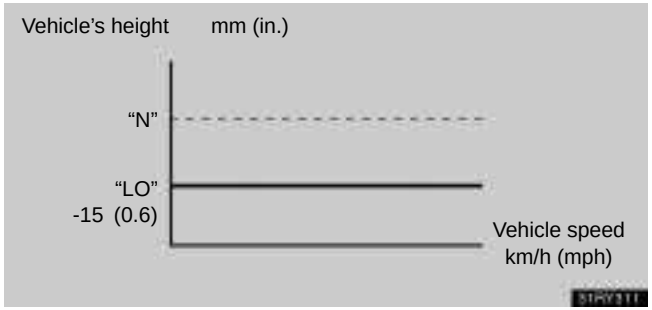
This mode is suitable for driving on bumpy roads.

When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 50 km/h (31 mph) or driving at the speeds of 30 km/h (19 mph) or over for ten seconds total in "HI" mode, "N" mode is automatically selected. Even if the vehicle speed then reduces to under 50 km/h (31 mph), the vehicle's height will not return to "HI" mode.

⚠ CAUTION

The "HI" mode should be used for severe off-road driving conditions only. As the vehicle's center of gravity is higher in this setting, the vehicle may become unstable when turning abruptly, resulting in an unexpected accident.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

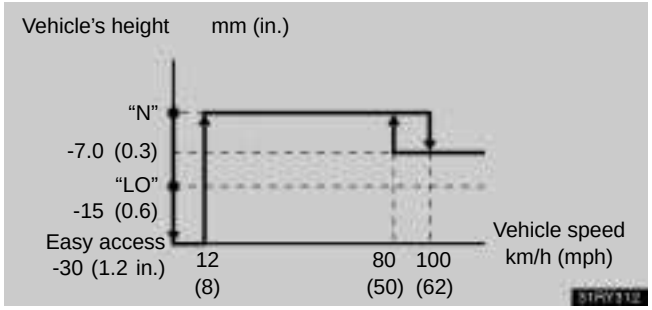


▶ *"LO" (low) mode*

"LO" (low) mode: The vehicle's height is about 15 mm (0.6 in.) lower than the normal height.

This mode is suitable for sporty driving such as on winding mountain roads and high speed driving.

When the engine is turned off and then restarted, the "N" (normal) mode will automatically be selected.



▶ *Easy access mode*

Easy access mode: The vehicle's height is about 30 mm (1.2 in.) lower than the normal height.

This mode allows easy access to the vehicle (getting in and out) and easy loading and unloading operations.

This mode is available when "N" or "LO" mode is selected. When the engine is stopped, easy access mode is automatically selected, and the height adjusted.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

In the following cases, vehicle height is changed to “N” (normal) mode height automatically.

- Vehicle speed exceeds approximately 12 km/h (8 mph).
- The engine is restarted and the easy access mode is canceled.

CAUTION

- **When the engine is stopped in easy access mode, vehicle height is changed quickly. Be careful not to get your head, hands or other parts of your body caught by the lowering underbody of the vehicle.**
- **You must also make sure nobody places his or her head, hands or other parts of their body between the body of the vehicle and tires.**

NOTICE

Be careful when you drive in any place where overhead space is limited and you have selected the easy access mode. When the vehicle begins to move after stopping, “N” (normal) mode will automatically be selected, raising the vehicle’s height, and potentially causing damage to the vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(b) Automatic leveling function

Regardless of the number of occupants or the luggage load, vehicle height in any mode is always adjusted automatically to a fixed height.

(c) Selecting “LO”, “HI” or “N” mode

Selection conditions: To select the vehicle’s height, it is necessary to meet the following conditions.

	“LO” mode	**“N” mode**	**“HI” mode**
At vehicle stoppage	Yes	Yes	Yes
Under approximately 30 km/h (19 mph)	Yes	Yes	Yes
Approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or over	Yes	Yes	No

- The engine is running.
- The height control “OFF” indicator light is off.
- The vehicle is within the speed limitations. Refer to the following table.

Yes = The mode can be selected.
No = The mode cannot be selected.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

In the following cases, the electronically modulated air suspension will not operate.

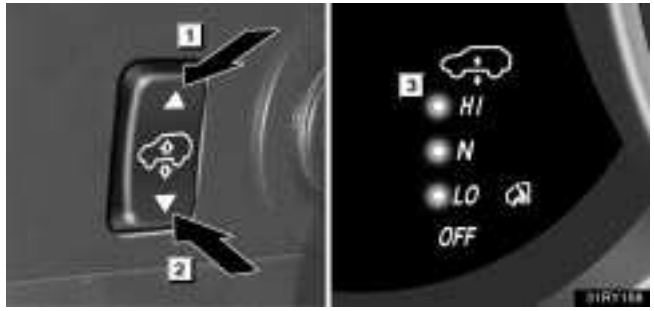
- The underbody of the vehicle has touched the surface of the road.
- The area around the suspension is covered with ice.

The indicator lights change as follows when the electronically modulated air suspension will not operate.

1. The current mode indicator light goes off and the currently selected mode indicator light blinks.

2. The selected mode indicator light goes off. (The vehicle height does not change.) The selected mode indicator light comes on again.

The vehicle's electronically modulated air suspension will not be operable even if the vehicle is moved to a smooth road or the ice is removed. To operate electronically modulated air suspension, turn off the engine and then restart it. The electronically modulated air suspension will operate again.



▶ 1 ***Higher*** 2 ***Lower***
3 ***Height control indicator lights***

Selecting a mode: To select a mode, push either side of the height select switch "▲" (higher) or "▼" (lower).

- **Selecting the "HI" mode**

You can select the "HI" mode when the vehicle's speed is under approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

To change "N" to "HI" mode: Push the height selection switch on the "▲" (higher) side once.

To change "LO" to "HI" mode: Push the height selection switch on the "▲" (higher) side twice.

The "HI" indicator light blinks as the vehicle's height changes. When the vehicle's height reaches the "HI" mode, the indicator light remains on.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Selecting the “N” mode**

To change “HI” to “N” mode: Push the height select switch on the “▼” (lower) side once.

To change “LO” to “N” mode: Push the height select switch on the “▲” (higher) side once.

The “N” indicator light blinks as the vehicle’s height changes. When the vehicle’s height reaches the “N” mode, the indicator light remains on.

Even if the engine stops while the vehicle’s height is being lowered, the operation continues for up to one minute.

- **Selecting the “LO” mode**

To change “N” mode to “LO”: Push the height select switch on the “▼” (lower) side once.

To change “HI” mode to “LO”: Push the height select switch on the “▼” (lower) side twice.

The “LO” indicator light blinks as the vehicle’s height changes. When the vehicle’s height reaches the “LO” mode, the indicator light remains on.

Even if the engine stops while the vehicle’s height is being lowered, the operation continues for up to one minute.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- **Before you lower the vehicle's height with the height select switch, check under the vehicle to make sure nothing that could damage the vehicle or no one who could be injured is there and that the underbody of the vehicle does not touch the ground.**
- **Do not select the "HI" mode when you load cargo on the roof luggage carrier. Otherwise it may result in a loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.**

NOTICE

- ***If the vehicle height is changed frequently, the compressor may overheat, causing the vehicle height adjustment operation to stop.***
- ***After unloading, vehicle height rises slightly. Take sufficient care where overhead space is restricted.***
- ***Do not select "LO" mode when on bumpy roads. If the underbody of the vehicle touches the rugged road surface, the vehicle may be damaged.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(d) Selecting the easy access mode

▶ 1 ***Easy access mode switch***
2 ***Easy access mode indicator light***

To select the easy access mode, push the easy access mode switch. The easy access mode indicator light comes on.

When the engine is stopped, the vehicle height changes automatically to the easy access mode. The indicator light blinks while the height changes. When the vehicle height reaches the easy access mode, the indicator light turns off.

This mode is available when “N” or “LO” mode is selected.

When the engine is restarted in the easy access mode, the easy access mode indicator light blinks. When the vehicle begins to run or you push the height select switch to change the mode, the indicator light will remain on.

When the vehicle’s speed exceeds approximately 12 km/h (8 mph) in the easy access mode, the “N” (normal) mode is automatically selected.

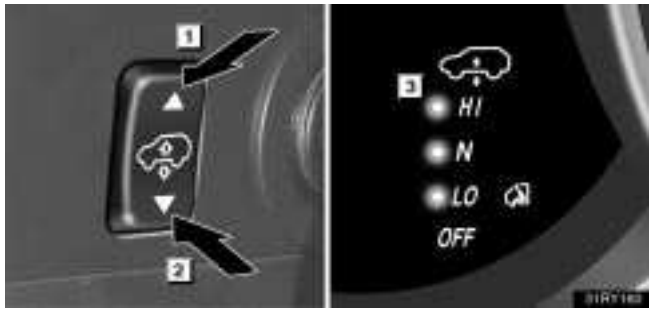
The “N” indicator light blinks while the vehicle height changes.

When the vehicle’s height reaches the “N” mode, the indicator light remains on.

To cancel the easy access mode, push the easy access mode switch once again. The indicator light will turn off.

When the engine is restarted after being stopped, easy access mode is cancelled and “N” (normal) mode is automatically selected.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ 1 *Higher* 2 *Lower*
3 *Height control indicator lights*

- **Changing the mode**

You can change the easy access mode to the “LO”, “N” or “HI” mode when the engine is running.

To change easy access mode to “LO” mode: Push the height select switch on the “▲” (higher) side once.

To change easy access mode to “N”mode: Push the height select switch on the “▲” (higher) side twice.

In the following cases, the vehicle’s height is automatically changed to “N” (normal) mode.

- The vehicle speed exceeds approximately 12 km/h (8 mph).
- The engine is restarted and the easy access mode is canceled.

To change easy access mode to “HI” mode: Push the height select switch on the “▲” (higher) side for three times.

The “LO”, “N” or “HI” indicator light blinks while the vehicle’s height changes. When the vehicle’s height reaches the “LO”, “N” or “HI” mode, the indicator light remains on.

If the vehicle’s height is changed frequently, the raising or lowering will take longer than usual. There is no problem in the electronically modulated air suspension.

⚠ CAUTION

If you select easy access mode, check under the vehicle to make sure nothing that could damage the vehicle or no one who could be injured is there and that the underbody of the vehicle does not touch the ground before the engine is stopped.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(e) Turning off the electronically modulated air suspension

▶ 1 *Height control switch*
2 *Height control "OFF" indicator light*

To turn off the electronically modulated air suspension with the vehicle stopped, push the height control switch. The height control "OFF" indicator light comes on and the vehicle height is fixed in the same mode as was last selected.

This status is maintained in the system even after the engine is stopped.

If you push the switch again, the height control "OFF" indicator light goes out and the electronically modulated air suspension is turned on.

When the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph), the height control "OFF" indicator light goes out and the electronically modulated air suspension turns on automatically.

⚠ CAUTION

- **If you drive through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the firmness of the bottom of the river bed then put the vehicle height into "HI" mode with the height select switch and turn off the electronically modulated air suspension by pushing the height control switch. Drive your vehicle at 30 km/h (19 mph) or slower and avoid deep water.**
- **When jacking up, installing tire chains or tying your vehicle with chains or wires for transportation by a flat bed, be sure to turn off the electronically modulated air suspension with the height control switch and stop the engine. Otherwise, the automatic leveling function may cause the vehicle's height to change, resulting in an unexpected accident.**
- **If your vehicle must be towed, put the vehicle height in the "N" mode and turn off the electronically modulated air suspension. Otherwise, the automatic leveling function may cause the vehicle's height to change, resulting in an unexpected accident.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **If your vehicle gets ditched, turn off the electronically modulated air suspension with the height control switch. Otherwise, the automatic leveling function may cause the vehicle height to change, possibly resulting in further damage to the vehicle.**
- **When disconnecting a trailer, put the vehicle height in the "LO" mode and push the height control switch to turn off the electronically modulated air suspension. Otherwise, the vehicle height may be changed in the automatic leveling function, resulting in unexpected accident.**

(f) Height control failure warning

▶ 1 ***Height control indicator lights***
2 ***Height control "OFF" indicator light***
3 ***Easy access mode indicator light***

When the ignition switch is turned on, all the indicator lights come on. Only the indicator light showing the present mode remains on and all other lights go off after a few seconds. This means the system is operating correctly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

In the following cases, there is a problem somewhere in the electronically modulated air suspension, in which case the “N” mode is automatically selected. Although there is no problem to continue driving normally, have the electronically modulated air suspension checked by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

- The height control “OFF” indicator light does not come on when the ignition switch is turned on.
- The height control “OFF” indicator light blinks.

(g) Operating noise of the electronically modulated air suspension

You may hear an operating noise in the following cases. There is no problem in the electronically modulated air suspension.

- Selecting vehicle height with the height select switch
- Adjusting vehicle height according to the number of occupants or the luggage load
- Changing vehicle height by selecting the easy access mode when the engine is stopped
- Changing vehicle height by selecting the easy access mode when the vehicle speed exceeds 12 km/h (8 mph)
- Changing the vehicle height by selecting the “HI” mode when the vehicle speed exceeds 50 km/h (31 mph) or driving at a speed of 30 km/h (19 mph) for 10 seconds or more
- Lowering the vehicle’s height automatically when the vehicle is moving at high speed
- Returning the vehicle height after high speed driving

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(h) Parking and stopping tips

If you immediately stop the engine to park the vehicle after off-road driving, the vehicle height is lowered slightly as the vehicle becomes cool. When parking, make sure there is nothing that will be in contact with the underbody of the vehicle. If the “HI” (high) mode is selected when you start the engine, the vehicle returns to the “HI” (high) height. If the “LO” (low) or “N” (normal) mode is selected when you start the engine, the vehicle height is change to “N” (normal) mode.

If you park the vehicle for a long time, the vehicle height may be gradually lowered. When parking for a long time, make sure there is nothing that will be in contact with the underbody of the vehicle. If the “HI” (high) mode is selected when you start the engine, the vehicle returns to the “HI” (high) height. If the “LO” (low) or “N” (normal) mode is selected when you start the engine, the vehicle height is change to “N” (normal) mode.

If you stop the engine, the vehicle height may change in accordance with the change in the temperature. When you start the engine, the vehicle returns to the “HI” (high) height. If the “LO” (low) or “N” (normal) mode is selected when you start the engine, the vehicle height is change to “N” (normal) mode.

TRACTION CONTROL SYSTEM

(two-wheel drive models)

The traction control system automatically helps prevent the spinning of front wheels when the vehicle is started or accelerated on slippery road surfaces.

When the ignition key is turned to “ON”, the system automatically turns on.

⚠ CAUTION

Under certain slippery road conditions, full traction of the vehicle and power against front wheels cannot be maintained, even though the traction control system is in operation. Do not drive the vehicle under any speed or maneuvering conditions which may cause the vehicle to lose traction control. In situations where the road surface is covered with ice or snow, your vehicle should be fitted with snow tires or tire chains. Always drive at an appropriate and cautious speed for the present road conditions.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Normal driving mode

▶ ***Slip indicator light***

Leave the system on during the ordinary driving so that it can operate when needed.

You may hear a sound in the engine compartment for a few seconds just after the vehicle begins to move. This means that the traction control system is in the self-check mode, but does not indicate a malfunction.

When the traction control system is operating, the following conditions occur:

- The system controls the spinning of the front wheels. At this time, the slip indicator light blinks.
- You may feel vibration or noise in your vehicle, caused by operation of the brakes. This indicates the system is functioning properly.

The slip indicator light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition key is turned to “ON”. If the indicator light does not come on when the ignition is turned on, contact your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Traction control off mode

If your wheels get stuck in a ditch when you are driving on a severe off road and sand, turn off the traction control system. This system that controls engine performance interferes with the process of freeing your wheels.

To turn off: Push “TRAC OFF” switch.

The “TRAC OFF” indicator light will come on.

The vehicle stability control system is always activated, even if the traction control system is turned off.

To turn on: Push “TRAC OFF” switch once again.

The “TRAC OFF” indicator light will go off.

“TRAC OFF” indicator light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition key is turned to “ON”. It will come on again when you push the “TRAC OFF” switch to turn off the system.

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer:

- The indicator light does not come on when the ignition key is turned to “ON”.
- The indicator light remains on after the ignition is turned on.
- The indicator light comes on with the normal driving mode while driving.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

“VSC” warning light

This light warns that there is a problem somewhere in the vehicle stability control system or traction control system.

The light will come on when the ignition key is turned to “ON” and will go off after a few seconds.

If the light comes on while driving, the vehicle stability control system and traction control system do not work. However, as conventional braking operates when applied, there is no problem to continue your driving.

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer:

- The warning light does not come on after the ignition key is turned to “ON”.
- The warning light remains on after the ignition key is turned to “ON”.
- The warning light comes on while driving.

The “TRAC OFF” indicator light will come on when the “VSC” warning light comes on even if the “TRAC OFF” switch is not pushed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

TRACTION CONTROL SYSTEM

(four-wheel drive modes)

The traction control system automatically helps prevent the spinning of 4 wheels when the vehicle is started or accelerated on slippery road surfaces.

When the ignition key is turned to “ON”, the system automatically turns on.

⚠ CAUTION

Under certain slippery road conditions, full traction of the vehicle and power against 4 wheels cannot be maintained, even though the traction control system is in operation. Do not drive the vehicle under any speed or maneuvering conditions which may cause the vehicle to lose traction control. In situations where the road surface is covered with ice or snow, your vehicle should be fitted with snow tires or tire chains. Always drive at an appropriate and cautious speed for the present road conditions.

Normal driving mode

▶ ***Slip indicator light***

Leave the system on during the ordinary driving so that it can operate when needed.

You may hear a sound in the engine compartment for a few seconds just after the vehicle begins to move. This means that the traction control system is in the self-check mode, but does not indicate a malfunction.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When the traction control system is operating, the following conditions occur:

- The system controls the spinning of the 4 wheels. At this time, the slip indicator light blinks.
- You may feel vibration or noise in your vehicle, caused by operation of the brakes. This indicates the system is functioning properly.

The slip indicator light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition key is turned to “ON”. If the indicator light does not come on when the ignition is turned on, contact your Lexus dealer.

“VSC” warning light

This light warns that there is a problem somewhere in the vehicle stability control system or traction control system.

The light will come on when the ignition key is turned to “ON” and will go off after a few seconds.

If the light comes on while driving, the vehicle stability control system and traction control system do not work. However, as conventional braking operates when applied, there is no problem to continue your driving.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer:

- The warning light does not come on after the ignition key is turned to “ON”.
- The warning light remains on after the ignition key is turned to “ON”.
- The warning light comes on while driving.

VEHICLE STABILITY CONTROL SYSTEM

The vehicle stability control system helps provide comprehensive control of the systems such as anti-lock brake system, traction control, engine control, etc. This system automatically controls the brakes and engine to help prevent the vehicle from skidding when cornering on a slippery road surface or operating steering wheel abruptly.

This system activates when the vehicle speed is about more than 15 km/h (9 mph).

You may hear a sound in the engine compartment for a few seconds just after the vehicle begins to move. This means that the system is in the self-check mode, but does not indicate a malfunction.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not rely excessively on the vehicle stability control system. Even if the vehicle stability control system is operating, you must always drive carefully and attentively to avoid serious injury. Reckless driving will result in an unexpected accident. If the slip indicator light blinks, sounding an alarm, special care should be taken while driving.**
- **Only use tires of specified size. The size, manufacture, brand and tread pattern for all 4 tires should be the same. If you use the tires other than specified, or different type or size, the vehicle stability control system may not function correctly. When replacing the tires or wheels, contact your Lexus dealer.**
- **In situations where the road surface is covered with ice or snow, your vehicle should be fitted with snow tires or tire chains.**

▶ ***Slip indicator light***

If the vehicle is going to skid during driving, the slip indicator light blinks and an alarm sounds intermittently. Special care should be taken while driving.

The slip indicator light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition key is turned to “ON”. If the indicator light does not come on when the ignition is turned on, contact your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

“VSC” warning light

This light warns that there is a problem somewhere in the vehicle stability control system or traction control system.

The light will come on when the ignition key is turned to “ON” and will go off after a few seconds.

If the light comes on while driving, the vehicle stability control system and traction control system do not work. However, as conventional braking operates when applied, there is no problem to continue your driving.

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer:

- The warning light does not come on after the ignition key is turned to “ON”.
- The warning light remains on after the ignition key is turned to “ON”.
- The warning light comes on while driving.

Two-wheel drive models only — The “TRAC OFF” indicator light will come on when the “VSC” warning light comes on even if the “TRAC OFF” switch is not pushed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

BRAKE SYSTEM

The tandem master cylinder brake system is a hydraulic system with two separate sub-systems. If either sub-system should fail, the other will still work. However, the pedal will be harder to press, and your stopping distance will increase. Also, the brake system warning light may come on.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not drive your vehicle with only a single brake system. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

Brake booster

The brake booster uses engine vacuum to power-assist the brakes. If the engine should quit while you are driving, you can bring the vehicle to a stop with normal pedal pressure. There is enough reserved vacuum for one or two stops but no more!

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls. Each push on the pedal uses up your reserved vacuum.**
- **Even if the power assist is completely lost, the brakes will still work. But you will have to push the pedal hard, much harder than normal. And your braking distance will increase.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Anti-lock brake system

The anti-lock brake system is designed to help prevent lock-up of the wheels during a sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces. This assists in providing directional stability and steering performance of the vehicle under these circumstances.

Effective way to press the ABS brake pedal: When the anti-lock brake system function is in action, you may feel the brake pedal pulsating and hear a noise. In this situation, to let the anti-lock brake system work for you, just hold the brake pedal down more firmly. Do not pump the brake in a panic stop. This will result in reduced braking performance.

The anti-lock brake system becomes operative after the vehicle has accelerated to a speed in excess of approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). It stops operating when the vehicle decelerates to a speed below approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

Depressing the brake pedal on slippery road surfaces such as on a manhole cover, a steel plate at a construction site, joints in a bridge, etc. on a rainy day tends to activate the anti-lock brake system.

You may hear a click or motor sound in the engine compartment for a few seconds just after the vehicle begins to move. This means that the anti-lock brake system is in the self-check mode, and does not indicate a malfunction.

When the anti-lock brake system is activated, the following conditions may occur. They do not indicate a malfunction of the system:

- You may hear the anti-lock brake system operating and feel the brake pedal pulsating and the vibrations of the vehicle body and steering wheel. You may also hear the motor sound in the engine compartment even after the vehicle is stopped.
- At the end of the anti-lock brake system activation, the brake pedal may move a little forward.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not overestimate the anti-lock brake system: Although the anti-lock brake system assists in providing vehicle control, it is still important to drive with all due care and maintain a moderate speed and safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, because there are limits to the vehicle stability and effectiveness of steering wheel operation even with the anti-lock brake system on.

If tire grip performance exceeds its capability, or if hydroplaning occurs during high speed driving in the rain, the anti-lock brake system does not provide vehicle control.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Anti-lock brake system is not designed to shorten the stopping distance: Always drive at a moderate speed and maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you. Compared with vehicles without an anti-lock brake system, your vehicle may require a longer stopping distance in the following cases:

- **Driving on rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **Driving with tire chains installed.**
- **Driving over the steps such as the joints on the road.**
- **Driving on roads where the road surface is pitted or has other differences in surface height.**

Install all 4 tires of specified size at appropriate pressure: The anti-lock brake system detects vehicle speeds using the speed sensors for respective wheels' turning speeds. The use of tires other than specified may fail to detect the accurate turning speed resulting in a longer stopping distance.

"ABS" warning light

▶ 1 *U.S.A.* 2 *Canada*

The light comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. If the anti-lock brake system and the brake assist system work properly, the light turns off after a few seconds. Thereafter, if either of the systems malfunctions, the light comes on again.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system, the brake assist system, the traction control system and the vehicle stability control system do not operate, but the brake system still operates conventionally.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system does not operate so that the wheels could lock up during a sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction somewhere in the components monitored by the warning light system. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

- The light does not come on when the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position, or remains on.
- The light comes on while you are driving.

A warning light turning on briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.

⚠ CAUTION

If the “ABS” warning light remains on together with the brake system warning light, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

In this case, not only the anti-lock brake system will fail but also the vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking.

Drum-in-disc type parking brake system

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drums are replaced.

Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding-down.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Brake assist system

If you slam the brakes on such as in an emergency or apply the brakes more firmly than usual such as when descending the hill with the designated number of occupants in the vehicle, the brake assist system provides more powerful braking.

If you slam the brakes on or apply the brakes more firmly, more powerful braking will be applied. At this time, you may hear a sound in the engine compartment and feel the vibrations of the brake pedal. This does not indicate a malfunction.

The brake assist system becomes operative after the vehicle has accelerated to a speed in excess of approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). It stops operating when the vehicle decelerates to a speed below approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

For an explanation of this system's warning light, see "ABS warning light" on page 95 or 510.

TIRE PRESSURE WARNING SYSTEM

The tire pressure warning system is designed to provide warning when tire inflation pressure is critically low while the vehicle is moving. The low tire pressure warning light comes on to inform you that such low tire pressure may hamper driving.

This system is not designed to operate when the vehicle is stopped. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly. The recommended cold tire inflation pressure, tire size and the vehicle capacity weight are on the tire and loading information label. (For instructions, see "Checking tire inflation pressure" on page 657.)

Installed tires should be of the specified size. They should be of the same size and construction. If tires other than the specified size are used, or if tires of different sizes or constructions are mixed, the tire pressure warning system will not function properly.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Low tire pressure warning light

This light comes on when the ignition key is turned to the “ON” position. It goes off after a few seconds. This indicates that the tire pressure warning system is functioning properly.

If the low tire pressure warning light comes on or blinks while driving, do the following.

- **If the warning light comes on:** The tire pressure is critically low. Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level as soon as possible. (See “Tires and wheels” on page 651.)

Once the ignition switch is turned off, the warning light also goes off. If the light comes on again when the vehicle is started after adjusting tire inflation pressure to the specified level, have the system checked at your Lexus dealer.

If you have a flat tire, replace it with the spare tire. For details, see “If you have a flat tire” on page 556.

- **If the warning light blinks every 0.5 seconds:** The low tire pressure warning system may be malfunctioning. Contact your Lexus dealer.
- **If the warning light blinks every 0.25 seconds:** The low tire pressure warning system needs to be initialized. Reset the system with the tire pressure warning system reset switch. (To reset the system, see “Tire pressure warning system reset switch”.)

The tire pressure warning system does not function properly under certain circumstances. In the following cases, the low tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

- A compact spare tire, snow tires, or tire chains are used.
- The tire inflation pressure is excessively higher than specified, or tire inflation pressure suddenly drops due to bursting or other causes.
- The vehicle is driven on a slippery road surface such as rough or frozen roads.
- The vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph) or more than 100 km/h (62 mph), and the driving duration is less than 5 minutes.
- The tires differ in tread pattern or manufacturer.
- The tires are not the specified size.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- The tread wear is very different among the installed tires.
- Rapid acceleration/deceleration or sharp turns is continue.
- Towing a trailer.
- The loading is over the limit or imbalanced.
- Initialization was not performed correctly after replacing or rotating tires or wheels.

⚠ CAUTION

When the tire pressure warning light comes on, observe the following instructions:

- **Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level as soon as possible.**
- **Avoid abrupt steering wheel maneuvering and braking when the tire pressure warning light comes on. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes, causing death or serious injury.**

Tire pressure warning system reset switch

The tire pressure warning system need to be initialized in the following conditions:

- **When the low tire pressure warning light blinks every 0.25 seconds**
- **After replacing or rotating tires or wheels**

When initializing the system, the present tire condition is stored as a standard.

To initialize the system, perform the following:

1. Park the vehicle at a safe place and apply the parking brake. Stop the engine.
2. Adjust the pressure of all the installed tires to the specified level. (See “Tires and wheels” on page 651.)
3. Turn the ignition key to “ON”.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

4. With the vehicle stopped, push the reset switch on the left lower instrument panel and hold it until the low tire pressure warning light blinks three times.

Initialization is completed after driving at the speeds of 30 km/h (19 mph) or over for about a few hours total, when the tire pressure warning system detects the normal tire pressure. If the following driving conditions are satisfied, initialization will be completed in about one hour.

- Vehicle speed varies between 30 km/h (19 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph)
- Normal road surface

When the warning light blinks every 0.25 seconds while driving, you may be unable to reset the system. In this case, set the system again according to the above procedure.

Do not push the reset switch without adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the low tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

If you push the reset switch while the vehicle is moving, initialization is not performed.

If the low tire pressure warning light does not blink when you push and hold the reset switch, have the low pressure warning system checked at your Lexus dealer.

BRAKE PAD WEAR LIMIT INDICATORS

The brake pad wear limit indicators on your disc brakes give a warning noise when the brake pads are worn to the extent that replacement is required.

If you hear a squealing or scraping noise while driving, have the brake pads checked and replaced by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Expensive rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 3 – 2

STARTING AND DRIVING

Driving tips

Off-road vehicle precautions 518
Break-in period 519
Operation in foreign countries 520
Tips for driving in various conditionss 520
Off-road driving precautions 523
Winter driving tips 526
Dinghy towing 528
Trailer towing 529
How to save fuel and make your vehicle last longer 543
Vehicle load limits 545
Cargo and luggage 546

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

OFF-ROAD VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity to make it capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications. Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems. It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause rollover.

⚠ CAUTION

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- **In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible. Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury.**
- **Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.**
- **Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.**
- **Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.**

BREAK-IN PERIOD

Drive gently and avoid high speeds.

You need not follow a break-in schedule with your new Lexus. But following a few simple tips for the first 1600 km (1000 miles) can add to the future economy and long life of your vehicle:

- Avoid full throttle acceleration when starting and driving.
- Avoid racing the engine.
- Try to avoid hard stops during the first 300 km (200 miles).
- Do not drive for a long time at any single speed, either fast or slow.
- Do not tow a trailer during the first 800 km (500 miles).

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

OPERATION IN FOREIGN COUNTRIES

If you plan to drive your Lexus in another country...

First, comply with the vehicle registration laws.

Second, confirm the availability of the correct fuel (unleaded and minimum octane rating).

TIPS FOR DRIVING IN VARIOUS CONDITIONS

- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. This will allow you much better control.
- Drive slowly onto curbs and, if possible, at a right angle. Avoid driving onto high, sharp-edged objects and other road hazards. Failure to do so can lead to severe tire damage such as a tire burst.

  Drive slowly when passing over bumps or travelling on a bumpy road. Otherwise, the impact could cause severe damage to the tires and/or wheels.
- When parking on a hill, turn the front wheels until they touch the curb so that the vehicle will not roll. Apply the parking brake, and place the transmission in “P”. If necessary, block the wheels.
- Washing your vehicle or driving through deep water may get the brakes wet. To see whether they are wet, check that there is no traffic near you and then press the pedal lightly. If you do not feel a normal braking force, the brakes are probably wet. To dry them, drive the vehicle cautiously while lightly pressing the brake pedal with the parking brake applied. If they still do not work safely, pull to the side of the road and call a Lexus dealer for assistance.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- **Before driving off, make sure the parking brake is fully released and that the parking brake reminder light is off.**
- **Do not leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running.**
- **Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving. It can cause dangerous overheating, needless wear, and poor fuel economy.**
- **To drive down a long or steep hill, reduce your speed and downshift. Remember, if you ride the brakes excessively, they may overheat and not work properly. See page 440 or 451.**
- **Be careful when accelerating, upshifting, downshifting or braking on a slippery surface. The abrupt change in engine speed, such as sudden acceleration or engine braking, could cause the vehicle to spin or skid.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 140 km/h (85 mph) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 140 km/h (85 mph) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.**
- **Do not continue normal driving when the brakes are wet. If they are wet, your vehicle will require a longer stopping distance, and it may pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Also, the parking brake will not hold the vehicle securely.**
- **Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension: If you drive through water, such as when crossing swallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the river bed of firmness, put the vehicle height in the "HI" (high) mode with the height select switch and then turn off the electronically modulated air suspension by pushing the height control switch. Drive your vehicle at 30 km/h (19 mph) or lower speed.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

OFF-ROAD DRIVING PRECAUTIONS

When driving your vehicle off-road, please observe the following precautions to ensure your driving enjoyment and to help prevent the closure of areas to off-road vehicles.

a. Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.

b. Respect private property. Get owner's permission before entering private property.

c. Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.

d. Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

For owners in U.S. mainland, Hawaii and Puerto Rico:

To obtain additional information pertaining to driving your vehicle off-road, consult the following organizations.

- State and Local Parks and Recreation Departments
- State Motor Vehicle Bureau
- Recreational Vehicle Clubs
- U.S. Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management

⚠ CAUTION

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- **Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.**
- **Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.**
- **Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped on the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.**
- **In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving.**
- **When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- *If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the river bed for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.*
- *Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.*

  Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.

  Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differentials, transmission and transfer case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.
- *Sand and mud that has accumulated in brake drums and around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.*
- *Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water. For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance".*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

WINTER DRIVING TIPS

Make sure your coolant is properly protected against freezing.

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non- silicate, non- amine, non- nitrite, and non- borate coolant with long- life hybrid organic acid technology.

See “Checking the engine coolant level” on page 643 for details of coolant type selection.

“Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre- mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. This coolant provides protection down to about -35°C (-31°F).

NOTICE
Do not use plain water alone.

Check the condition of the battery and cables.

Cold temperatures reduce the capacity of any battery, so it must be in top shape to provide enough power for winter starting. Page 691 tells you how to visually inspect the battery. Your Lexus dealer and most service stations will be pleased to check the battery charge level.

Make sure the engine oil viscosity is suitable for the cold weather.

See page 642 for recommended viscosity. Leaving a heavy summer oil in your vehicle during winter months may cause harder starting. If you are not sure about which oil to use, call your Lexus dealer — they will be pleased to help.

Check the electronic ignition system for loose connections or obvious damage.

Keep the door locks from freezing.

Squirt lock de-icer or glycerine into the locks to keep them from freezing.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Use a washer fluid containing an antifreeze solution.

This product is available at your Lexus dealer and most auto parts stores. Follow the manufacturer's directions for how much to mix with water.

NOTICE
Do not use engine antifreeze or any other substitute because it may damage your vehicle's paint.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not use your parking brake when there is a possibility it could freeze.

When parking, put the transmission into “P” and block the rear wheels. Do not use the parking brake, or snow or water accumulated in and around the parking brake mechanism may freeze the parking brake, making it hard to release.

Keep ice and snow from accumulating under the fenders.

Ice and snow built up under your fenders can make steering difficult. During bad winter driving, stop and check under the fenders occasionally.

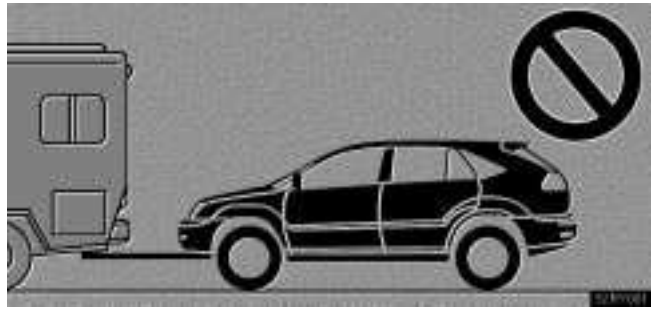
Depending on where you are driving, we recommend you carry some emergency equipment.

Some of the things you might put in the vehicle are tire chains, window scraper, bag of sand or salt, flares, small shovel, jumper cables, etc.

NOTICE

Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground. This may cause serious damage to your vehicle.

DINGHY TOWING



Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with four wheels on the ground) behind a motorhome.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

TRAILER TOWING

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger-and-load carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer will have an adverse effect on handling, performance, braking, durability and driving economy (fuel consumption, etc.). Your safety and satisfaction depend on the proper use of correct equipment and cautious driving habits. For your safety and the safety of others, you must not overload your vehicle or trailer. Lexus warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes. Ask your local Lexus dealer for further details before towing.

⚠ CAUTION

Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension: When disconnecting a trailer, put the vehicle height in the “LO” mode and push the height control switch to turn off the electronically modulated air suspension. Otherwise, the vehicle height may be changed in the automatic leveling function, resulting in unexpected accident. For details see “Electronically modulated air suspension” on page 485.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

When towing a trailer, be sure to consult your Lexus dealer for further information on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.

DEALER E-PROCESS

Weight limits

Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.

The total trailer weight and tongue load can be measured with platform scales found at a highway weighing station, building supply company, trucking company, junk yard, etc.

▶ ***Certification label***

⚠ CAUTION

- **The total trailer weight (trailer weight plus its cargo load) must not exceed the following. Exceeding this weight is dangerous.**
  Without towing package 907 kg (2000 lb.)
  With towing package 1588 kg (3500 lb.)
- **If towing a trailer and cargo weighing over 907 kg (2000 lb.), Lexus recommends to use a sway control device with sufficient capacity. The gross combination weight (sum of your vehicle weight plus its load and the total trailer weight) must not exceed the following.**
  Without towing package 3286 kg (7245 lb.)
  With towing package 3966 kg (8745 lb.)
- **Trailer hitch assemblies have different weight capacities established by the hitch manufacturer. Even though the vehicle may be physically capable of towing a higher weight, the operator must determine the maximum weight rating of the particular hitch assembly and never exceed the maximum weight rating specified for the trailer hitch. Exceeding the maximum weight rating set by the trailer hitch manufacturer can cause an accident resulting in serious personal injuries.**

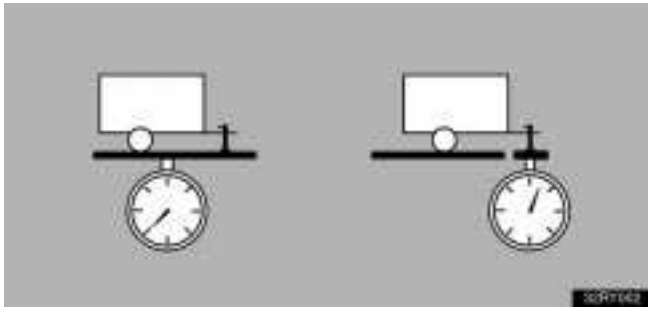
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **The gross vehicle weight must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) indicated on the Certification Label. The gross vehicle weight is the sum weight of the unloaded vehicle, driver, passengers, luggage, hitch and trailer tongue load. It also includes the weight of any special equipment installed on your vehicle.**
- **The load on either the front or rear axle resulting from distribution of the gross vehicle weight on both axles must not exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) listed on the Certification Label.**

- **The trailer cargo load should be distributed so that the tongue load is 9 to 11% of the total trailer weight, not exceeding the maximum of 158 kg (350 lb.).**

$$\frac{\text{Tongue load}}{\text{Total trailer weight}} \times 100 = 9 \text{ to } 11\%$$

- **Never load the trailer with more weight in the back than in the front. About 60% of the trailer load should be in the front half of the trailer and the remaining 40% in the rear.**



▶ *Total trailer weight* ▶ *Tongue load*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tow hitch receiver

The tow hitch receiver is installed under the rear bumper.

⚠ CAUTION

A tow hitch receiver is rated for weight carrying towing only up to 1588 kg (3500 lbs.) Only use this tow hitch receiver on your vehicle. Do not use this tow hitch receiver on any other vehicle.

Hitches

- If you wish to install a trailer hitch, your Lexus dealer should be consulted.
- Use only a hitch which is recommended by Lexus dealer and conforms to the total trailer weight requirement.
- Follow the directions supplied by the hitch manufacturer. Lubricate the hitch ball with a light coat of grease.
- Lexus recommends removing the trailer hitch whenever you are not towing a trailer to reduce the possibility of additional damage caused by the hitch if your vehicle is struck from behind. After removing the hitch, seal any mounting holes in the vehicle body to prevent entry of pollutants such as exhaust fumes, dirt, water, etc.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- ***Install the trailer hitch using only the position recommended by your Lexus dealer. Do not install the trailer hitch on the bumper; this may cause body damage.***
- ***Do not use axle-mounted hitches as they can cause damage to the axle housing, wheel bearings, wheels or tires.***

DEALER E-PROCESS

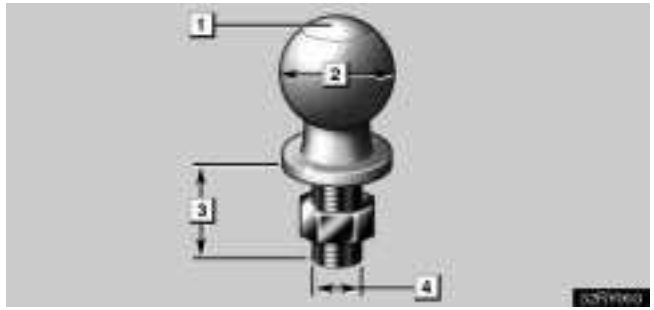
Trailer ball

Follow these easy steps to properly determine the correct trailer ball for your application:

1. Determine the correct trailer ball size for the trailer coupler. Most couplers are stamped with the required trailer ball size. The sizes you will most likely find stamped on the coupler are:

Trailer class	Typical Trailer Ball Size
III	2 5/16 in.
II	2 in.
I	1 7/8 in.

2. Select the appropriate trailer ball to match or exceed the gross trailer weight rating of the trailer. The trailer ball load rating should be printed on the top of the ball.



▶ 1 ***Trailer ball load rating***
2 ***Ball diameter***
3 ***Shank length***
4 ***Shank diameter***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

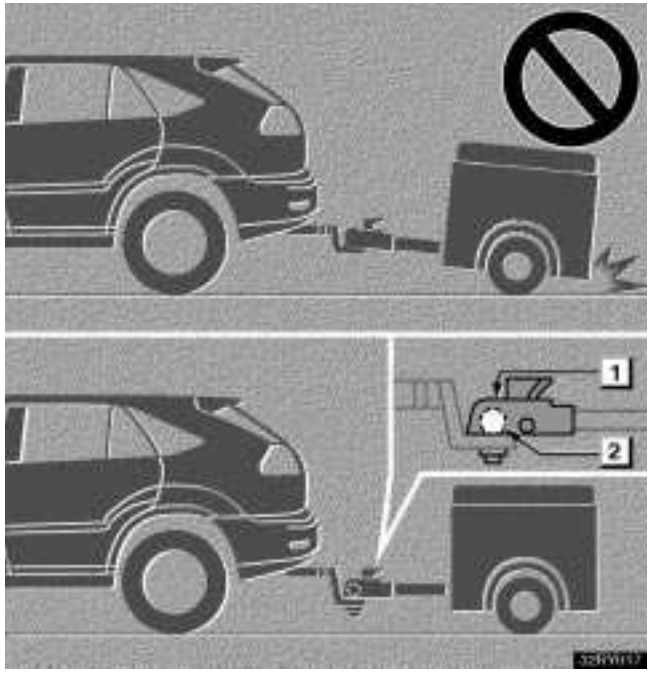
3. When mounted in the ball mount, the threaded ball shank must protrude beyond the bottom of the lock washer and nut at least 2 threads. The trailer ball shank must be matched to the ball mount hole diameter size.

NOTICE
Only use a ball mount attachment specified for the Lexus RX330.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Matching trailer ball height to trailer coupler height

No matter which class of tow hitch applies, for a safe trailer hookup, the trailer ball setup on must be the proper height for the coupler on the trailer.



▶ 1 *Coupler* 2 *Trailer ball*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Brakes and safety chains

- **Lexus recommends trailers with brakes that conform to any applicable federal and state/provincial regulations.**
- **A safety chain must always be used between the towing vehicle and the trailer. Leave sufficient slack in the chain for turns. The chain should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent the tongue from dropping to the ground in case it becomes damaged or separated. For correct safety chain procedures, follow the hitch or trailer manufacturer's recommendations.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **If the total trailer weight exceeds 450 kg (1000 lb.), trailer brakes are required.**
- **Never tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system as it will lower its braking effectiveness.**
- **Never tow a trailer without using a safety chain securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle. If damage occurs to the coupling unit or hitch ball, there is possible danger of the trailer wandering over into another lane.**

Tires

- Ensure that your vehicle's tires are properly inflated. Adjust the tire pressure to the recommended cold tire pressure indicated below:

  Tire pressure, kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)

Front	210 (2.1, 30)
Rear	210 (2.1, 30)

- The trailer tires should be inflated to the pressure recommended by the trailer manufacturer in respect to the total trailer weight.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Trailer lights

▶ ***Socket for trailer lights***

Your vehicle is equipped with a wire harness stored in the rear end underbody. Models with tow hitch receiver are fitted with a socket for trailer lights under the rear bumper. Use either of them to connect and operate the trailer lights. However, the trailer lights must comply with federal, state/provincial and local regulations. See your local recreational vehicle dealer or rental agency for the correct type of wiring and relays for your trailer. Check for correct operation of the turn signals and stop lights each time you hitch up. Direct splicing may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction of your lights.

Break-in schedule

- Lexus recommends that you do not tow a trailer with a new vehicle or a vehicle with any new power train component (engine, transmission, differential, wheel bearing, etc.) for the first 800 km (500 miles) of driving.

Maintenance

- If you tow a trailer, your vehicle will require more frequent maintenance due to the additional load. For this information, please refer to the scheduled maintenance information in the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance".
- Retighten all fixing bolts of the towing ball and bracket after approximately 1000 km (600 miles) of trailer driving.

Connecting a trailer (models with electronically modulated air suspension)

Stop your vehicle and a trailer in line and perform the following:

1. Put the electronically modulated air suspension in the "LO" mode. Turn the ignition switch off or push the height control switch to turn off the electronically modulated air suspension.
2. Connect a trailer.
3. Turn the ignition switch on or push the height control switch to turn on the electronically modulated air suspension. Select the "N" (normal) mode with the height select switch.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Disconnecting a trailer (models with electronically modulated air suspension)

Stop your vehicle and trailer so they are in line and perform the following:

1. Place the electronically modulated air suspension in “LO” mode. (Make sure the vehicle height is in “LO” mode by pushing the height select switch on the “▼” (lower) side.)

2. Push the height control switch to turn off the electronically modulated air suspension. The height control “OFF” indicator light will come on.

3. Turn the ignition switch off.

4. Set the supporting leg of the trailer on the ground and raise the hitch by 100 mm (4 in.).

5. Turn the ignition switch on.

6. Push the height control switch to turn on the electronically modulated air suspension. The height control “OFF” indicator will go out.

7. Wait for about one minute until vehicle height is stabilized by the automatic leveling function.

8. Make sure the hitch is disconnected. If not, raise the hitch higher and repeat steps 2 through 7.

Pre-towing safety check

- Check that your vehicle remains level when a loaded or unloaded trailer is hitched. Do not drive if the vehicle has an abnormal nose-up or nose-down condition, and check for improper tongue load, overload, worn suspension or other possible causes.
- Make sure the trailer cargo is securely loaded so that it cannot shift.
- Check that your rear view mirrors conform to any federal, state/provincial or local regulations. If they do not, install required rear view mirrors appropriate for towing purposes.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Trailer towing tips

When towing a trailer, your vehicle will handle differently than when not towing. The three main causes of vehicle-trailer accidents are driver error, excessive speed and improper trailer loading. Keep these in mind when towing:

- Before starting out, check the operation of the lights and all vehicle-trailer connections. After driving a short distance, stop and recheck the lights and connections. Practice turning, stopping and backing with a trailer in an area away from traffic until you learn the feel.
- Backing with a trailer is difficult and requires practice. Grip the bottom of the steering wheel and move your hand to the left to move the trailer to the left. Move your hand to the right to move the trailer to the right. (This procedure is generally opposite to that when backing without a trailer.) Also, just turn the steering wheel a little at a time, avoiding sharp or prolonged turning. Have someone guide you when backing to reduce the risk of an accident.
- Because stopping distance may be increased, vehicle-to-vehicle distance should be increased when towing a trailer. For each 16 km/h (10 mph) of speed, allow at least one vehicle and trailer length between you and the vehicle ahead. Avoid sudden braking as you may skid, resulting in jackknifing and loss of control. This is especially true on wet or slippery surfaces.
- Avoid jerky starts or sudden acceleration.
- Avoid jerky steering and sharp turns. The trailer could hit your vehicle in a tight turn. Slow down before making a turn to avoid the need of sudden braking.
- Remember that when making a turn, the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. Therefore, compensate for this by making a larger than normal turning radius with your vehicle.
- Crosswinds and rough roads will adversely affect handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing sway. Pay attention to the rear from time to time to prepare yourself for being passed by large trucks or buses, which may cause your vehicle and trailer to sway. If swaying happens, firmly grip the steering wheel and reduce speed immediately but gradually. Never increase speed. If it is necessary to reduce speed, brake slowly. Steer straight ahead. If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer will stabilize.
- Be careful when passing other vehicles. Passing requires considerable distance. After passing a vehicle, do not forget the length of your trailer and be sure you have plenty of room before changing lanes.
- In order to maintain efficient engine braking and electrical charging performance, do not use overdrive. Transmission must be “4” position (with standard type) or the shift range position must be “4” (fourth range) in “S” mode (with multi-mode type).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Because of the added load of the trailer, your vehicle's engine may overheat on hot days (at temperatures over 30°C [85°F]) when going up a long or steep grade with a trailer. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, immediately turn off the air conditioning (if in use), pull your vehicle off the road and stop in a safe spot. See "If your vehicle overheats" on page 555 of this manual.
- Always place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and trailer wheels when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly. Put the transmission in "P". Avoid parking on a slope with a trailer, but if it cannot be avoided, do so only after performing the following:

1. Apply the brakes and keep them applied.
2. Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel blocks are in place, release your brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.
4. Apply the parking brake firmly.
5. Shift into "P" and turn off the engine.

When restarting out after parking on a slope:

1. With the transmission in "P" position, start the engine. Be sure to keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Shift into the following position.

With automatic transmission (standard type) —
Shift into the "3", "2", "L" or "R" position.

With automatic transmission (multi-mode type) —
Shift into the "3" (third range), "2" (second range), "1" (first range) or "R" position.

3. Release the parking brake and brake pedal and slowly pull or back away from the wheel blocks. Stop and apply your brakes.
4. Have someone retrieve the blocks.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not exceed 72 km/h (45 mph) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower. Because instability (swaying) of a towing vehicle-trailer combination usually increases as the speed increases, exceeding 72 km/h (45 mph) may cause loss of control.**
- **Slow down and downshift before descending steep or long downhill grades. Do not make sudden downshifts.**
- **Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.**

HOW TO SAVE FUEL AND MAKE YOUR VEHICLE LAST LONGER

Improving fuel economy is easy — just take it easy. It will help make your vehicle last longer, too. Here are some specific tips on how to save money on both fuel and repairs:

- **Keep your tires inflated at the correct pressure.** Check the pressure every two weeks, or at least once a month. Underinflation causes tire wear and wastes fuel.
- **Do not carry unneeded weight in your vehicle.** Excess weight puts a heavier load on the engine, causing greater fuel consumption.
- **Avoid lengthy warm-up idling.** Once the engine is running smoothly, begin driving — but gently. Remember, however, that on cold winter days this may take a little longer.
- **Always keep the automatic transmission selector lever in the "D" position when engine braking is not required.** Driving with the overdrive off will reduce the fuel economy. (For details, see "Automatic transmission (standard type)" or "Automatic transmission (multi-mode type)" on page 437 or 446.)
- **Accelerate slowly and smoothly.** Avoid jackrabbit starts.
- **Avoid long engine idling.** If you have a long wait and you are not in traffic, it is better to turn off the engine and start again later.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Avoid engine over-revving.** Use a gear position suitable for the road on which you are traveling.
- **Avoid continuous speeding up and slowing down.** Stop-and-go driving wastes fuel.
- **Avoid unnecessary stopping and braking.** Maintain a steady pace. Try to time the traffic signals so you only need to stop as little as possible or take advantage of through streets to avoid traffic lights. Keep a proper distance from other vehicles to avoid sudden braking. This will also reduce wear on your brakes.
- **Avoid heavy traffic or traffic jams whenever possible.**
- **Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal.** This causes premature wear, overheating and poor fuel economy.
- **Maintain a moderate speed on highways.** The faster you drive, the greater the fuel consumption. By reducing your speed, you will cut down on fuel consumption.
- **Keep the front wheels in proper alignment.** Avoid hitting the curb and slow down on rough roads. Improper alignment not only causes faster tire wear but also puts an extra load on the engine, which, in turn, wastes fuel.
- **Keep the bottom of your vehicle free from mud, etc.** This not only lessens weight but also helps prevent corrosion.
- **Keep your vehicle tuned-up and in top shape.** A dirty air cleaner, improper valve clearance, dirty plugs, dirty oil and grease, brakes not adjusted, etc. all lower engine performance and contribute to poor fuel economy. For longer life of all parts and lower operating costs, keep all maintenance work on schedule, and if you often drive under severe conditions, see that your vehicle receives more frequent maintenance. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Owner’s Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance”.)

⚠ CAUTION

Never turn off the engine to coast down hills. Your power steering and brake booster will not function without the engine running. Also, the emission control system operates properly only when the engine is running.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

VEHICLE LOAD LIMITS

Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity. Follow the load limits shown below.

Total load capacity: 420 kg (925 lb.)

Total load capacity means combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage. Tongue load is included when trailer towing.

NOTICE

Even if the number of occupants are within the seating capacity, do not exceed the total load capacity.

Towing capacity: 1588 kg (3500 lb.)

Towing capacity means the maximum gross trailer weight (trailer weight plus its cargo weight) that your vehicle is able to tow.

Seating capacity: Total 5 (Front 2, Rear 3)

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose weight is supposed to be 68 kg (150 lb.) per person. Depending on the weight of person, the seating capacity given may exceed the total load capacity.

Cargo capacity

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the size (weight) and the number of occupants. For details, see “Capacity and distribution” that follows.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not apply the load more than each load limit. That may cause not only damage to the tires, but also deterioration to the steering ability and braking ability, which may cause an accident.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

CARGO AND LUGGAGE

Stowage precautions

When stowing cargo and luggage in or on the vehicle, observe the following:

- Put cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment when at all possible. Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

⚠ CAUTION

- **To prevent cargo and luggage from sliding forward during braking, do not stack anything in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks. Keep cargo and luggage low, as close to the floor as possible.**
- **Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer serious bodily injury, in the event of sudden braking or a collision.**
- **Do not place anything on the luggage cover. Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or an accident.**
- **Do not drive with objects left on top of the instrument panel. They may interfere with the driver's field of view. Or they may move during sharp vehicle acceleration or turning, and impair the driver's control of the vehicle. In an accident they may injure the vehicle occupants.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

(Cargo capacity) = (Total load capacity) – (Total weight of occupants)

Steps for determining correct load limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX pounds” on your vehicle’s placard.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or XXX pounds.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. 1400 – 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.

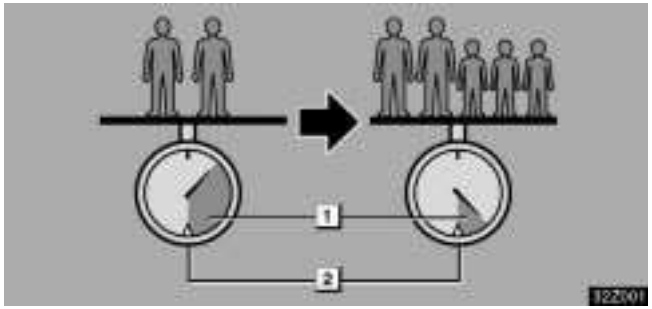
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

For details about trailer towing, see page 529.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Example on your vehicle



▶ 1 *Cargo capacity*
2 *Total load capacity*

In case that 2 people with the combined weight of 166 kg (366 lb.) are riding in your vehicle with the total load capacity of 420 kg (925 lb.), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be as follows:

420 kg – 166 kg = 254 kg.
(925 lb. – 366 lb. = 559 lb.)

From this condition, if 3 more passengers with the combined weight of 176 kg (388 lb.) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced as follows:

254 kg – 176 kg = 78 kg.
(559 lb. – 388 lb. = 171 lb.)

As shown in the above example, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load equaling the combined weight of occupants who got on later must be reduced. In other words, if the increase in the number of occupants causes the excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you have to reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.

For details about total load capacity, see “Vehicle load limits” on page 545.

⚠ CAUTION

Even if the total load of occupant’s weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. That may cause not only damage to the tire but also deterioration to the steering ability due to unbalance of the vehicle, causing an accident.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 4

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

In case of an emergency

If your engine stalls while driving 550
If your vehicle will not start 550
If you cannot increase the engine speed 554
If your vehicle overheats 555
If you have a flat tire 556
If your vehicle becomes stuck 569
If your vehicle needs to be towed 571
If you cannot shift automatic transmission selector lever 583
Lexus link system 584
If you lose your keys or lock yourself out 603

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

IF YOUR ENGINE STALLS WHILE DRIVING

If your engine stalls while driving...

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.

2. Turn on your emergency flashers.

3. Turn the ignition key to “ACC” or “LOCK”, and try starting the engine again.

If the engine will not start, see “If your vehicle will not start”.

⚠ CAUTION

If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not work, so steering and braking will be much harder than usual.

IF YOUR VEHICLE WILL NOT START

(a) Simple checks

Before making these checks, make sure you have followed the correct starting procedure instructions in “How to start the engine” on page 435 and that you have sufficient fuel. Since your vehicle is equipped with the engine immobilizer system, also check whether the other keys will start the engine. If they work, your key may be broken. Have the key checked at your Lexus dealer. If none of your keys work, there may be a malfunction in the immobilizer system. Call your Lexus dealer. See “Keys” on page 12.

If the engine is not turning over or is turning over too slowly —

1. Check that the battery terminals are tight and clean.

2. If the battery terminals are O.K., switch on the interior light.

3. If the light is out, dim or goes out when the starter is cranked, the battery is discharged. You may try jump starting. See “(c) Jump starting” for further instruction.

If the light is O.K., but the engine still will not start, it needs adjustment or repair. Call a Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Customer Service Assistance. (See “Foreword”.)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

Do not pull- or push-start the vehicle. It may damage the vehicle or cause a collision when the engine starts. Also the three-way catalytic converter may overheat and become a fire hazard.

If the engine turns over at its normal speed but will not start —

1. Turn the ignition key to “ACC” or “LOCK” and try starting the engine again.

2. If the engine will not start, the engine may be flooded because of repeated cranking. See “(b) Starting a flooded engine” for further instructions.

3. If the engine still will not start, it needs adjustment or repair. Call a Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Customer Service Assistance. (See “Foreword”.)

NOTICE

Do not crank for more than 30 seconds at a time. This may overheat the starter and wiring systems.

(b) Starting a flooded engine

If the engine will not start, your engine may be flooded because of repeated cranking.

If this happens, turn the key to “START” with the accelerator pedal fully depressed. Continue this operation for 30 seconds and then stop cranking. Then try starting the engine with your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If the engine does not start after 30 seconds of cranking, release the key, wait a few minutes and try again.

If the engine still will not start, it needs adjustment or repair. Call a Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Customer Service Assistance. (See “Foreword”.)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(c) Jump starting

Before jump starting, remove the engine compartment cover. (See “Removing the engine compartment cover” on page 620.)

To avoid serious personal injury and damage to your vehicle which might result from battery explosion, acid burns, electrical burns, or damaged electronic components, these instructions must be followed precisely.

If you are unsure about how to follow this procedure, we strongly recommend that you seek help from your Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Customer Service Assistance. (See “Foreword”.)

⚠ CAUTION

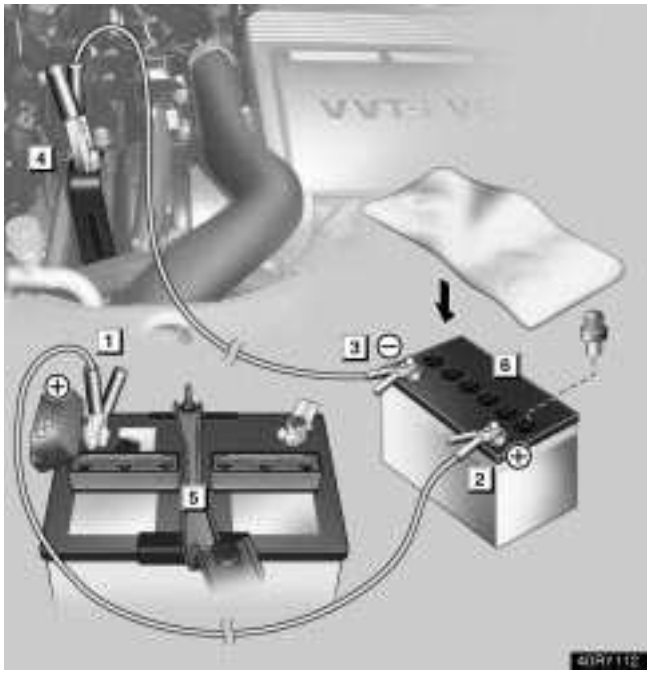
- **Batteries contain sulfuric acid which is poisonous and corrosive. Wear protective safety glasses when jump starting, and avoid spilling acid on your skin, clothing, or vehicle.**

NOTICE

The battery used for boosting must be 12 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the booster battery is correct.

- **If you should accidentally get acid on yourself or in your eyes, remove any contaminated clothing and flush the affected area with water immediately. Then get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while en route to the medical office.**
- **The gas normally produced by a battery will explode if a flame or spark is brought near. Use only standardized jumper cables and do not smoke or light a match while jump starting.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ 5 *Discharged battery* ▶ 6 *Booster battery*

JUMP STARTING PROCEDURE

1. If the booster battery is installed in another vehicle, make sure the vehicles are not touching. Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.

2. If required, remove all the vent plugs from the booster battery. Lay a cloth over the open vents on the booster battery. (This helps reduce the explosion hazard, personal injuries and burns.)

If the booster battery is an extended maintenance interval battery, it is not necessary to remove the vent plugs.

3. If the engine in the vehicle with the booster battery is not running, start it and let it run for about 5 minutes. During jump starting, run the engine at about 2000 rpm with the accelerator pedal lightly depressed.

4. Locate positive (+) and negative (-) terminals of each battery. Connect the jumper cables in the exact order (1 2 3 4) shown in the illustration.

1 Connect a positive (red) jumper cable clamp to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

2 Connect the clamp at the other end of the positive (red) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster battery.

3 Connect a negative (black) cable clamp to the negative (-) terminal of the booster battery.

4 Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative (black) cable to a solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point (such as shown in the illustration) away from the battery. Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

When making the connections, to avoid serious injury, do not lean over the battery or accidentally let the jumper cables or clamps touch anything except the correct battery terminals or the ground.

5. Start your engine in the normal way. After starting, run it at about 2000 rpm for several minutes with the accelerator pedal lightly depressed.

6. Carefully disconnect the cables in the exact reverse order: the negative cable and then the positive cable.

7. Carefully dispose of the battery cover cloths which may now contain sulfuric acid.

8. If removed, replace all the battery vent plugs.

If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent (for example, lights left on), you should have it checked at your Lexus dealer.

IF YOU CANNOT INCREASE THE ENGINE SPEED

If the engine speed does not increase with the accelerator pedal depressed down, there may be a problem somewhere in your electronic throttle control system.

At this time, vibration may occur. However, if you depress the accelerator pedal more firmly and slowly, you can drive your vehicle at low speeds. Have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Even if the abnormality of the electronic throttle control system is corrected during low speed driving, the system may not be recovered until the engine is stopped and the ignition key is turned to “ACC” or “LOCK” position.

CAUTION

Be especially careful to prevent erroneous pedal operation.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

IF YOUR VEHICLE OVERHEATS

If your engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, if you experience a loss of power, or if you hear a loud knocking or pinging noise, the engine has probably overheated.

When the engine overheats

Pull safely off the road, stop the vehicle and turn on your emergency flashers. Put the transmission in “P” and apply the parking brake.

A: If steam is coming from your engine:

Turn off the engine. Leave the hood closed until there is no sign of steam or coolant. Your engine could have been seriously damaged already. Call your Lexus dealer for assistance.

CAUTION

To help avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until there is no steam. Escaping steam or coolant is sign of very high pressure.

B: If no steam is coming from your engine:

Leave the engine running and turn off the air conditioning. Check the following.

- Is the cooling fan operating?
- Is the coolant in the acceptable range?
- Is the engine drive belt O.K.?

CAUTION

- **When the engine is running, keep hands and clothing away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.**
- **Do not attempt to remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injury could result from scalding hot fluid and steam blown out under pressure.**

If the cooling fan is not operating or the coolant is not in the acceptable range, turn off the engine and call your Lexus dealer.

If both conditions are O.K., after the engine coolant temperature has cooled to normal, continue driving your vehicle.

If the engine coolant temperature does not cool down, or your vehicle overheats again, have it checked as soon as possible by your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place — well away from the traffic. Avoid stopping on the center divider of a highway. Park on a level spot with firm ground.

2. Stop the engine and turn on your emergency flashers.

3. Firmly set the parking brake and put the transmission in “P”.

4. Have everyone get out of the vehicle on the side away from traffic.

5. Read the following instructions thoroughly.

⚠ CAUTION

When jacking, be sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of personal injury:

- **Follow jacking instructions.**
- **Do not put any part of your body under a vehicle supported by a jack. Otherwise, personal injury may occur.**
- **Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.**
- **Stop the vehicle on a level firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and put the transmission in “P”. Block the wheel diagonally opposite to the one being changed if necessary.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

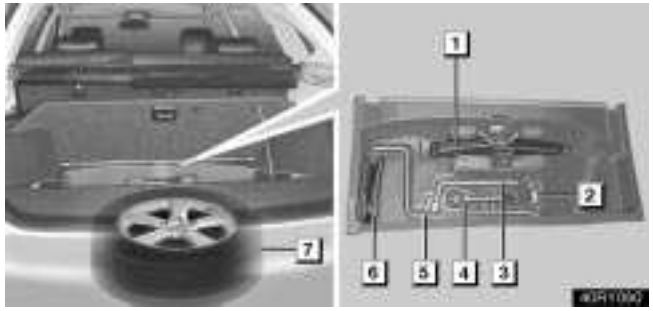
- **Make sure to set the jack properly in the jack point. Raising the vehicle with jack improperly positioned will damage the vehicle or may allow the vehicle to fall off the jack and cause personal injury.**
- **Never get under the vehicle when the vehicle is supported by the jack alone.**
- **Use the jack only for lifting your vehicle during wheel changing.**
- **Do not raise the vehicle with someone in the vehicle.**
- **When raising the vehicle, do not place any objects on top of or underneath the jack.**
- **Raise the vehicle only high enough to remove and change the tire.**
- **Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension: When jacking up, be sure to turn off the height control and stop the engine. Otherwise, the vehicle height may change in the automatic leveling function, resulting in an unexpected accident. For details, see page 496.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE
Do not continue driving with a deflated tire. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire and wheel beyond repair.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

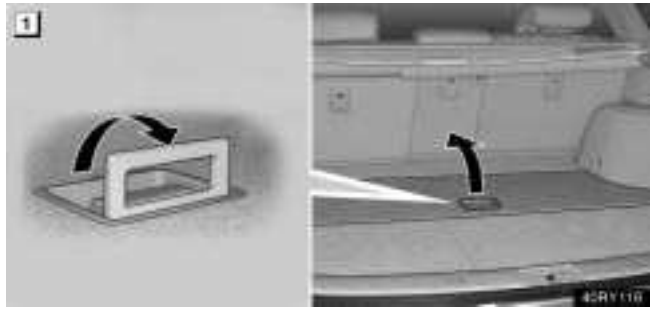
Access to spare tire



▶ 1 ***Jack***
2 ***Adapter socket (for removing a spare tire)***
3 ***Wrench***
4 ***Towing eyelet***
5 ***Jack handle***
6 ***Tool bag***
7 ***Spare tire***

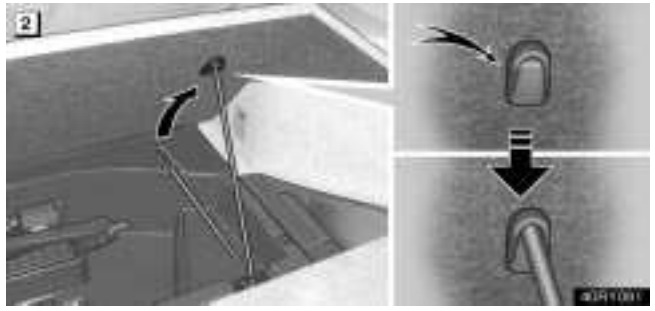
1. Get the tool, jack, wrench, adapter socket (for removing a spare tire) and spare tire.

To prepare yourself for an emergency, you should familiarize yourself with the use of the jack and each tool, and their storage locations.



To get the required tools:

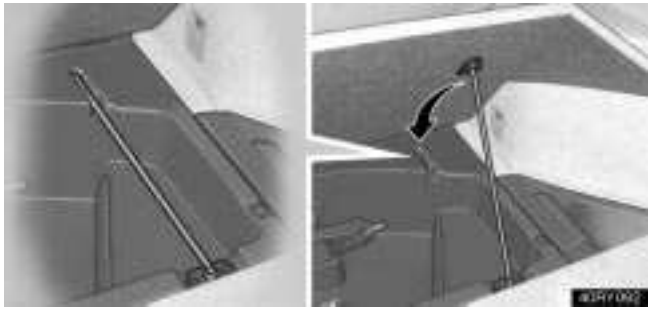
1 Pull up the front deck board.



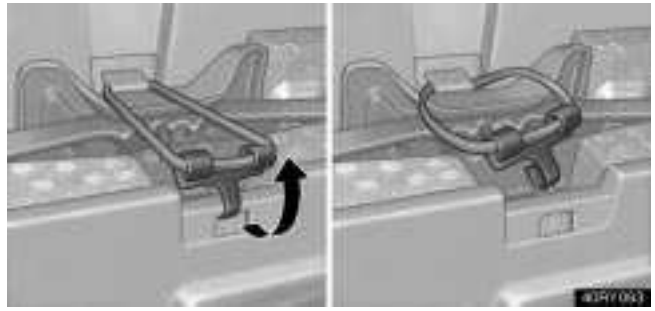
2 Hold the front deck board by the supporting rod.

Make sure the board is secured and does not fall down.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



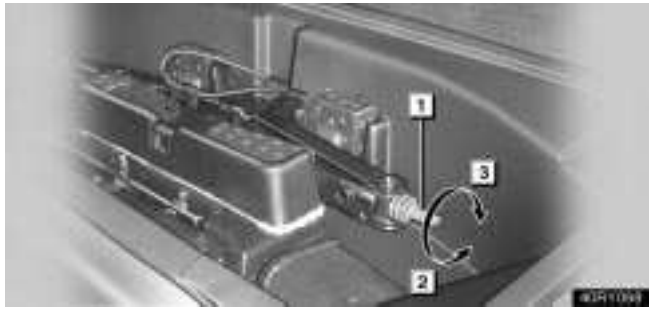
When closing the board, replace the supporting rod also in its original position as shown.



To remove the tool bag, unhook the tightening strap.

To store the tool bag, make sure it is securely held by the tightening strap.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ 1 ***Joint***

2 When removing the jack, turn the joint by hand in the “contract” direction until the jack is free.

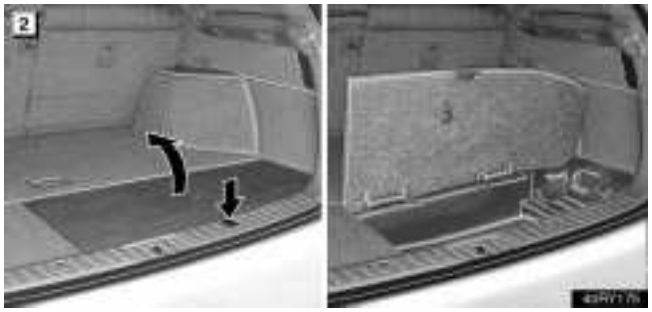
3 When storing, turn the joint by hand in the “expand” direction until the jack is firmly secured to prevent it from flying forward during a collision or sudden braking.

To remove the spare tire:

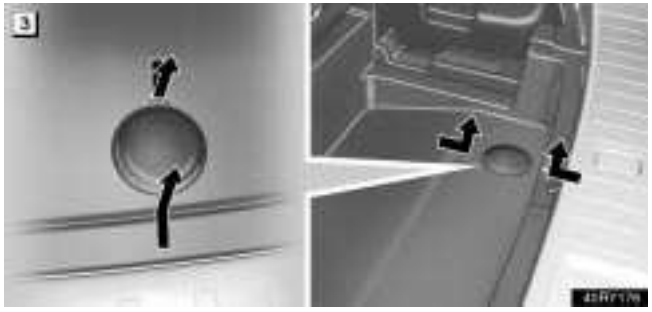
1 Remove the inside spare tire cover by turning it counterclockwise.

If it is difficult to remove the inside spare tire cover, remove the cover after pulling out the spare tire and stand it up against the bumper.

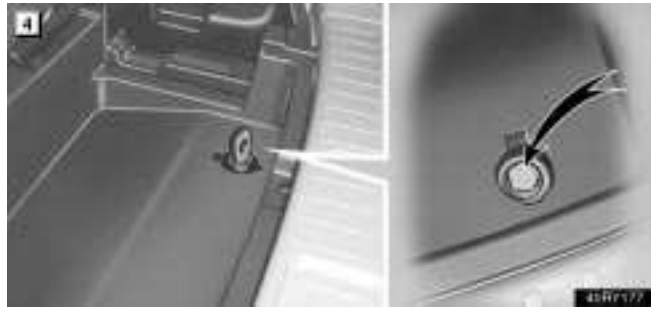
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



2 In the luggage compartment, open the right side auxiliary box by pushing the button. You will find the spare tire clamp bolt on the right side of the auxiliary box.



3 Remove the cover as shown in the illustration.

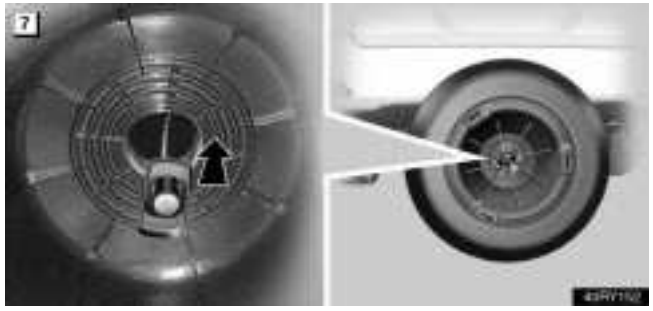


4 Put the adapter socket (for removing a spare tire) on the spare tire clamp bolt.

5 Connect a jack handle and the adapter socket. Turn the jack handle counterclockwise. The tire will lower completely to the ground.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

6 Pull out the spare tire and stand it up against the bumper.



7 Remove the holding bracket.

2. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire to keep the vehicle from rolling when it is jacked up.

When blocking the wheel, place a wheel block in front of one of the front wheels or behind one of the rear wheels.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Loosen all the wheel nuts.

Always loosen the wheel nuts before raising the vehicle.

Turn the wheel nuts counterclockwise to loosen them. To get maximum leverage, fit the wrench to the nut so that the handle is on the right side, as shown above. Grab the wrench near the end of the handle and pull up on the handle. Be careful that the wrench does not slip off the nut.

Do not remove the nuts yet — just unscrew them about one-half turn.

⚠ CAUTION

Never use oil or grease on the bolts or nuts. The nuts may loose and the wheels may fall off, which could cause a serious accident.

4. Position the jack at the jack points as shown.

Make sure the jack is positioned on a level and solid surface.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. After making sure no one is in the vehicle, raise it high enough so that the spare tire can be installed.

Allow for the fact that you need more ground clearance when putting on the spare tire than when removing the flat tire.

To raise the vehicle, insert the jack handle into the jack (it is a loose fit) and turn it clockwise. As the jack touches the vehicle and begins to lift, double-check that it is properly positioned.

⚠ CAUTION

Never get under the vehicle when the vehicle is supported by the jack alone.

6. Remove the wheel nuts and remove the flat tire.

Lift the flat tire straight off and put it aside.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Before putting on the wheel, remove any corrosion on the mounting surfaces with a wire brush or such. Installation of wheels without good metal-to-metal contact at the mounting surface can cause wheel nuts to loosen and eventually cause a wheel to come off while driving.

7. Reinstall all the wheel nuts finger tight.

Align the holes in the wheel with the bolts. Then lift up the wheel and get at least the top bolt started through its hole. Wiggle the tire and press it back over the other bolts.

Reinstall the wheel nuts and tighten them as much as you can by hand. Press the tire back and see if you can tighten them more.

⚠ CAUTION

Never use oil or grease on the bolts or nuts. Doing so may lead to overtightening the nuts and damaging the bolts. The nuts may loose and the wheels may fall off, which could cause a serious accident. If there is oil or grease on any bolt or nut, clean it.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

8. Lower the vehicle completely and tighten the wheel nuts.

Turn the jack handle counterclockwise to lower the vehicle.

Use only the wheel nut wrench to tighten the nuts. Do not use other tools or any additional leverage other than your hands, such as a hammer, pipe or your foot. Make sure the wrench is securely engaged over the nut.

Tighten each nut a little at a time in the order shown. Repeat the process until all the nuts are tight.

⚠ CAUTION

- **When lowering the vehicle, make sure all portions of your body and all other persons around will not be injured as the vehicle is lowered to the ground.**
- **Have the wheel nuts tightened with torque wrench to 103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf), as soon as possible after changing wheels. Otherwise, the nuts may loosen and the wheels may fall off, which could cause a serious accident.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

9. After changing the wheel, check the air pressure of the replaced tire.

If the pressure of the replaced tire is low, drive slowly to the nearest service station and fill to the correct pressure.

Do not forget to reinstall the tire valve cap as dirt and moisture could get into the valve core and possibly cause air leakage. If the cap is missing, put a new one on as soon as possible.

10. Stow all the tools, jack and flat tire securely.

To stow the flat tire, install the inside spare tire cover on the outer side of the spare tire cover. Put the flat tire in the spare tire cover with the outer side facing up and install the holding bracket. Turn the spare tire clamp bolt clockwise with a jack handle and adapter socket until you hear a click.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- ***Ensure that there is no object caught between the tire and the vehicle underbody. Otherwise, the wheel may fly forward during a collision or sudden braking.***
- ***Tighten the spare tire clamp bolt to hold the spare wheel carrier by the hook securely.***

This is the same procedure for changing or rotating your tires.

⚠ CAUTION

Before driving, make sure all the tools, jack and flat tire are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.

IF YOUR VEHICLE BECOMES STUCK

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward.

Two-wheel drive models — Turn off the traction control system to become unstuck to allow the tires to spin enough to remove the vehicle from the obstruction. (For details, see “Traction control system” on page 499.)

⚠ CAUTION

Do not attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

If you rock your vehicle, observe the following precautions to prevent damage to the transmission and other parts.

- ***Do not depress the accelerator pedal while shifting the selector lever or before the transmission is completely shifted to forward or reverse gear.***
- ***Do not race the engine and avoid spinning the wheels.***
- ***If your vehicle remains stuck after rocking the vehicle several times, consider other ways such as towing.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

IF YOUR VEHICLE NEEDS TO BE TOWED

If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by your Lexus dealer or a commercial tow truck service. In consultation with them, have your vehicle towed using either (a) or (b).

(a) Towing with a wheel lift type truck

(b) Using a flat bed truck

(c) Never tow with a sling type truck

Only when you cannot receive a towing service from a Lexus dealer or commercial tow truck service, tow your vehicle carefully in accordance with the instructions given in “(d) Emergency towing” on page 578.

Proper equipment will help ensure that your vehicle is not damaged while being towed. Commercial operators are generally aware of the state/provincial and local laws pertaining to towing.

Your vehicle can be damaged if it is towed incorrectly. Although most operators know the correct procedure, it is possible to make a mistake. To avoid damage to your vehicle, make sure the following precautions are observed. If necessary, show this page to the tow truck driver.

TOWING PRECAUTIONS:

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by the state/provincial and local laws. The wheels and axle on the ground must be in good condition. If they are damaged, use a towing dolly.

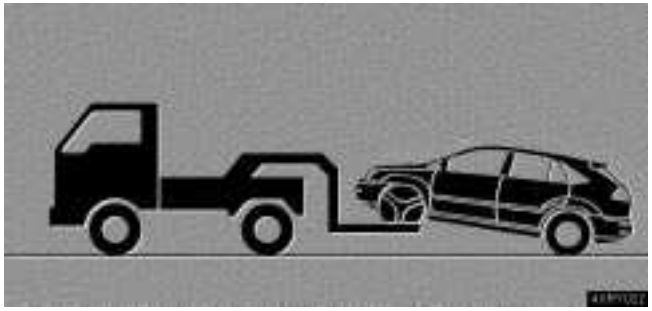
⚠ CAUTION

Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension: When your vehicle is towed, put the vehicle height in the “N” (normal) mode and push the height control switch to turn off the electronically modulated air suspension. Otherwise, the vehicle height may be changed in the automatic leveling function, resulting in an unexpected accident. For details, see “Electronically modulated air suspension” on page 485.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

(a) Towing with a wheel lift type truck

- **From front**

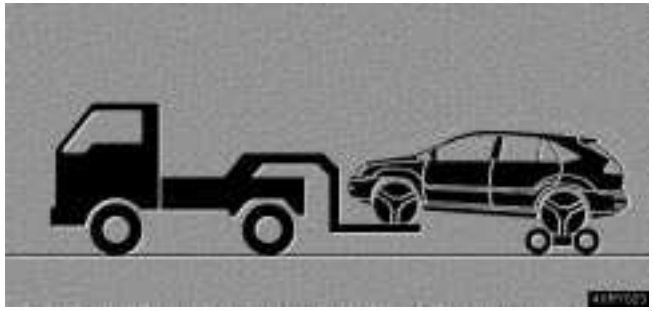


▶ ***Two-wheel drive models***

NOTICE
When lifting wheels, take care to ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Otherwise, the bumper and/or underbody of the towed vehicle will be damaged during towing.

Release the parking brake.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



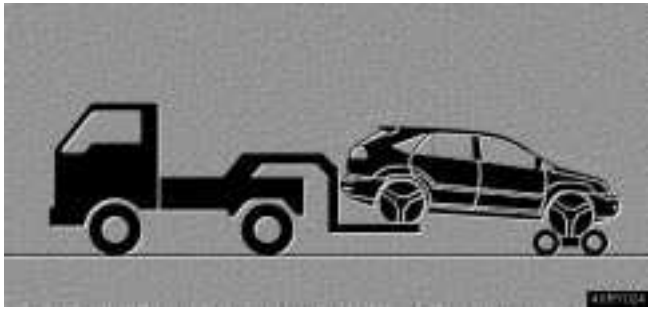
▶ ***Four-wheel drive models***

NOTICE
Never tow from the front with rear wheels on the ground, as this may cause serious damage to the transmission.

Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **From rear**

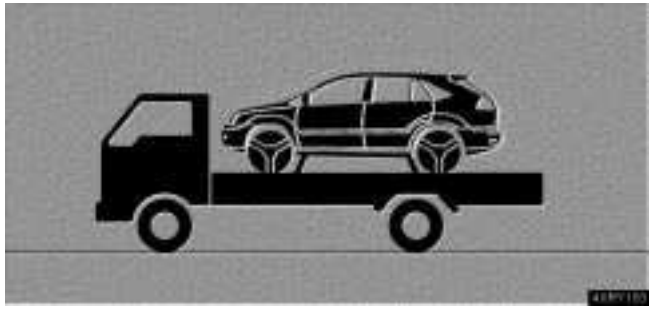


Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

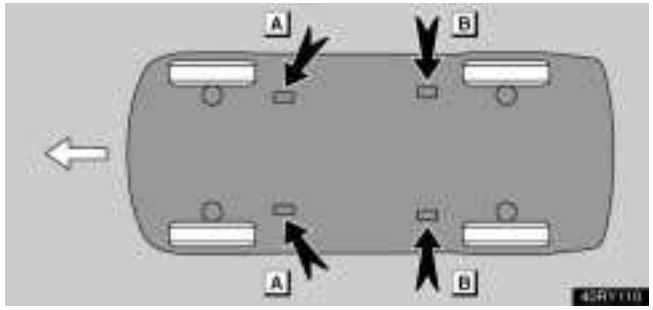
NOTICE
Never tow from the rear with front wheels on the ground, as this may cause serious damage to the transmission.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(b) Using a flat bed truck



- Tie down points



▶ A *Front*

▶ B *Rear*

If your Lexus is transported by a flat bed, it should be tied down at locations A and B as shown above.

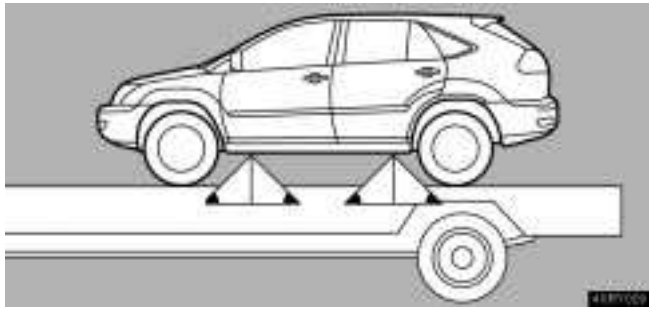
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ *Rear emergency towing eyelets*

NOTICE
Do not use the rear emergency towing eyelets.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

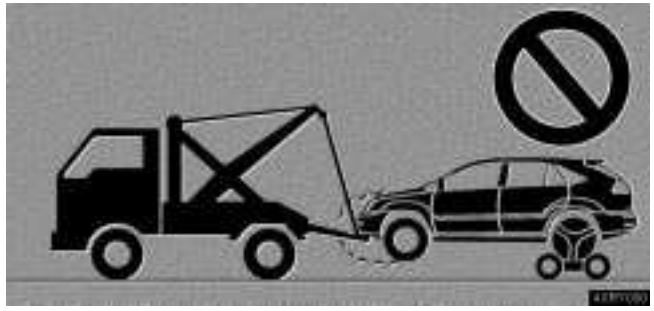
- **Tie down angle**



If you use chains or wires to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded black must be at 45°.

NOTICE
Do not tow with a sling type truck, either from the front or rear. This may cause body damage.

(c) Towing with a sling type truck



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

(d) Emergency towing

If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by your Lexus dealer or a commercial tow truck service.

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed by a cable or chain secured to one of the emergency towing eyelets on the front of the vehicle. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.

To install the front towing eyelet, see “(e) Installing front towing eyelet” on page 581.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- ***Only use specified towing eyelet; otherwise your vehicle may be damaged.***
- ***Never tow a vehicle from the rear with four wheels on the ground. This may cause serious damage to the transmission.***

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speeds. Also, the wheels, axles, drive train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

⚠ CAUTION

Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelet and towing cable or chain. The eyelet and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing eyelet provided.

Before towing, release the parking brake and put the transmission in “N”. The ignition key must be in “ACC” (engine off) or “ON” (engine running).

⚠ CAUTION

If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not work so steering and braking will be much harder than usual.

Emergency towing eyelet precautions:

- Before emergency towing, check that the eyelet is not broken or damaged and that the installation bolts are not loose.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the eyelet.
- Do not jerk the eyelet. Apply steady and even force.
- To avoid damaging the eyelet, do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle. Always pull straight ahead.

⚠ CAUTION

If the emergency towing eyelet is used to get out when your vehicle becomes stuck in the mud, sand or other condition from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power, make sure to observe the precautions mentioned below. Otherwise, excessive stress will be put on the eyelet and the towing cable or chain may break, causing serious injury or damage.

- **If the towing vehicle can hardly move, do not forcibly continue the towing. Contact your Lexus dealer or a commercial tow truck service for assistance.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Tow the vehicle as straight ahead as possible.**
- **Keep away from the vehicle during towing.**

Tips for towing a stuck vehicle:

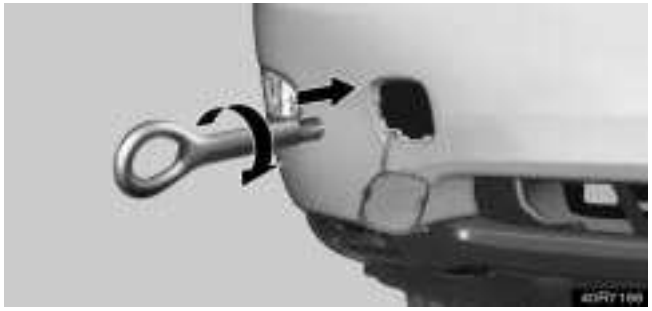
The following methods are effective to use when your vehicle is stuck in the mud, sand or other condition from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. In addition, keep away from the vehicles and towing cable or chain when towing.

- Remove the sand and soil in the front and the back of the tires.
- Place stones or wood under the tires.

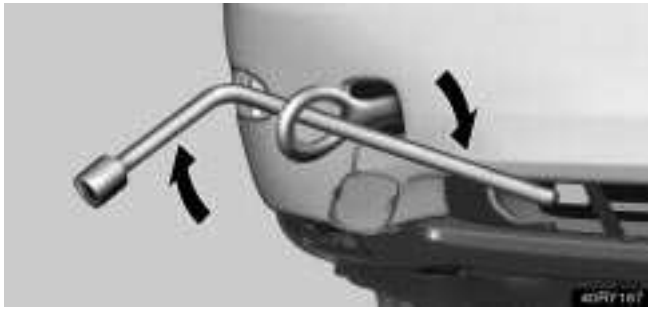
(e) Installing front towing eyelet

1. Remove the front towing eyelet cover on the front bumper using a flat-bladed screwdriver. To protect the bodywork, place a piece of rag over the cover.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



2. Use the front towing eyelet in the luggage compartment. Secure it to the hole on the bumper by turning clockwise. (For the eyelet location, see page 559.)



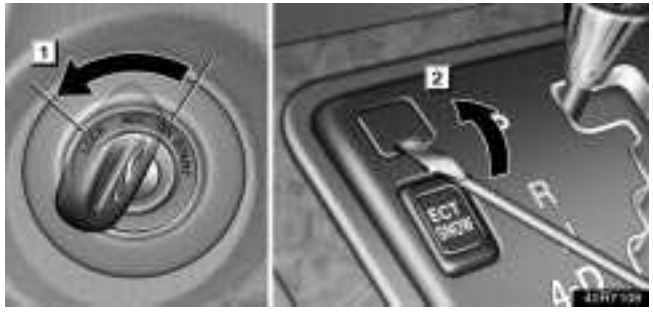
3. Tighten the front towing eyelet securely by a wheel nut wrench.

⚠ CAUTION

When installing the eyelet on the vehicle, be sure to tighten the front eyelet securely. If the eyelet is loose, it may come off when being towed and result in death or serious injury.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

IF YOU CANNOT SHIFT AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION SELECTOR LEVER



If you cannot shift the selector lever out of “P” position to other positions even though the brake pedal is depressed, use the shift lock override button as follows:

1 Turn the ignition key to “LOCK”. Make sure the parking brake is applied.

2 Pry up the cover with a flat-bladed screwdriver or equivalent.

3 Push down the shift lock override button. You can shift out of “P” position only while pushing the button.

4 Shift into “N” position.

Insert the cover. Start the engine. For your safety, keep the brake pedal depressed.

Be sure to have the system checked by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

LEXUS LINK SYSTEM

The Lexus Link System is an in-vehicle communications service that provides you with enhanced safety, security and convenience. With an active subscription you can push the "SERVICES" button for operator assistance or in an emergency situation such as a vehicle accident (in which the airbag was activated), you will automatically be connected to the Lexus Link Call Center which will assist you and/or send help 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

The Lexus Link System can also record your voice or your conversation with the Lexus Link Call Center Advisor.

Safety information for the Lexus Link System

Important!: Read this information before using the Lexus Link System.

EXPOSURE TO RADIO FREQUENCY SIGNALS

The Lexus Link System to be installed in your vehicle a low power radio transmitter and receiver. When the ignition is turned to the "ON" position, it receives and also sends out radio frequency (RF) signals.

In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by both U.S. and international standards bodies.

- ANSI C95.1 (1992)*1
- NCRP Report 86 (1986)*2
- ICNIRP (1996)*3

*1: American National Standards Institute
*2: National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements
*3: International Commission on Non-lonizing Radiation Protection

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, government health agencies, and industry reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of the Lexus Link System complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.

Information for using the Lexus Link System

The Lexus Link System is a subscription-based service. To obtain any of the Lexus Link services you must have enrolled with the Lexus Link Call Center and have an active subscription. It is important to be aware that an active subscription is required to receive safety and security services.

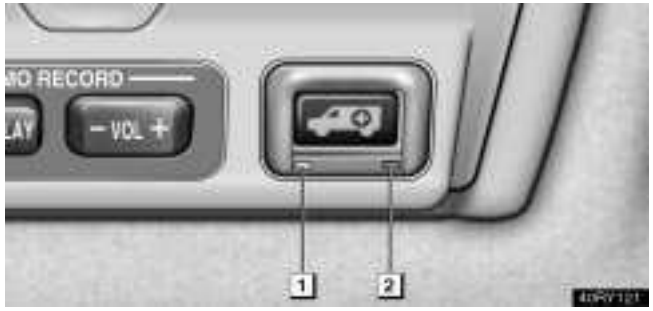
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To learn more about your subscription status or how to renew or extend your subscription, please push the “SERVICES” button and speak to the Lexus Link Advisor, or you may dial toll free 1-800-25 Lexus (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987) and select the option for Lexus Link. If you are not enrolled, you will hear the explanation about Lexus Link System. The actual message is shown on “Audible voice prompts” on page 599. If you push the “SERVICES” button again, the services enrollment call will be announced. To cancel the enrollment call, push the “SERVICES” button one more time.

NOTICE

This system is only operational in GPS (Global Positioning System) and analog cellular coverage areas. Services may not be available in an area where the GPS and analog cellular phone signals cannot be received.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ 1 ***Lexus Link System indicator light (green or amber)***
2 ***Lexus Link System warning light (red)***

When the ignition is turned to the “ON” position, the warning light (red) should come on for a few seconds, and go off. The indicator light (amber) comes on for a few seconds and the color of the indicator changes from amber to green. This means the Lexus Link System is operating properly. The green indicator light should remain on to inform you that you have an active subscription. If your Lexus Link subscription has expired, the green indicator light should go off. To activate your Lexus Link System, press the “SERVICES” button. To learn more about your subscription status or how to renew or extend your subscription, please push the “SERVICES” button to speak to a Lexus Link Advisor, or you may dial toll free 1-800-25 Lexus (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987) and select the option for Lexus Link. If problems are detected in the Lexus Link System, you will hear “A Lexus Link System error has been detected. Please contact your Lexus dealer.” The warning light should come on. If you hear this message, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

In some cases, even if your subscription has expired, the green indicator light may come on. This is due to the time delay required to process the deactivation of your Lexus Link System. During this period, when you push the “SERVICES” button, your call will be forwarded to enrollment. Once the deactivation process has been completed, the indicator light will go off.

NOTICE

The green indicator light is the primary means to let you know the status of your subscription. It is important to be aware that an active subscription is required to receive safety and security services. If the green indicator light is disabled, you subscription has expired. If you would like to renew your subscription for Lexus Link services, please contact Lexus Link Call Center by pushing the “SERVICES” button twice, dial toll free 1-800-25 Lexus (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987) and select the option for Lexus Link, or contact your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When you push the “- VOL +” button on the “-” side immediately followed by the “PLAY” button, you can hear an explanation about the Lexus Link System. However, this function is not available when you are recording or hearing a playback. See “Audible voice prompts” on page 599 for a written version of this recorder message.

NOTICE
Do not remove the Lexus Link fuse and wiring harness with the ignition on, or an emergency call will be placed to the Lexus Link Call Center.

The basic subscriber service package is available free of charge for the first year.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic notifications

If an airbag deploys, an emergency signal is sent automatically to the Lexus Link Call Center. In your vehicle, the system announces “Placing an emergency call to the Lexus Link Center.” In response to the signal, Lexus Link Advisor will attempt to communicate with you first. If the Advisor cannot get any response from you, the Advisor will locate your vehicle through the GPS, call the nearest emergency services provider, describe the situation and your location. If necessary, the Advisor will transfer your call to the emergency services operator.

If the theft deterrent system on your vehicle is activated, the Lexus Link System on your vehicle will automatically call the Lexus Link Call Center. The Advisor will attempt to contact you to determine whether the alarm is valid.

If you report to the Lexus Link Call Center that your vehicle has been stolen, the Advisor will locate, track and provide location information to the appropriate law enforcement authority. To protect subscriber privacy, the Lexus Link Call Center will not provide the location of a vehicle to anyone other than a law enforcement authority.

If you accidentally activate the vehicle alarm, push the “UNLOCK” button on the wireless remote control key within 55 seconds after the alarm was set off, or insert the key into the door keyhole or ignition switch. The Lexus Link System will cancel the theft call.

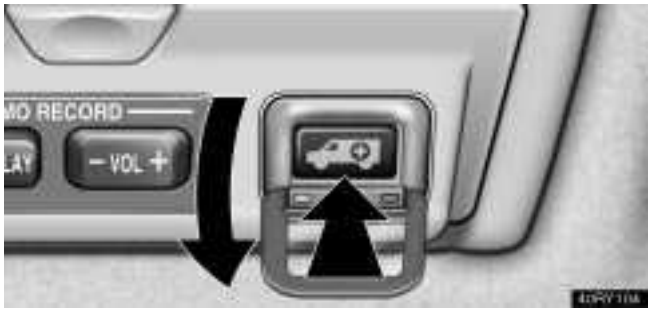
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- *Once the emergency button is pushed, an emergency call cannot be cancelled.*
- *If your vehicle is in area where the GPS signal is weak or cannot be received the Lexus Link System, the color of the indicator light will change from green to amber. The system is not in operation. This system is only operational in GPS and analog cellular coverage areas. Upon subscription expiration, all Lexus Link services (i.e. automatic notification, emergency call functions, service call functions, door locking/unlocking function) are deactivated.*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Manual emergency calling



You can place an emergency call manually. Open the cover and push the emergency button. You will hear "Placing an emergency call to Lexus Link Center" and the Lexus Link system indicator light (green) will start flashing. Upon reception of your call, the Advisor will locate your vehicle and contact you to assess the situation. If necessary, the Advisor will alert the nearest emergency service provider. This emergency call should only be made in life-threatening situations.

If your vehicle is stolen, call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987). The Center will locate, track and provide location information to the appropriate police authority. To protect subscriber privacy, the Lexus Link Call Center will not provide the location of a vehicle to anyone other than a law enforcement authority.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

If your vehicle is in area where the GPS signal is weak or cannot be received the Lexus Link System, the color of the indicator light will change from green to amber. The system is not operated. This system is only operational in GPS and analog cellular coverage areas. Upon subscription expiration, all Lexus Link services (i.e. automatic notification, emergency call functions, service call functions, door locking/unlocking function) are deactivated.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Other Services

When you push the “SERVICES” button, you will hear “Calling the Lexus Link Center” and the indicator light (green) will start flashing. When the Advisor receives your location and ID from the system, the Advisor provides you with the service. The services provided will depend on the level of service package selected.

For details about various services that are available, contact your Lexus dealer, or push the “SERVICES” button and speak to the Lexus Link Advisor, or you may dial toll free 1-800-25 Lexus (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987) and select the option for Lexus Link.

To cancel a services call, push the “SERVICES” button a second time. “Lexus Link call cancelled” will be announced.

If any problem concerning the Lexus Link System occurs during driving, the system will announce “A Lexus Link System error has been detected. Please contact your Lexus dealer.” and the warning light will come on. If you hear this message, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

Lexus Link services may not be available in following cases.

- The components or wire harnesses for the system are damaged.
- The Lexus Link Call Center is not operational.
- The antenna does not work properly due to vehicle damage.
- Your vehicle is in a weak or non-analog cellular coverage area.
- Your vehicle is in area where the GPS signal is weak or cannot be received.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- The Lexus Link subscription has expired.

NOTICE
Upon subscription expiration, all Lexus Link services (i.e. automatic notification, emergency call functions, service call functions) are deactivated.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Door Locking/unlocking by Lexus Link System

The Lexus Link System will allow your vehicle to be locked and unlocked remotely.

If you find that your vehicle has not been locked, call the Lexus Link Call Center 1-800-25-LEXUS (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987), the Lexus Link Advisor can assist in locking your vehicle.

NOTICE

You must provide the Lexus Link operator with your Lexus Link PIN (Personal Identification Number) or personal security word, before they lock/unlock your vehicle. However, the Lexus Link System will not be able to lock or unlock your vehicle if it has been parked for 48 hours or more after the ignition is turned off. Upon subscription expiration, all Lexus Link services (i.e. automatic notification, emergency call functions, service call functions, door locking/unlocking function) are deactivated.

In case you are locked out, call the Lexus Link Call Center 1-800-25 Lexus (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987), a Lexus Link Advisor can assist in unlocking your vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Memo record

▶ 1 *“REC” button* 2 *“PLAY” button*
3 *“- VOL +” button*

During a service call, you can record a conversation with the Lexus Link Call Center Advisor. This function is very convenient for drivers so they do not have to take notes while driving.

“REC” button: Push this button to record information or a conversation with Lexus Link Call Center. To stop recording, push the button again. Up to 5 minutes of recording time is available.

When you push the “REC” button, all previous messages are deleted and the system begins recording your new message.

At the start of recording, “Recording” will be announced. At the end of recording, you will hear “Recording complete”. If there are only 15 seconds left for recording, two chimes sound. If the recording memory is full, “Recording time exceeded” will be announced and recording will be terminated.

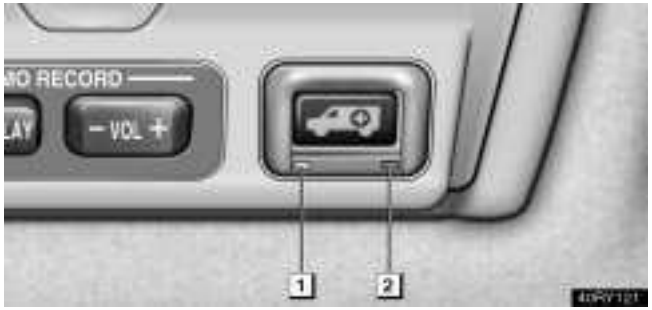
If you push this button while you are hearing a playback of recording, it terminates the playback and recording will start. At this time, the previous recording will be erased.

“PLAY” button: Push this button to play the recorded conversation. “Playback Complete” is announced when the playback is complete. To stop the operation, push the button again. “Playback Cancelled” is announced. The volume has a total of eight positions/levels available.

“- VOL +” button: Push this button on either side to adjust the volume. When you change the volume, one chime sounds.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Lexus Link System indicator and warning lights



▶ 1 ***Lexus Link System indicator light (green or amber)***
2 ***Lexus Link System warning light (red)***

When the green indicator light remains on, you have an active subscription. You can obtain any of the Lexus Link services.

When the green indicator light starts flashing, the Lexus Link Call Center is connected.

When the color of the indicator light changes from green to amber, the GPS signal is weak or cannot be received.

If something is placed on the GPS antenna on the instrument panel, remove it. It may be interfering the GPS signal reception.

If nothing is placed on the GPS antenna and the amber indicator light remains on for about 10 minutes or more, contact your Lexus dealer.

When the engine is turned off and then restarted, the indicator color changes to green. However, if the color of the indicator light changes to amber again after 10 minutes or more, contact your Lexus dealer.

When the warning light remains on, there is any problem with the Lexus Link system.

When the indicator and warning lights go off, your subscription has expired.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Audible voice prompts

The following table shows the voice responses from the Lexus Link System.

Voice phrase: Explanation about Lexus Link System		
This is the Lexus Link system. Integrating global positioning satellite and wireless communication technology into your Lexus and providing enhanced safety, security, and convenience. At the touch of a button, or automatically in the event of an accident, you are connected to a Lexus Link Advisor who will assist you — 24 hours a day, 7 days a week where GPS and cellular coverage is available. The Lexus Link System also has an audio recorder allowing you to record reminders to yourself or information from a Lexus Link Advisor. To contact a Lexus Link Advisor, press the “SERVICES” button. The Lexus Link System will inform the advisor of your vehicle’s current location and your identity. The advisors can handle a wide variety of services, such as giving directions to shops, gas stations, ATMs, restaurants and roadside assistance with location. Services available will depend on the service package you selected.	In an emergency, press the emergency services button on your Lexus Link console. It is marked with a red ambulance. Upon receiving your call, the advisor will assess the situation and, if necessary, alert the nearest emergency services provider. The emergency button should only be used in life threatening situations. If your Lexus detects that an airbag deployment may have occurred, the Lexus Link System will automatically send an emergency message to the Lexus Link Call Center. The system will also automatically contact the call center if the security system alarm goes off. An advisor will first contact you to determine if the alarm is valid. Upon your confirmation, the advisor will then provide the vehicle location to the police.	If you accidentally set off the alarm, press the remote door unlock, or insert your key in the door lock or ignition within 55 seconds. This will prevent the Lexus Link System from placing a theft call. The volume control lets you adjust the volume level for Lexus Link calls, system prompts, and memos. Press the plus key to increase volume and the minus key to decrease it. To record a memo or a call, press the key labeled “REC”. When you are finished recording, press the “REC” button again. To listen to the memo, press the “PLAY” button. You can record one message up to five minutes long. When you record a new memo, all of the previous memos will be erased. For more detailed information on the use, features and limitations of this system, please consult your Lexus Link Owner’s Manual.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Voice phrase	Description
Placing an emergency call to Lexus Link Center	Emergency call is placed.
Calling the Lexus Link Center	Service call is placed.
Lexus Link Call cancelled	Service call is cancelled.
Previous attempt to call the Lexus Link Center was unsuccessful.	The attempt to call the Lexus Link Center was unsuccessful.
Recording	The recording will start.
Recording complete	The recording is complete.
Recording time exceeded	The recording memory is now full.
Playback complete	The playback is complete.
Playback cancelled	The playback is cancelled.
A Lexus Link System error has been detected. Please contact your Lexus dealer.	An error has been detected with the Lexus Link System. Contact your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Voice phrase	Description
Your Lexus Link subscription has expired. Services are not available.	You operated a Lexus Link button despite an expired subscription. Your Lexus Link subscription has expired, push the “Services” button a second time to reactivate.
No cellular service available. Unable to contact the Call Center.	In cellular coverage areas without analog coverage, you cannot use the Lexus Link System. Unable to contact the Lexus Link Call Center until you have cellular coverage.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Lexus Link transceiver antenna

The Lexus Link transceiver antenna is removable. Before taking the vehicle to an automatic car wash, disconnect the antenna by unscrewing it from the roof. When you remove the antenna, make sure the ignition is turned off.

NOTICE

- ***Do not contact with the antenna, this may affect quality of transceiver's operation and may cause the unit to operate at a higher power level than needed.***
- ***If you forget reattaching the Lexus Link transceiver antenna, the Lexus Link System may not function properly.***
- ***To prevent damage to the antenna, make sure it is removed before driving your vehicle through an automatic car wash.***

Use only the supplied or an approved antenna. Unauthorized antennas, modifications, or attachments could damage the Lexus Link System and may violate FCC regulations.

⚠ CAUTION

Persons who use a medical appliance like a pacemaker should not touch or come in close contact with the antenna while the vehicle is ignition on. Otherwise, the analog cellular signals may produce improper operation of a medical appliance.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

IF YOU LOSE YOUR KEYS OR LOCK YOURSELF OUT

You can purchase a new key at your Lexus dealer if you can give them the key number and master key.

Even if you lose only one key, contact your Lexus dealer to make a new key. If you lose all your master keys, you cannot make new keys; the whole engine immobilizer system must be replaced.

See the suggestion given in “Keys” on page 12.

You can use the wireless remote control system with the new key. Contact your Lexus dealer for detailed information.

If your keys are locked in the vehicle and you cannot get a duplicate, many Lexus dealers can still open the door for you using special tools. If your vehicle is equipped with Lexus Link System, call the Lexus Link Call Center 1-800-25-LEXUS (Toll-Free) (1-800-255-3987). Once you provide the Lexus Link Call Center Advisor with your Lexus Link PIN (Personal Identification Number), or personal security word, they will unlock your vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

You must provide the Lexus Link operator with your Lexus Link PIN (Personal Identification Number) or personal security word, before they lock/unlock your vehicle. However, the Lexus Link System will not be able to lock or unlock your vehicle if it has been parked for 48 hours or more after the ignition is turned off. Upon subscription expiration, all Lexus Link services (i.e. automatic notification, emergency call functions, service call functions) are deactivated.

If you must break a window to get in, we suggest breaking the smallest side window because it is the least expensive to replace. Be extremely cautious to avoid glass cuts.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 5

MAINTENANCE

Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 607
General maintenance 608
Does your vehicle need repairing? 611
Emissions Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) programs 612

For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance".

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS

Your Lexus vehicle has been designed to have fewer maintenance requirements with longer service intervals to save both your time and money. However, each regular maintenance as well as day-to-day care is more important than ever before to ensure smooth, trouble-free, safe, and economical driving.

It is the owner's responsibility to make sure the specified maintenance, including general maintenance services, is performed. Note that both the new vehicle and emission control system warranties specify that proper maintenance and care must be performed. See "Owner's Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet" for complete warranty information.

General maintenance

General maintenance items are those day-to-day care practices that are important to your vehicle for proper operation. It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that the general maintenance items are performed regularly.

These checks or inspections can be done either by yourself or your Lexus dealer.

Scheduled maintenance

The scheduled maintenance items listed in the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance" are those required to be serviced at regular intervals.

For details of your maintenance schedule, read the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance".

It is recommended that only genuine Lexus parts be used for maintenance or for the repair of the emission control system.

The owner may elect to use non-Lexus supplied parts for replacement purposes without invalidating the emission control system warranty. However, use of replacement parts which are not of equivalent quality may impair the effectiveness of the emission control systems.

You may also elect to have maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and system performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual without invalidating this warranty. See "Owner's Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet" for complete warranty information.

Where to go for service?

Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information through technical bulletins, service tips, and in-dealership training programs. They are well informed about the operation of all the systems on your vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

You can be confident that your Lexus dealer's service department performs the best job to meet the maintenance requirements of your vehicle.

Your copy of the repair order is proof that all required maintenance has been performed for warranty coverage. If any problems should arise with your vehicle while under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it. Again, be sure to keep a copy of the repair order for any service performed on your Lexus.

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many of the maintenance items are easy to do yourself, if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools. Simple instructions for how to perform them are presented in Section 6.

If you are a skilled do-it-yourself mechanic, the Lexus service manuals are recommended. Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance can affect your warranty coverage. See "Owner's Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet" for the details.

GENERAL MAINTENANCE

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified. It is recommended that any problem you notice be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for their advice.

⚠ CAUTION

Make these checks only with adequate ventilation if you run the engine.

Engine compartment

Items listed below should be checked from time to time, e.g. each time when refueling.

Washer fluid

Make sure there is sufficient fluid in the tank. See page 703 for additional information.

Engine coolant level

Make sure the coolant level is between the "FULL" and "LOW" lines on the see-through reservoir when the engine is cold. See page 643 for additional information.

Radiator, condenser and hoses

Check that the front of the radiator and condenser are clean and not blocked with leaves, dirt or insects. See page 645 for additional information.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Battery

Check the battery condition by the indicator color. See page 691 for additional information.

Brake fluid level

Make sure the brake fluid level is correct. See page 653 for additional information.

Engine oil level

Check the level on the dipstick with the engine turned off and the vehicle parked on a level spot. See page 638 for additional information.

Power steering fluid level

Check the level through the reservoir. The level should be in the “HOT” or “COLD” range depending on the fluid temperature. See page 655 for additional information.

Exhaust system

If you notice any change in the sound of the exhaust or smell exhaust fumes, have the cause located and corrected immediately. (See “Engine exhaust caution” on page 430.)

Vehicle interior

Items listed below should be checked regularly, e.g. while performing periodic services, cleaning the vehicle, etc.

Lights

Make sure the headlight, stop lights, tail lights, turn signal lights, and other lights are working. Check headlight aim.

Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers

Check that all service reminder indicators and warning buzzers function properly.

Steering wheel

Check that it has the specified free play. Be alert for changes in steering condition, such as hard steering, excessive free play or strange noise.

Seats

Check that all front seat controls such as seat adjusters, seatback recliner, etc., operate smoothly. Check that the head restraints move up and down smoothly and that the locks hold securely in any latched position. For folding-down rear seatbacks, check that the latches lock securely.

Seat belts

Check that the seat belt system such as buckles, retractors and anchors operate properly and smoothly. Make sure the belt webbing is not cut, frayed, worn or damaged.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Accelerator pedal

Check the pedal for smooth operation and uneven pedal effort or catching.

Brake pedal

Check the pedal for smooth operation and the proper clearance and free play. Check the brake booster function.

Brakes

At a safe place, check that the brakes do not pull to one side when applied.

Parking brake

Check that the pedal has the proper travel and that, on a safe incline, your vehicle is held securely with only the parking brake applied.

Automatic transmission “Park” mechanism

Check the lock release button of the selector lever for proper and smooth operation. On a safe incline, check that your vehicle is held securely with the selector lever in “P” position and all brakes released.

Vehicle exterior

Items listed below should be performed from time to time, unless otherwise specified.

Wheel nuts

When checking the tires, make sure to check the nuts for looseness. Tighten them if necessary.

Fluid leaks

Check underneath for leaking fuel, oil, water or other fluid after the vehicle has been parked for a while. If you smell fuel fumes or notice any leak, have the cause found and corrected immediately.

Doors and engine hood

Check that all side doors and back door operate smoothly and all latches lock securely. Make sure the engine hood secondary latch secures the hood when the primary latch is released.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire inflation pressure

Check the pressure with a gauge every two weeks, or at least once a month and adjust as shown on the tire and loading information label. See page 657 for additional information.

Tire surface

Check the tires carefully for cuts, damage or excessive wear. See page 671 for additional information.

Tire rotation

Rotate the tires according to the maintenance schedule. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Owner’s Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance”.) See “Rotating tires” on page 670.

DOES YOUR VEHICLE NEED REPAIRING?

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling, or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driving straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches floors, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. It probably needs adjustment or repair.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

Do not continue driving with the vehicle unchecked. It could result in serious vehicle damage and possibly personal injury.

EMISSIONS INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE (I/M) PROGRAMS

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) checks.

The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system. When the OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system, the malfunction indicator lamp comes on. In this case, your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

Even if the malfunction indicator lamp does not come on, your vehicle may not pass the I/M test as readiness codes have not been set in the OBD system.

Readiness codes are automatically set during ordinary driving. However, when the battery is disconnected or run down, the codes are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the codes may not be completely set.

Also, if the malfunction indicator lamp had come on recently due to temporary malfunction such as a loose fuel tank cap, your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after taking several driving trips, but the error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless about 40 trips or more are taken.

If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test even the malfunction indicator lamp does not come on, contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 6 – 1

SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS

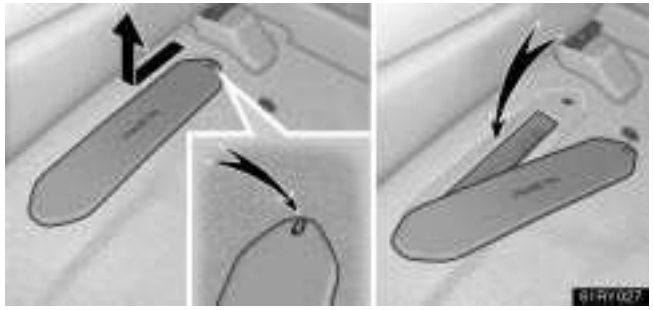
Introduction

Vehicle identification 615
Theft prevention labels 616
Engine compartment overview 619
Do-it-yourself service precautions 622
Parts and tools 625
Positioning the jack 626

DEALER E-PROCESS

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION

▶ ***Top left of the instrument panel***



▶ ***Under the front passenger's seat (on some models)***

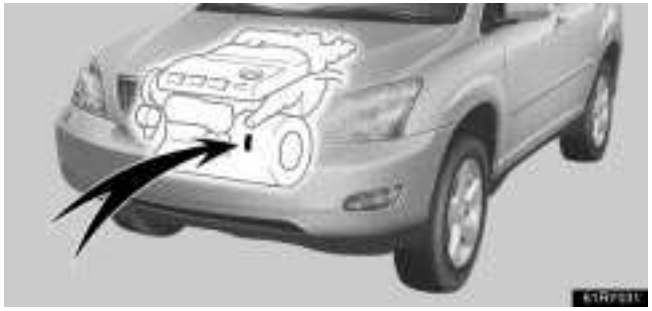
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This number is shown on the left top of the instrument panel and can be seen through the windshield from outside.

On some models — This number is also stamped under the front passenger's seat.

This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

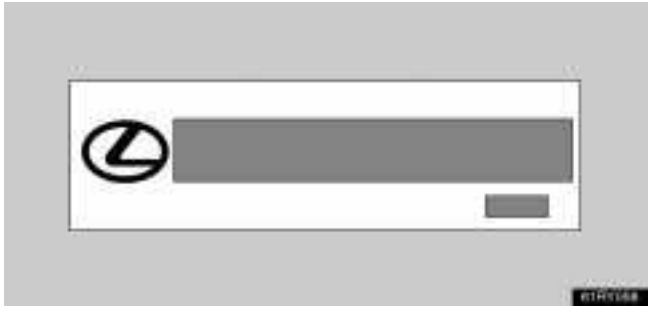
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is also on the Certification Label.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

THEFT PREVENTION LABELS (U.S.A.ONLY)



Your new vehicle carries theft prevention labels which are approximately 47 mm (1.85 in.) by 12 mm (0.47 in.).

The purpose of these labels is to reduce the incidence of vehicle thefts by facilitating the tracing and recovery of parts from stolen vehicles. The label is designed so that once it is applied to a surface, any attempt to remove it will result in destroying the integrity of the label. Transferring these labels intact from one part to another will be impossible.

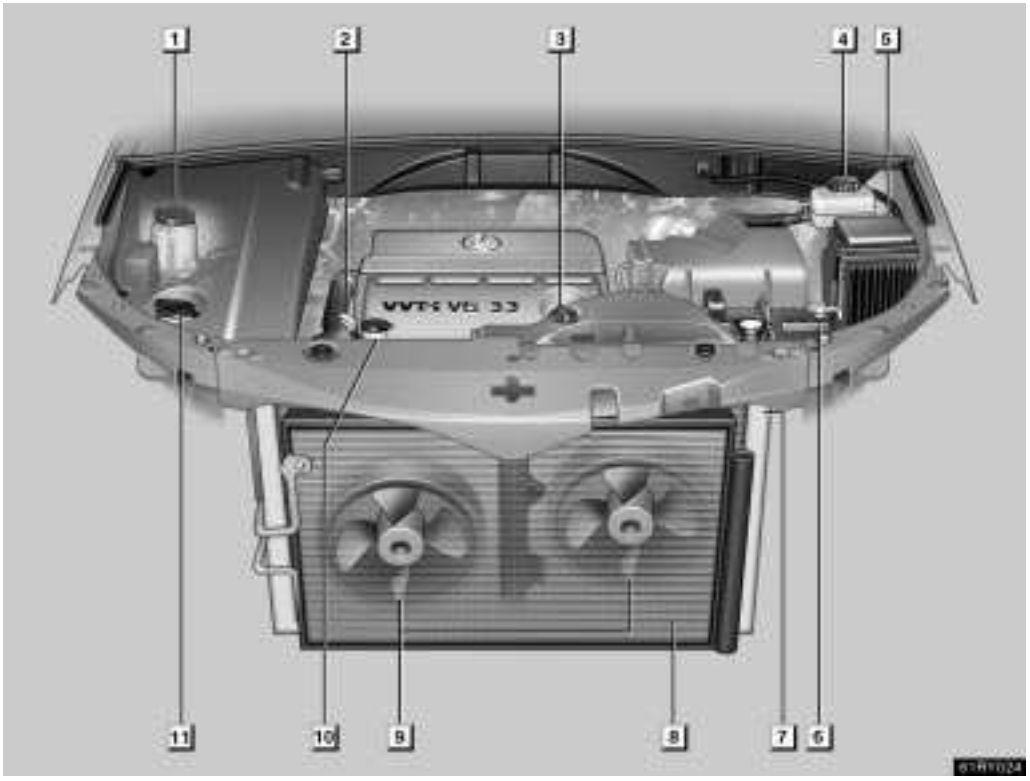
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE
You should not attempt to remove the theft prevention labels as it may violate certain state or federal laws.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEALER E-PROCESS

ENGINE COMPARTMENT OVERVIEW

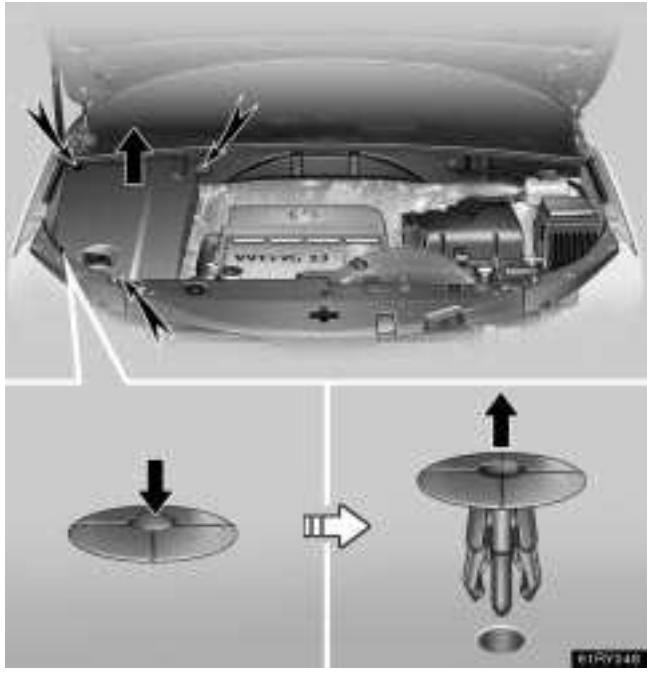


1. *Power steering fluid reservoir*
2. *Engine oil level dipstick*
3. *Engine oil filler cap*
4. *Brake fluid reservoir*
5. *Fuse box*
6. *Battery*
7. *Radiator*
8. *Condenser*
9. *Electric cooling fans*
10. *Engine coolant reservoir*
11. *Washer fluid tank*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Removing the engine compartment cover

Before jump starting or checking the power steering fluid, etc. in the engine compartment, remove the engine compartment covers as follows:



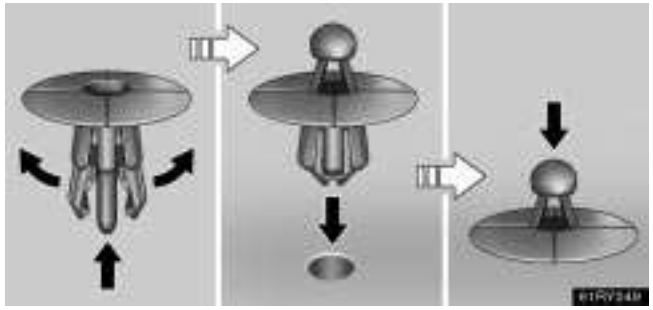
1. Push the core of the clips and remove the clips.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Remove the covers.

Be careful not to lose the removed plastic nuts and clips.

After checking the items, install the engine compartment covers and insert the plastic nuts and clips in their original positions.



When inserting the clips, do as shown above.

NOTICE
After installing the engine compartment covers, make sure the covers are securely in their original positions.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DO-IT-YOURSELF SERVICE PRECAUTIONS

If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure given in this Section.

You should be aware that improper or incomplete servicing may result in operating problems.

Performing do-it-yourself maintenance during the warranty period may affect your warranty coverage. Read the separate Lexus Warranty statement for details and suggestions.

This Section gives instructions only for those items that are relatively easy for an owner to perform. As explained in Section 5, there are still a number of items that must be performed by a qualified technician with special tools.

For information on tools and parts for do-it-yourself maintenance, see “Parts and tools” on page 625.

Utmost care should be taken when working on your vehicle to prevent accidental injury. Here are a few precautions that you should be especially careful to observe:

⚠ CAUTION

- **When the engine is running, keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt. (Removing rings, watches, and ties is advisable.)**
- **Right after driving, the engine compartment — the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and power steering fluid reservoir, etc. — will be hot. So be careful not to touch them. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.**
- **If the engine is hot, do not remove the radiator cap or loosen the drain plugs to prevent burning yourself.**
- **Do not smoke, cause sparks or allow open flames around fuel or the battery. Their fumes are flammable.**
- **Do not get under your vehicle with just the body jack supporting it. Always use automotive jack stands or other solid supports.**
- **Be sure that the ignition is off if you work near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille. With the ignition on, the electric cooling fans will automatically start to run if the engine coolant temperature is high and/or the air conditioning is on.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Use eye protection whenever you work on or under your vehicle where you may be exposed to flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc.**
- **Take care when filling the reservoir because brake fluid can harm your eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately. If you still feel uncomfortable with your eyes, go to the doctor.**
- **Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- *Remember that battery and ignition cables carry high currents or voltages. Be careful of accidentally causing a short circuit.*
- *Before closing the engine hood, check to see that you have not forgotten any tools, rags, etc.*
- *Do not drive with the air cleaner removed, or excessive engine wear could result. Also backfiring could cause a fire in the engine compartment.*
- *If you spill the fluid, be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging the parts or paint.*
- *Do not overfill automatic transmission fluid and power steering fluid, or the transmission and power steering could be damaged.*
- *Be careful not to scratch the glass surface with the wiper frame.*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

PARTS AND TOOLS

Here is a list of parts and tools you will need to perform do-it-yourself maintenance. Remember all Lexus parts are designed in metric sizes, so your tools must be metric.

Checking the engine oil level

Parts (if level is low):

- "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent
  See page 642 for details about engine oil selection.

Tools:

- Rag or paper towel
- Funnel (only for adding oil)

Checking the engine coolant level

Parts (if level is low):

- "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

  "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water.

Tools:

- Funnel (only for adding coolant)

Checking brake fluid

Parts (if level is low):

- FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid

Tools:

- Rag or paper towel
- Funnel (only for adding fluid)

Checking power steering fluid

Parts (if level is low):

- Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON®II or III

Tools:

- Rag or paper towel
- Funnel (only for adding fluid)

Checking battery condition

Tools:

- Warm water
- Baking soda
- Grease
- Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Checking and replacing the blade type fuses

Parts (if replacement is necessary):

- Fuse with same amperage rating as original

Checking the cartridge type fuses

Parts (if replacement is necessary):

- Genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent with same amperage rating as original

Adding washer fluid

Parts:

- Water
- Washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use)

Tools:

- Funnel

POSITIONING THE JACK

▶ ***Front***

▶ ***Rear (Two-wheel drive models)***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ *Rear (Four-wheel drive models)*

When jacking up your vehicle with the jack, position the jack correctly as shown in the illustrations.

⚠ CAUTION

When jacking, be sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of personal injury:

- **Follow jacking instructions.**
- **Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by the jack. Otherwise, personal injury may occur.**
- **Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.**
- **Stop the vehicle on a level firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and put the transmission in "P". Block the wheels on the opposite side of the jack up point if necessary.**
- **Make sure to set the jack properly in the jack point. Raising the vehicle with jack improperly positioned will damage the vehicle or may allow the vehicle to fall off the jack and cause personal injury.**
- **Never get under the vehicle when the vehicle is supported by the jack alone; use vehicle support stands.**
- **Do not raise the vehicle with someone in the vehicle.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **When raising the vehicle, do not place any objects on top of or underneath the jack.**
- **Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension: When jacking up, be sure to turn off the height control and stop the engine. Otherwise, the vehicle height may change in the automatic leveling function, resulting in an unexpected accident. For details, see page 496.**

NOTICE

Make sure to place the jack correctly, or your vehicle may be damaged.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 6 – 2

SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS

Engine

Specifications 630
Fuel 633
Fuel pump shut off system 636
Facts about engine oil consumption 636
Used engine oil 637
Checking the engine oil level 638
Checking the engine coolant level 643
Checking the radiator and condenser 645
Spark plugs 646

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

SPECIFICATIONS

— GENERAL

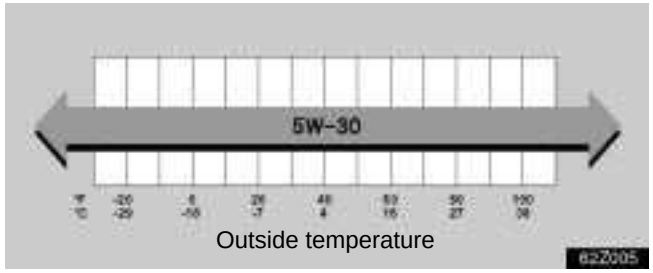
Model	3MZ-FE
Type	6 cylinder V type, 4 cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	92 × 83 mm (3.62 × 3.27 in.)
Displacement	3311 cm^3 (202.1 cu.in.)
Valve clearance (engine cold) Intake Exhaust	 0.15 — 0.25 mm (0.006 — 0.010 in.) 0.25 — 0.35 mm (0.010 — 0.014 in.)
Drive belt tension (with Borroughs drive belt tension gauge No. BT-33-73F)	125 ± 10 lb.

— FUEL

Fuel type	Only UNLEADED
Octane Rating	87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

— LUBRICATION SYSTEM

Oil capacity Drain and refill With filter Without filter	 4.7 L (5.0 qt., 4.1 lmp.qt.) 4.5 L (4.8 qt., 4.0 lmp.qt.)
Oil grade	API grade SL “Energy-Conserving” or ILSAC multigrade engine oil
Recommended oil viscosity (SAE):	

NOTE:
“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” is filled in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent to satisfy the above grade and viscosity. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

— COOLING SYSTEM

Capacity With transmission oil cooler Without transmission oil cooler	 9.6 L (10.1 qt., 8.4 lmp.qt.) 9.4 L (9.9 qt., 8.3 lmp.qt.)
Coolant type	"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

NOTE:
"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is filled in your Lexus vehicle at factory fill. In order to avoid technical problems, only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. Do not use plain water alone. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

— IGNITION SYSTEM

Spark plug	— Make	DENSO NGK	SK20R11 IFR6A11
	— Gap		1.1 mm (0.043 in.)

— ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

Battery	Open voltage at 20°C (68°F):	12.6 — 12.8 V 12.2 — 12.4 V 11.8 — 12.0 V	Fully charged Half charged Discharged
		[Voltage that is checked 20 minutes after the key is removed with all the lights turned off]	
	Charging rates	5A max.	

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

FUEL

Fuel type

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.

To help prevent gas station mixups, your Lexus has a smaller fuel tank opening. The special nozzle on pumps with unleaded fuel will fit it, but the larger standard nozzle on pumps with leaded gas will not.

NOTICE

Do not use leaded gasoline. Use of leaded gasoline will cause the three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and the emission control system to function improperly. Also, this can increase maintenance costs.

At a minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB 3.5-M93 in Canada.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Octane rating

Select Octane Rating 87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher. For improved vehicle performance, the use of premium unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher is recommended.

Use of unleaded fuel with an Octane Rating or Research Octane Number lower than stated above will cause persistent heavy knocking. If it is severe, this will lead to engine damage.

If your engine knocks...

If you detect heavy knocking even when using the recommended fuel, or if you hear steady knocking while holding a steady speed on level roads, consult your Lexus dealer.

However, occasionally, you may notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving up hills. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

Gasoline containing detergent additives

Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.

However, all gasoline sold in the U.S. contains detergent additives to keep clean and/or clean intake systems.

Quality gasoline

Automotive manufacturers in the U.S., Europe and Japan have developed a specification for quality fuel named World-W ide Fuel Charter (WWFC) that is expected to be applied world wide. The WWFC consists of four categories that depend on required emission levels. In the U.S., category 4 has been adopted. The WWFC improves air quality by providing for better emissions in vehicle fleets, and customer satisfaction through better vehicle performance.

Cleaner burning gasoline

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE is available in many areas.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions, and improve air quality.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Oxygenates in gasoline

Lexus allows the use of oxygenate blended gasoline where the oxygenate content is up to 10% ethanol or 15% MTBE. If you use gasohol in your Lexus, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.

Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

Gasoline containing MMT

Some gasoline contain an octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected. The Malfunction Indicator Lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

NOTICE

- ***Do not use gasohol other than stated above. It will cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.***
- ***If drivability problems are encountered (poor hot starting, vaporizing, engine knock, etc.), discontinue its use.***
- ***Take care not to spill gasohol during refueling. Gasohol may cause paint damage.***

Fuel tank capacity

Gasoline quality

In a very few cases, you may experience driveability problems caused by the particular gasoline that you are using. If you continue to have unacceptable driveability, try changing gasoline brands. If this does not rectify your problem, then consult your Lexus dealer.

72.5 L (19.2 gal., 15.9 Imp.gal.)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

FUEL PUMP SHUT OFF SYSTEM

The fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine to minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an airbag inflates upon collision. To restart the engine after the fuel pump shut off system activates, turn the ignition switch to “ACC” or “LOCK” once and start it.

⚠ CAUTION

Inspect the ground under the vehicle before restarting the engine. If you find that liquid has leaked onto the ground, it is the fuel system has been damaged and it is in need of repair. In this case, do not restart the engine.

FACTS ABOUT ENGINE OIL CONSUMPTION

Functions of engine oil

Engine oil has the primary function of lubricating and cooling the inside of the engine, and plays a major role in maintaining the engine in proper working order.

Engine oil consumption

It is normal that an engine should consume some engine oil during normal engine operation. The causes of oil consumption in a normal engine are as follows.

- Oil is used to lubricate pistons, piston rings and cylinders. A thin film of oil is left on the cylinder wall when a piston moves downwards in the cylinder. High negative pressure generated when the vehicle is decelerating sucks some of this oil into the combustion chamber. This oil as well as some part of the oil film left on the cylinder wall is burned by the high temperature combustion gases during the combustion process.
- Oil is also used to lubricate the stems of the intake valves. Some of this oil is sucked into the combustion chamber together with the intake air and is burned along with the fuel. High temperature exhaust gases also burn the oil used to lubricate the exhaust valve stems.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the viscosity of the oil, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.

More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds and frequent acceleration and deceleration.

A new engine consumes more oil, since its pistons, piston rings and cylinder walls have not become conditioned.

Oil consumption: Max. 1.0 L per 1000 km (1.1 qt./600 miles, 0.9 lmp. qt./600 miles)

When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.

For example, if a vehicle is used for repeated short trips and consumes a normal amount of oil, the dipstick may not show any drop in the oil level at all, even after 1000 km (600 miles) or more. This is because the oil is gradually becoming diluted with fuel or moisture, making it appear that the oil level has not changed.

The diluting ingredients evaporate out when the vehicle is then driven at high speeds, as on an expressway, making it appear that oil is excessively consumed after driving at high speeds.

NOTICE

Failure to check the oil level regularly could lead to serious engine trouble due to insufficient oil.

For detailed information on oil level check, see “Checking the engine oil level” on page 638.

Importance of engine oil level check

One of the most important points in proper vehicle maintenance is to keep the engine oil at the optimum level so that oil function will not be impaired. Therefore, it is essential that the oil level be checked regularly. Lexus recommends that the oil level be checked every time you refuel the vehicle.

USED ENGINE OIL

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- **Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact with it. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.**
- **Do not leave used oil within the reach of children.**
- **Dispose of used oil and used oil filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and used oil filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer or a service station for information concerning recycling or disposal.**

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

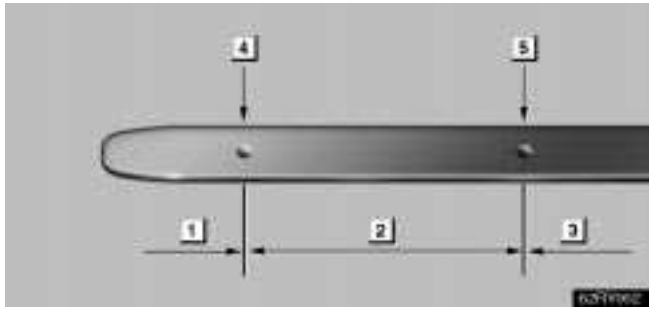
With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

1. To get a true reading, the vehicle should be on a level ground. After turning off the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

2. Pull the dipstick out, hold a rag under the end and wipe it clean.

3. Reinsert the dipstick and push it in as far as it will go, or the reading will not be correct.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ 1 *Add oil* 2 *O.K.* 3 *Too full*

NOTICE

Be careful not to drop the engine oil on the vehicle components.

4. Pull the dipstick out and look at the oil level while holding a rag under the end. If it is between the low level mark (4) and the full level mark (5), it is O.K.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the oil level is below or only slightly above the low mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.

Remove the oil filler cap and add engine oil a little at a time, checking the dipstick. We recommend that you use a funnel when adding oil. The approximate quantity of oil needed to fill between the low level mark and the full level mark on the dipstick is indicated below for reference.

When the level reaches within the correct range, return the filler cap and turn the cap clockwise until you hear a click.

Oil quantity, L (qt., Imp. qt.)	1.5 (1.6, 1.3)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- ***Be careful not to spill the engine oil on the vehicle components.***
- ***Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged. Check the oil level on the dipstick once again after adding the oil.***

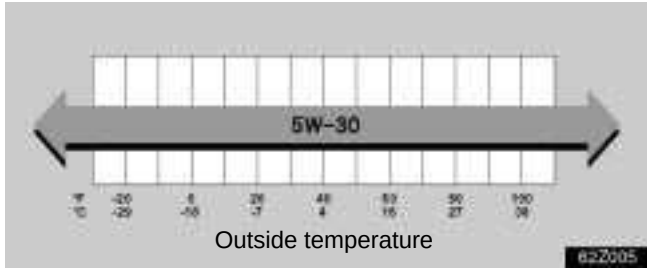
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine oil selection

“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” is filled in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade: API grade SL “Energy-Conserving” or ILSAC multigrade engine oil.

Recommended viscosity: SAE 5W-30



SAE 5W-30 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 5W-30 is not available, SAE 10W-30 may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 5W-30 at the next oil change.

Oil identification marks

▶ ***API Service Symbol*** ▶ ***ILSAC Certification Mark***

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.

- The API Service Symbol is located anywhere on the outside of the container.

  The top portion of the label shows the oil quality by API (American Petroleum Institute) designation such as SL. The center portion of the label shows the SAE viscosity grade such as SAE 5W-30. “Energy-Conserving”, shown in the lower portion, indicates that the oil has fuel-saving capabilities.

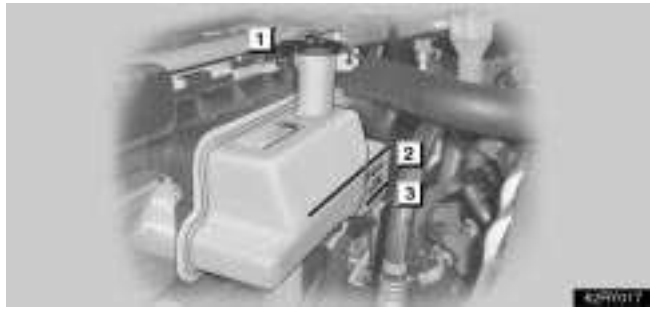
- The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To ensure excellent lubrication performance for your engine, “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” is available, which has been specifically tested and approved for all Lexus engines.

Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details about “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil”.

CHECKING THE ENGINE COOLANT LEVEL



▶ 1 *Reservoir cap* 2 *“FULL” (upper) line*
3 *“LOW” (lower) line*

Look at the see-through coolant reservoir when the engine is cold. The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir. If the level is low, add the coolant. (For the coolant type, see “Coolant type selection” described below.)

The coolant level in the reservoir will vary with engine temperature. However, if the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant. Bring the level up to the “FULL” line.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing, there may be a leak in the system. Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant filler cap, radiator cap and drain cock and water pump.

If you can find no leak, have your Lexus dealer test the radiator cap pressure and check for leaks in the cooling system.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent burning yourself, do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot.

NOTICE

Do not use plain water alone.

Coolant type selection

Use of improper coolants may damage your engine cooling system.

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. (Coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology consists of the combination of low phosphates and organic acids.)

“Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. This coolant provides protection down to about -35°C (-31°F).

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Lexus recommends “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” which has been tested to ensure that it will not cause corrosion nor result in malfunction of your engine coolant system with proper usage. “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is formulated with long- life hybrid organic acid technology and has been specifically designed to avoid engine cooling system malfunction on Lexus vehicles.

Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the radiator and condenser, do not perform the work by yourself.

CHECKING THE RADIATOR AND CONDENSER

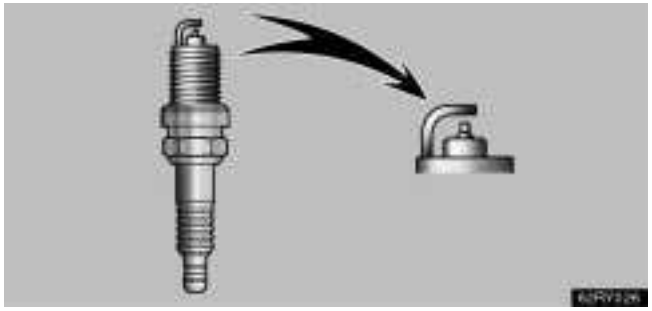
If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, take your vehicle to a Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent burning yourself, be careful not to touch the radiator or condenser when the engine is hot.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

SPARK PLUGS



Your engine is fitted with iridium-tipped spark plugs.

NOTICE
Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs and do not adjust gaps for your engine performance and smooth drivability.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 6 – 3

SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS

Chassis

Specifications 648
Checking brake fluid 653
Checking power steering fluid 655
Checking tire inflation pressure 657
Tire information 660
Types of tires 669
Rotating tires 670
Checking and replacing tires 671
Installing snow tires and chains 673
Replacing wheels 676
Aluminum wheel precautions 677
Suspension and chassis 677

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

SPECIFICATIONS

— REAR DIFFERENTIAL

Oil capacity	0.9 L (1.0 qt., 0.8 Imp.qt.)
Oil type	Hypoid gear oil API GL-5
Recommended oil viscosity	Above -18°C (0°F) SAE 90 Below -18°C (0°F) SAE 80W or 80W-90

NOTE:
"Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" is filled in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

— AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE

Fluid capacity Drain and refill Two-wheel drive models Four-wheel drive models	 3.5 L (3.7 qt., 3.1 Imp.qt.) 3.6 L (3.8 qt., 3.2 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type	**Toyota Genuine ATF Type T-IV***

* Change automatic transmission fluid only as necessary. Generally, it is necessary to change automatic transmission fluid only if your vehicle is driven under one of the Special Operating Conditions listed in your "Owner's Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance". When changing the automatic transmission fluid, use only "Toyota Genuine ATF Type T-IV" (ATF JWS3309 or NWS6500) to aid in assuring optimum transaxle performance.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE
Using automatic transmission fluid other than “Toyota Genuine ATF Type T-IV” may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the automatic transmission of your vehicle.

Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHASSIS

— TRANSFER

Oil capacity	0.9 L (1.0 qt., 0.8 Imp. qt.)
Oil type	Hypoid gear oil API GL-5
Recommended oil viscosity	Above -18°C (0°F) SAE 90 Below -18°C (0°F) SAE 80W or 80W-90

— BRAKES

Pedal clearance	80 mm (3.1 in.) Min. *1
Pedal free play	2 — 3 mm (0.079 — 0.118 in.)
Brake pad wear limit	1.0 mm (0.04 in.)
Parking brake lining wear limit	1.0 mm (0.04 in.)
Parking brake adjustment	5 — 7 clicks *2
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3

*1: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with the pressure of 490 N (50 kgf, 110 lbf) with the engine running

*2: Parking brake adjustment when depressed with the pressure of 300 N (31 kgf, 67 lbf)

— STEERING

Wheel free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)
Power steering fluid type	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON®II or III

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

— TIRES AND WHEELS (type A)

Tire size	225/65R17 101S
Tire inflation pressure Recommended cold tire inflation pressure	210 kPa (2.1 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 30 psi) For sustained high speeds above 160 km/h (100 mph), in countries where such speeds are permitted by law, add 10 kPa (0.1 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 1.5 psi) to the front tires and rear tires, but never exceed the maximum cold tire pressure molded on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	17 × 6 1/2 JJ
Wheel nut torque	103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf)

NOTE:
For complete information on tires (e.g. replacing tires or replacing wheels), see “Checking tire inflation pressure” through “Aluminum wheel precautions” on pages 657 through 677.

— TIRES AND WHEELS (type B)

Tire size	P235/55R18 99V
Tire inflation pressure Recommended cold tire inflation pressure	210 kPa (2.1 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 30 psi)
Wheel size	18 x 7 JJ
Wheel nut torque	103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 ft·lbf)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE:
For complete information on tires (e.g. replacing tires or replacing wheels), see “Checking tire inflation pressure” through “Aluminum wheel precautions” on pages 657 through 677.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHECKING BRAKE FLUID

To check the fluid level, simply look at the see-through reservoir. The level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the tank.

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear. So be sure to keep the reservoir filled.

If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious mechanical problem.

If the level is low, add FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid to the brake reservoir.

Remove and replace the reservoir cap by hand. Add brake fluid up to the "MAX" line.

Use only newly opened brake fluid. Once opened, brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air, and excess moisture can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency.

⚠ CAUTION

Take care when filling the reservoir because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets in your hands or eyes, flush them with clean water immediately. If you still feel uncomfortable with your hands or eyes, go to the doctor.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE
If you spill some of the fluid, be sure to wipe it off to prevent it from damaging the parts or paintwork.

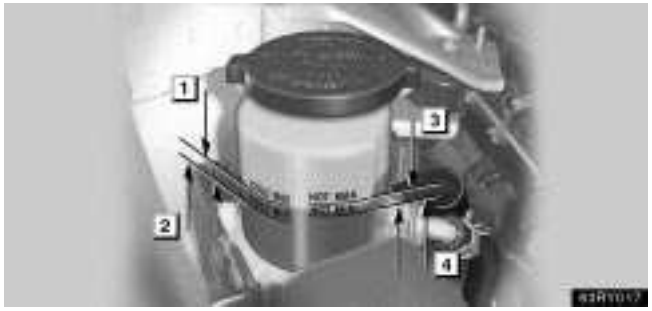
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHECKING POWER STEERING FLUID

The power steering fluid reservoir is located under the engine compartment cover. Before checking the power steering fluid, remove the cover. (For details, see “Removing the engine compartment cover” on page 620.)

Check the fluid level through the reservoir. If necessary, add automatic transmission fluid DEXRON®II or III.

If the vehicle has been driven around 80 km/h (50 mph) for 20 minutes (a little more in frigid temperatures), the fluid is hot (60°C — 80°C or 140°F — 175°F). You may also check the level when the fluid is cold (about room temperature, 10°C — 30°C or 50°F — 85°F) if the engine has not been run for about five hours.



▶ 1 *If cold O.K.* 2 *If cold add* 3 *If hot O.K.* 4 *If hot add*

Clean all dirt off the reservoir and look at the fluid level. If the fluid is cold, the level should be in the “COLD” range. Similarly, if it is hot, the fluid level should be in the “HOT” range. If the level is at the low side of the appropriate range, add automatic transmission fluid DEXRON®II or III to bring the level within the range.

To remove the reservoir cap, turn it counterclockwise and lift up. To reinstall it, turn it clockwise. After replacing the reservoir cap, visually check the steering box case, vane pump and hose connections for leaks or damage.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

The reservoir may be hot so be careful not to burn yourself.

NOTICE

Avoid overfilling, or the power steering could be damaged.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHECKING TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE

The recommended cold tire inflation pressures, tire sizes and the combined weight of occupants and cargo (vehicle capacity weight) are described on pages 651 and 712. They are also described on the tire and loading information label as shown.

You should check the tire inflation pressure every two weeks, or at least once a month. And do not forget the spare!

The following instructions for checking tire inflation pressure should be observed:

- **The pressure should be checked only when the tires are cold.** If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile since, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- **Always use a tire pressure gauge.** The appearance of a tire can be misleading. Besides, tire inflation pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade handling and ride.
- **Do not bleed or reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.** It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- **Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.** The passengers and luggage weight should be located so that the vehicle is balanced.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Inspection and adjustment procedure

▶ 1 *Tire valve*
2 *Tire pressure gauge*

1. Remove the tire valve cap.

2. Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge to the tire valve.

3. Read the pressure using a graduation of the gauge.

4. In case that the tire inflation pressure is not within the prescribed range, insert the compressed air from the valve. In case of applying too much air, press the center of the valve and release the air to adjust.

5. After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soap water to the valve and check the leakage.

6. Install the tire valve cap.

If the gauge and the air pump are not available, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps. Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If the caps have been lost, have new ones put on as soon as possible.

Incorrect tire inflation pressure may waste fuel, reduce the comfort of driving, reduce tire life and make your vehicle less safe to drive.

If a tire frequently needs refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and cause an accident resulting in death or serious injuries.

Low tire pressure (underinflation) —

- **Excessive wear**
- **Uneven wear**
- **Poor handling**
- **Possibility of blowouts from overheated tire**
- **Poor sealing of the tire bead**
- **Wheel deformation and/or tire separation**
- **A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards**

High tire pressure (overinflation) —

- **Poor handling**
- **Excessive wear**
- **Uneven wear**
- **A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

TIRE INFORMATION

Tire symbols

▶ ***The illustration indicates typical tire symbols.***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

1 **Tire size:** For details, see “Tire size” on page 662.

2 **DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN):** For details, see “DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN)” on page 662.

3 **Location of the tread wear indicators:** For details, see “Checking and replacing tires” on page 671.

4 **Tire ply composition and materials:** Plies mean a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords mean the strands forming the plies in the tire.

5 **Radial tires or bias- ply —** A radial tire has “RADIAL” on the sidewall. A tire not marked with “RADIAL” is a bias-ply tire.

6 **“TUBELESS” or “TUBE TYPE”:** A tubeless tire does not have a tube inside the tire and air is directly filled in the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.

7 **Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure:** For details, see “Checking and replacing tires” on page 671.

8 **Maximum cold tire inflation pressure:** This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated. For details about recommended cold tire inflation pressure, see “Specifications” on page 648.

9 **Uniform tire quality grading —** For details, see “Uniform tire quality grading” that follows.

10 **Summer tire or all season tire:** An all season tire has “M+S” on the sidewall. The tire not marked with “M+S” is a summer tire. For details, see “Types of tires” on page 669.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN)

▶ ***The illustration indicates typical DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN).***

1. ***"DOT" symbol***
2. ***Tire Identification Number (TIN)***
3. ***Tire manufacturer's identification mark***
4. ***Tire size code***
5. ***Manufacturer's optional tire type code***
6. ***Manufacturing week***
7. ***Manufacturing year***

The "DOT" symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

Tire size

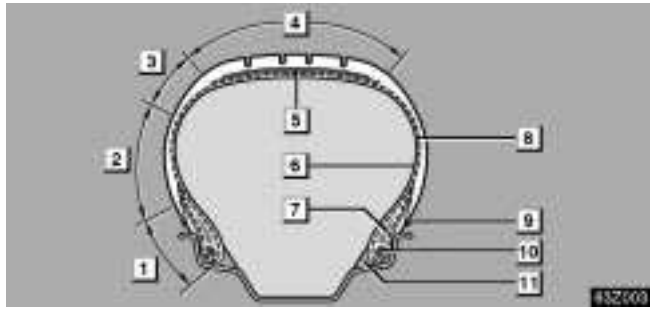
▶ ***The illustration indicates typical tire size.***

1. ***Tire use (P=Passenger car, T=Temporary use)***
2. ***Section width (in millimeters)***
3. ***Aspect ratio (tire height to section width)***
4. ***Tire construction code (R=Radial, D=Diagonal)***
5. ***Wheel diameter (in inch)***
6. ***Load index (2 digits or 3 digits)***
7. ***Speed symbol (alphabet with one letter)***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ 1 *Section width*
2 *Tire height*
3 *Wheel diameter*

Name of each section of tire



▶ 1 *Bead*
2 *Sidewall*
3 *Shoulder*
4 *Tread*
5 *Belt*
6 *Inner liner*
7 *Reinforcing rubber*
8 *Carcass*
9 *Rim lines*
10 *Bead wires*
11 *Chafer*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Uniform tire quality grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation. It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

DOT quality grades — All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

Treadwear — The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 — 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA, A, B, C — The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

Temperature A, B, C — The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades for this tire are established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire related terms

Cold tire inflation pressure	Tire inflation pressure when the vehicle has been parked at least 3 hours or more, or it has not been driven more than 1.5 km or 1 mile under that condition
Maximum inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated and shown on the sidewall of the tire
Recommended inflation pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer
Accessory weight	The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)
Curb weight	The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, and, if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine
Maximum loaded vehicle weight	The sum of — (a) Curb weight; (b) Accessory weight; (c) Vehicle capacity weight; and (d) Production options weight

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Normal occupant weight	68 kg (150 lb.) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1 that follows
Production options weight	The combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 2.3 kg (5 lb.) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim
Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity)	The rated cargo and luggage load plus 68 kg (150 lb.) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity
Intended outboard sidewall	(a) The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or (b) The outward facing sidewall of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle
Occupant distribution	Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1 that follows

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rim	A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated
Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)	Nominal diameter of the bead seat
Rim size designation	Rim diameter and width
Rim type designation	The industry of manufacturer’s designation for a rim by style or code
Rim width	Nominal distance between rim flanges
Vehicle maximum load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two
Vehicle normal load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1 that follows) and dividing by two
Weather side	The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Table 1 — Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2 through 4	2	2 in front
5 through 10	3	2 in front, 1 in second seat

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

TYPES OF TIRES

Determine what kind of tires your vehicle is originally equipped with.

1. Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed capability tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions.

Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

2. All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use all year round.

All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

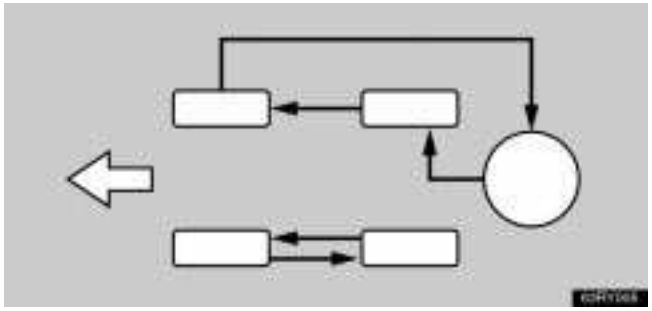
The details about how to distinguish summer tires from all season tires are described on page 660.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not mix summer and all season tires on your vehicle as this can cause dangerous handling characteristics, resulting in loss of control.**
- **Do not use tires other than the manufacturer's designated tires, and never mix tires or wheels of the sizes different from the originals.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

ROTATING TIRES



To equalize the wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that you rotate your tires according to the maintenance schedule. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Owner's Manual Supplement / Scheduled Maintenance".) However, the most appropriate timing for tire rotation may vary according to your driving habits and road surface conditions.

The wheel assemblies must be rotated as illustrated above.

When rotating tires, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tire pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of balance wheels, or severe braking.

Before storing radial, snow or studded tires, mark the direction of rotation and be sure to install them in the same direction when using them again. Tires should be stored in a cool dry place.

Initial adjustment of the tire pressure warning system is necessary after you have rotated your tires. See "Tire pressure warning system" on page 512.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHECKING AND REPLACING TIRES

When to replace your tires

▶ 1 *New tread* 2 *Tread wear indicator*
3 *Worn tread*

Replace the tires when the tread wear indicators show. The location of the tread wear indicators is shown by the marks such as "TWI" or "△" marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

The tires on your Lexus have built-in tread wear indicators to help you know when the tires need replacement. When the tread depth wears to 1.6 mm (0.06 in.) or less, the indicators will appear. If you can see the indicators in two or more adjacent grooves, the tire should be replaced.

The effectiveness of snow tires is lost if the tread wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.).

If you have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, or bulges indicating internal damage, the tire should be replaced.

If a tire often goes flat or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage, it should be replaced. If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

If an air loss occurs while driving, do not continue driving with a deflated tire. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire beyond repair.

Any tires which are over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if damage is not obvious.

Tires deteriorate with age even if they have never or seldom been used.

This also applies to the spare tire and tires stored for future use.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire selection

When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size and construction, and the same or greater maximum load as the originally installed tires. Also, on four-wheel drive models, all the tires must be the same brand and have the same tread patterns.

Using any other size or type of tire may seriously affect handling, ride, speedometer/odometer calibration, ground clearance, and clearance between the body and tires or snow chains.

Check that the maximum load of the replaced tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever greater. As for the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire, and as for the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR), see the Certification Label. For details about Certification Label and sidewall of the tire, see pages 615 and 660.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following instructions. Otherwise, an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.

- **Do not mix radial, bias belted, or bias-ply tires on your vehicle, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control.**
- **Do not use tires other than the manufacturer's recommended size, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control.**
- **Four-wheel drive models:**
  Do not use tires of different brands, sizes, construction or tread patterns, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

INSTALLING SNOW TIRES AND CHAINS

When to use snow tires or chains

Snow tires or chains are recommended when driving on snow or ice.

On wet or dry roads, conventional or radial tires provide better traction than snow or studded tires.

Snow tire selection

If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Also, on four-wheel drive models, all the tires must be the same brand and have the same tread patterns.

Do not use tires other than stated above. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restrictions.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following instructions. Otherwise, an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.

- **Do not use snow tires other than the manufacturer's recommended size, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control.**
- **Four-wheel drive models:**
  Do not use snow tires of different brands, sizes, construction or tread patterns, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Snow tire installation

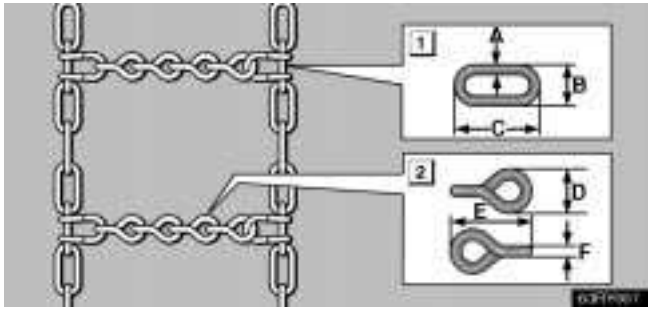
Snow tires should be installed on all wheels.

Installing snow tires on the front wheels only can lead to an excessive difference in road grip capability between the front and rear tires which could cause loss of vehicle control.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Snow tires should be inflated to the same pressure as the original tires.**
- **Never drive over 120 km/h (75 mph) with any type of snow tires.**

Tire chain selection



▶ 1 *Side chain* 2 *Cross chain*

Use the tire chains of correct size.

For 225/65R17 101S or P235/55R18 99V tires, use the following type chains.

	mm	(in.)
A: Diameter of side chain	3.0	(0.12)
B: Width of side chain	10.0	(0.39)
C: Length of side chain	30.0	(1.18)
D: Width of cross chain	14.0	(0.55)
E: Length of cross chain	25.0	(0.98)
F: Diameter of cross chain	4.0	(0.16)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location or type of road. Always check the local regulations before installing chains.

NOTICE

If the wrong combination of tire and chain is used, the chains could damage the vehicle body.

Chain installation

Install the chains on the front tires as tightly as possible. Do not use tire chains on the rear tires. Retighten chains after driving 0.5 — 1.0 km (1/4 — 1/2 mile).

When installing chains on your tires, carefully follow the instructions of the chain manufacturer.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.**
- **Drive carefully avoiding bumps, holes, and sharp turns, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or locked-wheel braking, as use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.**
- **When driving with chains installed, be sure to drive carefully. Slow down before entering curves to avoid losing control of the vehicle. Otherwise an accident may occur.**
- **Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension: When installing the tire chains, be sure to turn off the height control and stop the engine. Otherwise, the vehicle height may change in the automatic leveling function, resulting in an unexpected accident. For details, see page 496.**

If the chains are installed, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly. See "Tire pressure warning system" on page 512.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

REPLACING WHEELS

When to replace your wheels

If you have wheel damage such as bending, cracks or heavy corrosion, the wheel should be replaced.

If you fail to replace a damaged wheel, the tire may slip off the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

Replacement with used wheels is not recommended as they may have been subjected to rough treatment or high mileage and could fail without warning. Also, bent wheels which have been straightened may have hidden structural damage and therefore should not be used. Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and offset.

Correct replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

A wheel of a different size or type may adversely affect handling, wheel and bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer/odometer calibration, stopping ability, headlight aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or snow chain clearance to the body and chassis.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following instructions. Otherwise, an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.

- **Do not use wheels other than the manufacturer's recommended size, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control.**
- **Four-wheel drive models:**
  Do not use wheels of different brands, sizes and types, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control.

Initial adjustment of the tire pressure warning system is necessary after you have replaced your wheels. See "Tire pressure warning system" on page 512.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

ALUMINUM WHEEL PRECAUTIONS

- When installing aluminum wheels, check that the wheel nuts are tight after driving your vehicle the first 1600 km (1000 miles).
- If you have rotated, repaired, or changed your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- When using tire chains, be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels.
- Use only the Lexus wheel nuts and wrench designed for your aluminum wheels.
- When balancing your wheels, use only Lexus balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer.
- As with any wheel, periodically check your aluminum wheels for damage. If damaged, replace immediately.

SUSPENSION AND CHASSIS

CAUTION

Do not modify the suspension/chassis with lift kits, spacers, springs, etc. It can cause dangerous handling characteristics, resulting in loss of control.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 6 – 4

SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS

Electrical components

Specifications 680
Checking battery condition 691
Battery recharging precautions 697
Checking and replacing the blade type fuses 698
Checking the cartridge type fuses 700
Adding washer fluid 703
Checking the headlight aim 704
Replacing light bulbs 705

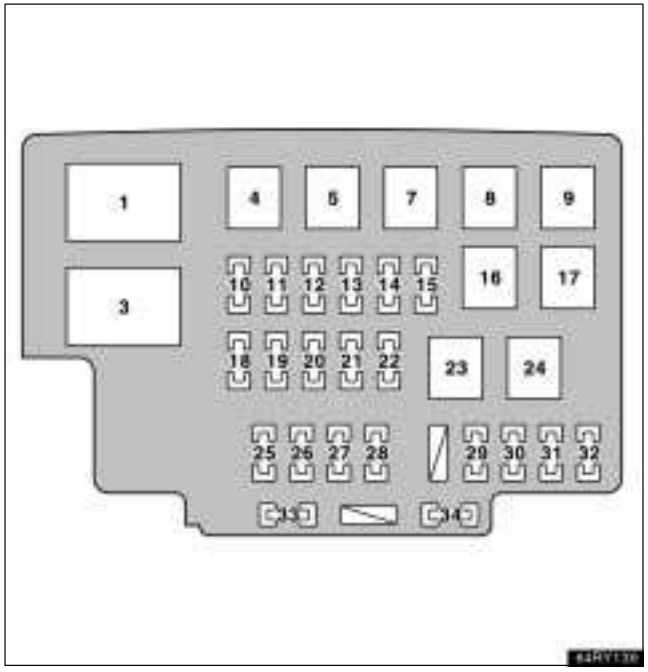
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

SPECIFICATIONS

— FUSE LOCATIONS

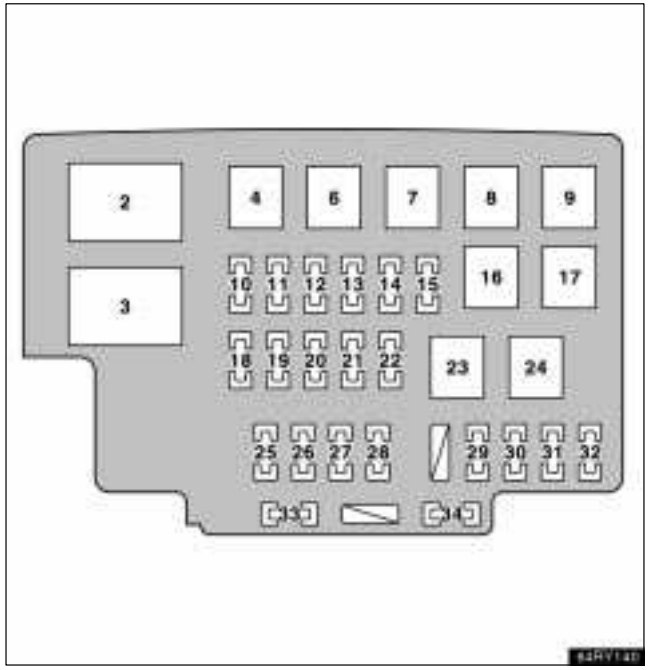
▶ 1 *Engine compartment*
2 3 *Driver's side instrument panel*

— FUSES

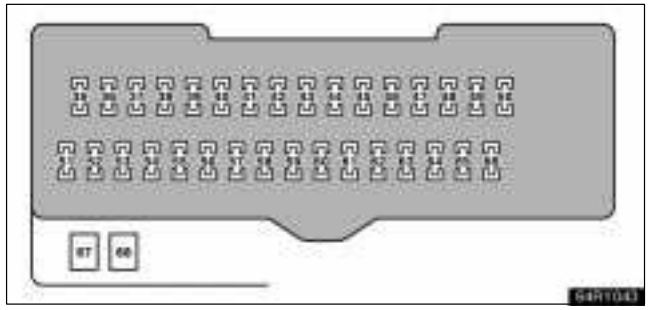


▶ *Engine compartment*
(with electronically modulated air suspension)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ ***Engine compartment***
(without electronically modulated air suspension)



▶ ***Driver's side instrument panel***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
1	AIRSUS	60	Electronically modulated air suspension
2	INP-J/B	100	All components in “HEATER”, “H-LP CLN”, “TAIL”, “PANEL”, “FR FOG”, “CIG”, “RADIO NO. 2”, “ECU-ACC”, “PWR OUTLET NO. 1”, “GAUGE NO. 1”, “ECU-IG NO. 1”,“ FR WIP”, “RR WIP”, “WASHER”, “SEAT HTR”, “ECU-IG NO. 2”, “P/SEAT”, “PWR”, “TI&TE”, “RR DOOR LH”, “RR DOOR RH”, “MPX-B”, “AM1”, “DOOR NO. 2”, “STOP”, “OBD”, “FUEL OPN”, “AIRSUS” (7.5 A), “S/ROOF”, “FR DEF” and “RR FOG” fuses

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
3	ALT	140	All components in “INP-J/B”, “AIRSUS” (60 A), “ABS NO. 1”, “ABS NO. 2”, “RDI FAN”, “RR DEF”, “HEATER”, “PBD”, “H-LP CLN/MSB”, “H-LP CLN”, “PWR OUTLET NO. 2”, “TOWING”, “TAIL”, “PANEL”, “FR FOG”, “CIG”, “RADIO NO. 2”, “ECU-ACC”, “PWR OUTLET NO. 1”, “GAUGE NO. 1”, “ECU-IG NO. 1”, “FR WIP”, “RR WIP”, “WASHER”, “HEATER”, “SEAT HTR”, “ECU-IG NO. 2”, “P/SEAT”, “PWR”, “TI&TE”, “RR DOOR LH”, “RR DOOR RH”, “MPX-B”, “AM1”, “DOOR NO. 2”, “STOP”, “OBD”, “FUEL OPN”, “AIRSUS” (7.5 A), “S/ROOF”, “FR DEF” and “RR FOG” fuses
4	PBD	30	Power back door
5	H-LP CLN/MSB	30	Headlight cleaner
6	H-LP CLN	30	Headlight cleaner

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
7	ABS NO. 1	30	Anti-lock brake system, vehicle stability control system, traction control system, brake assist system
8	RR DEF	40	Rear window defogger
9	HEATER	50	Air conditioning system, rear window defogger
10	DRL	7.5	Daytime running light system
11	H-LP L LWR	15	Left-hand headlight (low beam)
12	H-LP L UPR	15	Left-hand headlight (high beam)
13	H-LP R UPR	15	Right-hand headlight (high beam)
14	PWR OUTLET NO. 2	20	Power outlet
15	TOWING	30	Trailer lights
16	ABS NO. 2	50	Anti-lock brake system, vehicle stability control system, traction control system, brake assist system

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
17	RDI FAN	50	Electric cooling fan
18	HAZ	15	Turn signal lights
19	CRT	7.5	Car audio system

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

20	**ALT-S**	**7.5**	Charging system
21	**ETCS**	**10**	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
22	**HORN**	**10**	Horns
23	**MAIN**	**40**	Daytime running light system, left-hand headlight, right-hand headlight, all components in “H-LP R LWR”, “H-LP R UPR”, “H-LP L UPR”, “H-LP L LWR” and “DRL” fuses
24	**AM2**	**30**	Starting system, all components in “GAUGE NO. 2”, “IGN” and “INJ” fuses
25	**RADIO NO. 1**	**15**	Car audio system, navigation system

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
26	**ECU-B**	**7.5**	Power window, multiplex communication system, gauge and meters, instrument cluster lights, instrument panel lights, air conditioning system, garage door opener, illuminated entry system, wireless remote control system, power back door, driving position memory system, navigation system display, moon roof, tilt and telescopic steering, power seats, outside rear view mirror, windshield wipers

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

27	**DOME**	**7.5**	Gauge and meters, personal lights, vanity lights, door courtesy lights, inside door handle lights, ignition switch light, foot lights, scuff plate lights, luggage compartment light, interior light
28	**TEL**	**7.5**	Lexus Link System
29	**AMP**	**30**	Car audio system
30	**DOOR NO. 1**	**25**	Multiplex communication system
No.	**FUSE**	**AMPERE**	**CIRCUIT**
31	**A/F**	**25**	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
32	**EFI NO. 1**	**25**	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system and all components in “EFI NO. 2” fuse
33	**H-LP R LWR**	**15**	Right-hand headlight (low beam)
34	**EFI NO. 2**	**10**	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
35	**RR DOOR RH**	**20**	Rear right side power window
36	**RR DOOR LH**	**20**	Rear left side power window
37	**FUEL OPN**	**7.5**	Fuel filler door opener

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

38	FR FOG	15	Front fog lights
39	OBD	7.5	On-board diagnosis system
40	FR DEF	25	Windshield wiper deicer and all components in “MIR HTR” fuse
No.	**FUSE**	**AMPERE**	**CIRCUIT**
41	STOP	10	Tail lights, high mounted stoplight, rear light failure warning light, anti-lock brake system, vehicle stability control system, traction control system, brake assist system, electronically modulated air suspension, shift lock control system, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
42	TI&TE	30	Tilt and telescopic steering
43	MPX-B	7.5	No circuit
44	AM1	7.5	Starter system
45	RR FOG	7.5	No circuit
46	AIR SUS	7.5	Electronically modulated air suspension
47	DOOR NO. 2	25	Multiplex communication system
48	S/ROOF	30	Moon roof
49	TAIL	10	Front fog lights, instrument cluster lights, instrument panel lights, front side marker lights, tail lights, license plate lights, towing converter

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
50	PANEL	7.5	Glove box light, instrument cluster lights, instrument panel lights, console box light, car audio system, power outlet, garage door opener switch, electronically controlled automatic transmission system, headlight cleaner, electronically controlled air suspension, seat heaters, steering switches, power back door
51	ECU-IG NO. 1	7.5	Power rear view mirror control, moon roof, multiplex communication system, navigation system display, shift lock control system, multiplex communication system (power door lock system, wireless remote control system), driving position memory system, vehicle stability control system, traction control system, windshield wipers, electronically controlled automatic transmission, seat heaters, power seats, tilt and telescopic steering, power back door, electronically modulated air suspension, Lexus Link System
No.	**FUSE**	**AMPERE**	**CIRCUIT**
52	ECU-IG NO. 2	10	Automatic headlight leveling system, vehicle stability control system, dynamic laser cruise control, headlight cleaner, adaptive front-lighting system

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

53	**HEATER**	**7.5**	Electric cooling fan, air conditioning system, rear window defogger, ignition switch, windshield wiper deicer
54	**WASHER**	**20**	Windshield washer
55	**SEAT HTR**	**20**	Seat heaters
56	**GAUGE NO. 1**	**7.5**	Instrument cluster lights, instrument panel lights, emergency flashers, seat belt, power outlet, rear light failure warning light, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, back-up lights
57	**FR WIP**	**30**	Windshield wipers
58	**RR WIP**	**15**	Rear window wiper
No.	**FUSE**	**AMPERE**	**CIRCUIT**
59	**INJ**	**20**	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
60	**IGN**	**10**	SRS airbag system, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, front passenger occupant classification system, stop lights
61	**GAUGE NO. 2**	**7.5**	Gauge and meters
62	**ECU-ACC**	**7.5**	Navigation system display, power rear view mirror control, shift lock control system, multiplex communication system
63	**CIG**	**15**	Cigarette lighter, power outlet

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

No.	FUSE	AMPERE	CIRCUIT
64	PWR OUTLET NO. 1	15	Power outlet
65	RADIO NO. 2	7.5	Instrument cluster lights, instrument panel lights, navigation system, car audio system, Lexus Link System
66	MIR HTR	10	Outside rear view mirror defogger
67	P/SEAT	30	Power seats
68	PWR	30	Power window, multiplex communication system (power door lock system, wireless remote control system), outside rear view mirror

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

CHECKING BATTERY CONDITION

Precautions

⚠ CAUTION

BATTERY PRECAUTIONS

The battery produces flammable and explosive hydrogen gas.

- **Do not cause a spark by contacting the battery terminals with tools.**
- **Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.**

The electrolyte contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.

- **Avoid contact with eyes, skin or clothes.**
- **Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.**
- **Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.**
- **Keep children away from the battery.**

EMERGENCY MEASURES

- **If electrolyte gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the medical office.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- **If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel a pain or burn, get medical attention immediately.**
- **If electrolyte gets on your clothes, there is a possibility of its soaking through to your skin, so immediately take off the exposed clothing and follow the procedure above, if necessary.**
- **If you accidentally swallow electrolyte, drink a large quantity of water or milk. Follow with milk of magnesia, beaten raw egg or vegetable oil. Then go immediately for emergency help.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Checking battery exterior

▶ 1 *Terminals* 2 *Hold-down clamp*

Check the battery for corroded or loose connections, cracks, or loose hold-down clamps.

1. If the battery is corroded, wash it off with a solution of warm water and baking soda. Coat the terminals with grease to prevent further corrosion.

2. If the connections are loose, tighten the clamp bolts — but do not overtighten.

3. Tighten the hold-down clamp only enough to keep the battery firmly in place. Overtightening may damage the battery case.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- ***Make sure the engine and all accessories are turned off before performing maintenance.***
- ***When checking the battery, remove the ground cable first and reinstall it last.***
- ***Be careful not to cause a short circuit with tools.***
- ***Take care no solution gets into the battery when washing it.***

If the battery is disconnected or run down

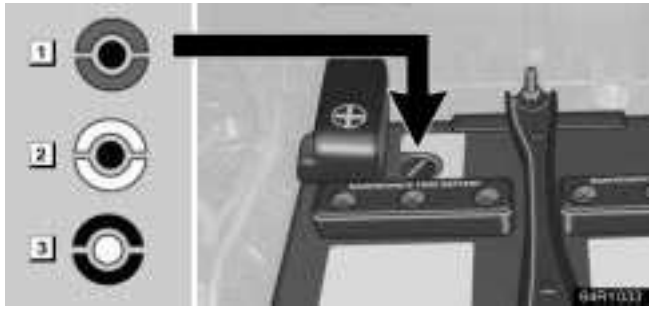
The following functions may not operate correctly when you reconnect or replace the battery. In these cases, you should do the each instructions referring on the following pages.

- Power back door (See page 46.)
- Power windows (See page 74.)
- Moon roof (See page 148 or 152.)

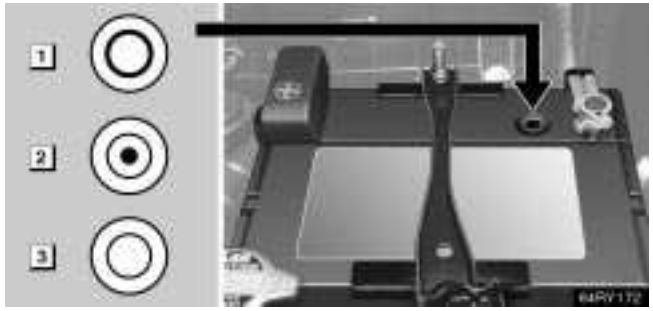
Checking battery condition

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Checking by indicator



▶ ***Type A***



▶ ***Type B***

Check the battery condition by the indicator color.

Type A —

1 BLUE — Good condition

2 WHITE — Charging necessary. Have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

3 RED — Have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

Type B —

1 GREEN — Good condition

2 DARK — Charging necessary. Have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

3 CLEAR or LIGHT YELLOW — Have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE
Do not refill the battery with water.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

BATTERY RECHARGING PRECAUTIONS

During recharging, the battery is producing hydrogen gas.

Therefore, before recharging:

1. If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.

2. Make sure the power switch on the recharger is off when connecting the charger cables to the battery and when disconnecting them.

NOTICE

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Always charge the battery in an unconfined area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.**
- **Only do a slow charge (5 A or less). Charging at a quicker rate is dangerous. The battery may explode causing personal injuries.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

CHECKING AND REPLACING THE BLADE TYPE FUSES

▶ ***Engine compartment*** 1 ***Pull-out tool*** 2 ***Spare fuses***

▶ ***Driver's side instrument panel***

1. Turn the ignition switch off and remove the fuse box lid.

Determine which fuse may be causing the problem. The lid of the fuse box shows the name of the circuit for each fuse.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Make sure the inoperative component is turned off. Pull the suspected fuse straight out with the pull-out tool and check it. If it has blown, push a new fuse into the clips.

▶ ***Good*** ▶ ***Blown***

1. Look carefully at the fuse. If the thin wire is broken, the fuse has blown. If you are not sure or if it is too dark to see, try replacing the suspected fuse with one of the same value that you know is good.

2. Only install a fuse with the amperage rating designated on the fuse box lid.

If you do not have a spare fuse, in an emergency you can pull out the “RADIO NO.1”, “RADIO NO.2” or “PWR OUTLET NO.2” fuse, which may be dispensable for normal driving, and use it if its amperage rating is the same.

If you cannot use one of the same amperage, use one lower than, but as close as possible to, the amperage. If the amperage is lower than that specified, the fuse might blow out again but this does not indicate anything wrong. Be sure to get the correct fuse as soon as possible and return the substitute to its original clips.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

It is a good idea to purchase a set of spare fuses and keep them in your vehicle for emergencies.

If the new fuse immediately blows out, there is a problem with the electrical system. Have your Lexus dealer correct it as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION

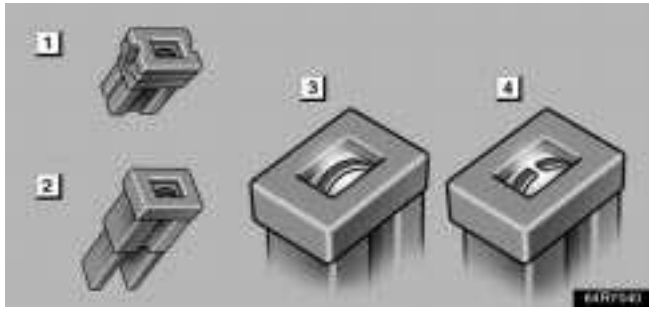
Never use a fuse with a higher amperage rating, or any other object, in place of a fuse. This may cause extensive damage and possibly a fire.

CHECKING THE CARTRIDGE TYPE FUSES

▶ ***Engine compartment***

▶ ***Driver's side instrument panel***

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



▶ 1 *Type A* 2 *Type B* 3 *Good* 4 *Blown*

If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the blade type fuses are O.K., check the cartridge type fuses. If any of the cartridge type fuses are blown, they must be replaced.

If there is an overload in the circuits from the battery, the fuses are designed to blow before the entire wiring harness is damaged.

CAUTION

Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent for replacement. Never install an ordinary wire — even for a temporary fix. This may cause extensive damage and possibly a fire.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

Before replacing the fuses, have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

ADDING WASHER FLUID

If the washer tank becomes nearly empty, add washer fluid.

NOTICE
Do not use engine antifreeze or any other substitute because it may damage your vehicle's paint.

You may use plain water as washer fluid. However, in cold areas where temperatures range below the freezing point, use washer fluid containing antifreeze. This product is available at your Lexus dealer and most auto parts stores. Follow the manufacturer's directions for how much to mix with water.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHECKING THE HEADLIGHT AIM (vehicles with discharge headlight)

▶ 1 ***Vertical movement adjusting* screw**
2 ***Vertical movement adjusting bolt***

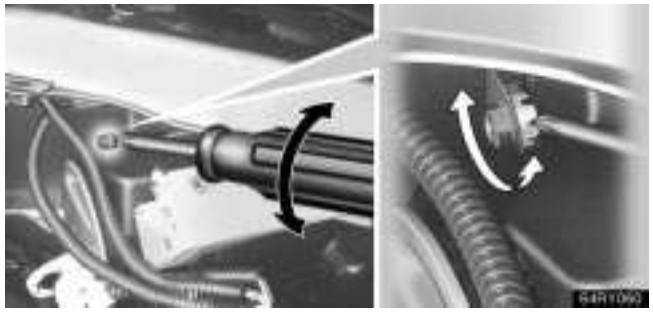
Before checking the headlight aim:

1. Be sure that the body around the headlight is not deformed.
2. Park the vehicle on a level spot.
3. The driver gets into the driver's seat and puts the vehicle in a state readying for a driving (with a full tank).
4. Bounce the vehicle several times.

Adjusting the vertical aiming

1. Turn the Phillips-head screwdriver to either direction in order to turn the vertical movement adjusting screw (1). Remember the number of times you turn the screwdriver and the turning direction.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



2. When turning the vertical movement adjusting bolt (2), turn the Phillips-head screwdriver to the same direction as step 1. To calculate the correct number of turns, multiply the number of times you turned the screwdriver in step 1 by 1.25. Turn the screwdriver by this amount.

REPLACING LIGHT BULBS

The illustration on the following pages show the locations of light bulbs. If it is necessary to replace a bulb, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Use bulbs with the bulb numbers and wattage ratings given in the table.

⚠ CAUTION

- **To prevent burning yourself, do not replace the light bulbs while they are hot.**
- **Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and require special handling. They can burst or shatter if scratched or dropped. Hold a bulb only by its plastic or metal case. Do not touch the glass part of a bulb with bare hands.**

Vehicles with power back door system —

- **When replacing the rear light bulbs, turn off the power back door system.**

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicles with discharge headlights —

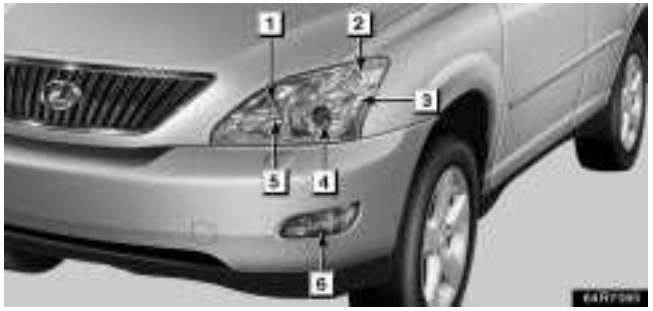
- **Do not touch the high voltage socket when the low beam headlight turns on. 20000 V is momentarily generated and may cause severe injury by electric shock.**
- **Do not disassemble, repair or take apart the low beam headlight bulbs, connector, power supply circuits and rotated components. Or you may be injured by electric shocks. Call your dealer when the headlights fail to work or have to be replaced or disposed of.**

NOTICE

Only use a bulb of the listed type.

The inside of the lens of exterior lights such as headlights may temporarily fog up when the lens becomes wet in the rain or in a car wash. This is not a problem because the fogging is caused by the temperature difference between the outside and inside of the lens, just like the windshield fogged up in the rain. However, if there is a large drop of water on the inside of the lens, or if there is water pooled inside the light, contact your Lexus dealer.

LIGHT LOCATION

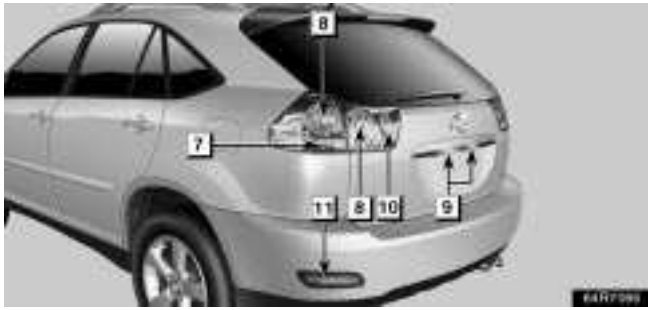


	Light Bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
1	Parking lights	168	5	F
2	Front turn signal lights	---	21	H
3	Front side marker lights	168	5	F
4	Headlights (low beam)			
	Discharge bulb	D2S	35	B
	Halogen bulb	H11	55	C

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

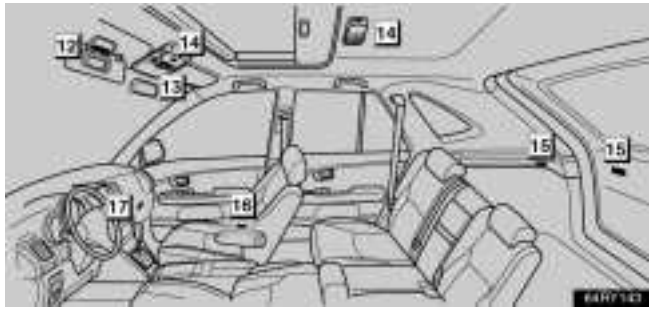
5	Headlights (high beam)	9005	60	A
6	Fog lights	9006	51	D

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



	Light Bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
7	Rear turn signal lights	---	21	H
8	Tail lights	168	5	F
9	License plate lights	168	5	F
10	Back-up lights	921	18	F
11	Rear side marker lights	194	3.8	F

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



	Light Bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
12	Vanity lights	---	2.8	G
13	Personal lights	---	8	E
14	Interior lights	---	8	G
15	Luggage compartment lights	---	5	G
16	Door courtesy lights	---	5	E
17	Glove box light	---	1.4	E

A: HB3 halogen bulbs
B: D2S discharge bulbs
C: H11 halogen bulbs
D: HB4 halogen bulbs
E: Single end bulbs
F: Wedge base bulbs (clear)
G: Double end bulbs
H: Wedge base bulbs (amber)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 6 – 5

SERVICE PROCEDURES AND SPECIFICATIONS

Body

Specifications 712
Protecting your vehicle from corrosion 714
Washing and waxing 715
Cleaning the interior 719

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

SPECIFICATIONS

— DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHTS

Overall length	4730 mm (186.2 in.)
Overall width	1845 mm (72.6 in.)
Overall height*1	
Two-wheel drive models	1670 mm (65.7 in.)*2 1710 mm (67.3 in.)*3 1725 mm (67.9 in.)*4
Four-wheel drive models	
— With electronically modulated air suspension	1670 mm (65.7 in.)*2 1710 mm (67.3 in.)*3 1725 mm (67.9 in.)*4
— Without electronically modulated air suspension	1680 mm (66.1 in.)*2 1720 mm (67.7 in.)*3 1735 mm (68.3 in.)*4

*1: Unladen vehicle
*2: Without roof rails
*3: With roof rails
*4: With roof rails and cross rails

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

— DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHTS

Wheelbase	2715 mm (107 in.)
Tread Two-wheel drive models — Front — Rear Four-wheel drive models — Front — Rear (with electronically modulated air suspension) — Rear (without electronically modulated air suspension)	 1580 mm (62.2 in.) 1565 mm (61.6 in.) 1575 mm (62.0 in.) 1560 mm (61.4 in.) 1555 mm (61.2 in.)
Vehicle capacity weight (occupants + cargo)	420 kg (925 lb.)
Towing capacity (trailer weight + cargo weight)	1588 kg (3500 lb.)

— FUEL TANK

Capacity	72.5 L (19.2 gal., 15.9 lmp.gal.)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

PROTECTING YOUR VEHICLE FROM CORROSION

Proper care of your Lexus can help ensure long-term corrosion prevention.

The most common causes of corrosion to your vehicle are:

- The accumulation of road salt, dirt and moisture in hard-to-reach areas under the vehicle.
- Chipping of paint or undercoating caused by minor accidents or by stones and gravel.

The following conditions will cause or accelerate corrosion of your vehicle, so it is important to keep your vehicle, particularly the underside, as clean as possible and to repair any damage to paint or protective coatings as soon as possible.

- The presence of road salt or dust control chemicals, salt in the air near the sea coast, industrial air pollution.
- High humidity, especially at temperatures just above freezing point.
- Certain parts of your vehicle are wet or damp for an extended period of time, even though other parts of the vehicle are dry.
- Components of the vehicle which are prevented from quick-drying due to lack of proper ventilation are exposed to high ambient temperature.

To help prevent corrosion on your Lexus, follow these guidelines:

Keep your vehicle clean by regular washing. In addition, observe the following points.

- If you drive on salted roads in the winter or if you live near the ocean, you should hose off the undercarriage at least once a month to minimize corrosion.
- High pressure water or steam is effective for cleaning the vehicle's underside and wheel housings. Pay particular attention to these areas as it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to simply wet the mud and debris without removing. The lower edge of doors, rocker panels and frame members have drain holes which should not be allowed to clog with dirt as trapped water in these areas can cause corrosion.
- Wash the underside of the vehicle thoroughly when winter is over.

See "Washing and waxing" on page 715 for more tips.

Check the condition of your vehicle's paint and trim. If you find any chips or scratches in the paint, touch them up immediately to prevent corrosion from starting. If the chips or scratches have gone through the bare metal, have a qualified body shop make the repair.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Check the interior of your vehicle. Water and dirt can accumulate under the floor mats and could cause corrosion. Occasionally check under the mats to make sure the area is dry. Be particularly careful when transporting chemicals, cleansers, fertilizers, salt, etc. These should be transported in proper containers. If a spill or leak should occur, immediately clean and dry the area.

Use mud shields on your wheels. If you drive on salted or gravel roads, mud shields help protect your vehicle. Full-size shields, which come as near to the ground as possible, are the best. We recommend that the fittings and the area where the shields are installed be treated to resist corrosion. Your Lexus dealer will be happy to assist in supplying and installing the shields if they are recommended for your area.

Keep your vehicle in a well ventilated garage or a roofed place. Do not park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. If you wash your vehicle in the garage, or if you drive it covered with water or snow, your garage may be so damp and it will cause corrosion. Even if your garage is heated, a wet vehicle can corrode if the ventilation is poor.

WASHING AND WAXING

Washing your Lexus

Keep your vehicle clean by regular washing.

The following cases may cause weakness to the paint or corrosion to the body and parts. Wash your vehicle as soon as possible.

- When driving in a coastal area
- When driving on a road sprinkled with antifreeze
- When having coal tar, tree sap, bird droppings and carcass of an insect
- When driving in the areas where there is a lot of smoke, soot, dust, iron dust and chemical substances
- When the vehicle becomes remarkably dirty with dust and mud

Hand-washing your Lexus

Work in the shade and wait until the vehicle body is not hot to the touch.

1. Rinse off loose dirt with a hose. Remove any mud or road salt from the underside of the vehicle or in the wheel wells.

2. Wash with a mild car-wash soap, mixed according to the manufacturer’s instructions. Use a soft cotton mitt and keep it wet by dipping it frequently into the wash water. Do not rub hard — let the soap and water remove the dirt.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuel filler door: Do not apply water (high-pressure car wash, for example) at or near the fuel tank inlet with the fuel filler door opened. If the water enters the air vent, you may experience trouble with refueling or rough engine idling.

Electronically modulated air suspension: Do not spray a jet of high-pressure water at the air suspension unit, especially the air spring, at an extremely close range. This may damage the air suspension.

Plastic wheel ornaments: The plastic wheel ornaments are damaged easily by organic substances. If any organic substance splashes an ornament, be sure to wash it off with water and check if the ornament is damaged.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not attach the heavily damaged plastic wheel ornament. It may fly off the wheel and cause accidents while the vehicle is moving.

Aluminum wheels: Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent.

Urethane bumpers and side moldings: Wash carefully. Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners. The bumper and side molding faces are soft.

Road tar: Remove with turpentine or cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

Do not use organic substances (gasoline, kerosene, benzine or strong solvents), which may be toxic or cause damage.

3. Rinse thoroughly — dried soap can cause streaking. In hot weather you may need to rinse each section right after you wash it.

4. To prevent water spots, dry the vehicle using a clean soft cotton towel. Do not rub or press hard — you might scratch the paint.

NOTICE

- ***To prevent damage to the antenna, make sure it is removed before driving your vehicle through an automatic car wash.***
- ***When your vehicle goes through an automatic car wash, make sure the power back door system is off.***

Automatic car wash

Your vehicle may be washed in an automatic car wash, but remember that the paint can be scratched by some types of brushes, unfiltered washing water, or the washing process itself. Scratching reduces paint durability and gloss, especially on darker colors. The manager of the car wash should be able to advise you whether the process is safe for the paint on your vehicle.

Waxing your Lexus

Polishing and waxing is recommended to maintain the original beauty of your Lexus' finish.

Apply may once a month or if the vehicle surface does not repel water well.

1. Always wash and dry the vehicle before you begin waxing, even if you are using a combined cleaner and wax.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Use a good quality polish and wax. If the finish has become extremely weathered, use a car-cleaning polish, followed by a separate wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Be sure to polish and wax the chrome trim as well as the paint.

NOTICE

If a nozzle becomes blocked, do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

3. Wax the vehicle again when water does not bead but remains on the surface in large patches.

Windshield washer nozzles: Make sure that the nozzles do not become blocked when waxing. If a nozzle becomes blocked, contact your Lexus dealer to have the vehicle serviced.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be careful not to splash water or spill liquid on the floor. This may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, resulting in serious injury.**
- **Do not wash the vehicle floor with water, or allow water to get onto the floor when cleaning the vehicle interior or exterior. Water may get into audio components or other electrical components above or under the floor carpet (or mat) and cause a malfunction; and it may cause body corrosion.**

Leather Interior

The selected leather is used in your Lexus. Due to characteristics of leather products, some parts of leather may be rough, uneven or scratched originally.

To keep good appearance, we recommend you to clean it periodically twice a year.

Remove dirt on the leather in the following ways:

1. Wipe it off lightly using a soft cloth (e.g. gauze) dampened with 5% solution of neutral detergent for wool.

2. Wring water from a clean cloth and thoroughly wipe off all traces of detergent with it.

3. Wipe off the surface of the leather with a dry soft cloth. Allow the leather to dry in a ventilated shaded area. Excess of wet may cause the hardening or shrinking of the leather.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- *Dirt or sand adhered to the leather may damage the treated surface and cause it to wear earlier. Remove dirt or sand using a vacuum cleaner.*
- *If a stain should fail to come out with a neutral detergent, apply a cleaner that does not contain an organic solvent.*
- *Never use organic substances such as benzine, alcohol or gasoline, or alkaline or acid solutions for cleaning the leather as these could cause discoloring.*
- *Use of a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, etc. may scratch the fine grained surface of the leather.*
- *Mildew may develop on soiled leather upholstery. Be especially careful to avoid oil spots. Try to keep your upholstery always clean.*
- *Long exposure to direct sunlight may cause the leather surface to harden and shrink. Keep your vehicle in a shaded area, especially in the summer.*
- *The interior of your vehicle is apt to heat up on hot summer days, so avoid placing on the upholstery items made of vinyl or plastic or containing wax as these tend to stick to leather when warm.*
- *Improper cleaning of the leather upholstery could result in discoloration or staining.*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Synthetic Leather Areas

The synthetic leather areas may be easily cleaned with a mild soap or detergent and water.

First vacuum over the upholstery to remove loose dirt. Then, using a sponge or soft cloth, apply the soap solution to the synthetic leather. After allowing it to soak in for a few minutes to loosen the dirt, remove the dirt and wipe off the soap with a clean damp cloth. If all the dirt does not come off, repeat the procedure. Commercial foaming-type cleaners are also available which work well. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

NOTICE

Do not use solvent, thinner, gasoline or window cleaner on the interior.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Carpets, Windows and Seat Belts

Begin by vacuuming thoroughly to remove as much dirt as possible. Several types of foam cleaners are available; some are in aerosol cans and others are powders or liquids which you mix with water to produce a foam. To shampoo the carpets, use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water — the best results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible. Read the shampoo instructions and follow them closely.

The seat belts may be cleaned with mild soap and water or with lukewarm water.

Use a cloth or sponge. As you are cleaning, check the belts for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

- *Use a good foam-type shampoo to clean the carpets.*
- *Do not use dye or bleach on the belts — it may weaken them.*
- *Do not use the belts until they become dry.*
- *The windows may be cleaned with any household window cleaner.*
- *Do not apply detergent to or wet the automatic wiper control sensor when cleaning the inside of the windshield.*
- *When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or connectors.*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Air Conditioning Control Panel, Car Audio, Instrument Panel, Console Panel, and Switches

NOTICE

- ***Do not use organic substances (solvents, kerosene, alcohol, gasoline, etc.) or alkaline or acidic solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloring, staining or peeling of the surface.***
- ***If you use cleaners or polishing agents, make sure their ingredients do not include the substances mentioned above.***
- ***If you use a liquid car freshener, do not spill the liquid onto the vehicle's interior surfaces. It may contain the ingredients mentioned above. Immediately clean any spill using the method mentioned above.***

If you have any questions about the cleaning of your Lexus, your local Lexus dealer will be pleased to answer them.

Use a soft damp cloth for cleaning.

Soak a clean soft cloth in water or lukewarm water then lightly wipe off any dirt.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

SECTION 7

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS FOR U.S. OWNERS

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners 726

DEALER E-PROCESS

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS FOR U.S. OWNERS

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-800-424-9393 (or 366-0123 in Washington, D.C. area) or write to: NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, D.C. 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the Hotline.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2004 RX 330

Mileage	Content
5000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1[2]
10000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1[2]
15000	Replace air conditioner filter
	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Re- Torque drive shaft flange bolts
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspect rear differential oil
	Inspection #1, #2
	Replace differential oil[2]
	Replace transfer case oil[2]
20000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1[2]
25000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1[2]
30000	Replace air conditioner filter
	Replace brake fluid
	Replace engine air filter
	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1, #2, & #3
	Inspect transmission fluid[2]
	Replace differential oil[2]
	Replace transfer case oil[2]
35000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1[2]
40000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1[2]
45000	Replace air conditioner filter
	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspect rear differential oil
	Inspection #1, #2
	Replace differential oil[2]
	Replace transfer case oil[2]
50000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1[2]
55000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1[2]
60000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Replace brake fluid
	Replace engine air filter
	Replace air conditioner filter
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1, #2, #3
	Inspect engine valves clearance (audible)
	Inspect drive belts
	Replace differential oil[2]
	Replace transfer case oil[2]
	Replace transmission fluid[2]
65000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1[2]
70000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1[2]
75000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Replace air conditioner filter
	Re- Torque drive shaft flange bolts
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspect rear differential oil
	Inspection #1, #2
	Replace differential oil[2]
	Replace transfer case oil[2]
80000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1[2]
85000	Replace engine oil and oil filter
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1[2]
90000	Replace air conditioner filter
	Replace brake fluid
	Replace engine air filter
	Replace engine coolant
	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Replace timing belt
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1, #2, #3
	Inspect transmission fluid[2]
	Replace differential oil[2]
	Replace transfer case oil[2]
95000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1[2]
100000	Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
	Rotate tires
	Road test vehicle
	Inspection #1[2]

Inspection #1
- Ball joints and dust covers
- Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
- Drive shaft boots
- Engine air filter
- Nuts & Bolts on Chassis and body
- Steering linkage and boots

Inspection #2
- Body
- Brake lines and hoses
- Exhaust pipes and mountings
- Rack and pinion assembly
- Engine Coolant

Inspection #3
- Fuel lines and connections, fuel tank band and fuel tank vapor vent system hoses
- Fuel tank cap gasket
- Transmission, transfer case and differential oil

[1] Reset "Maint Reqd" light after replacing engine oil

[2] Required only if vehicle is operated primarily on dusty roads or towing a trailer or using a camper or car-top carrier

DEALER E-PROCESS